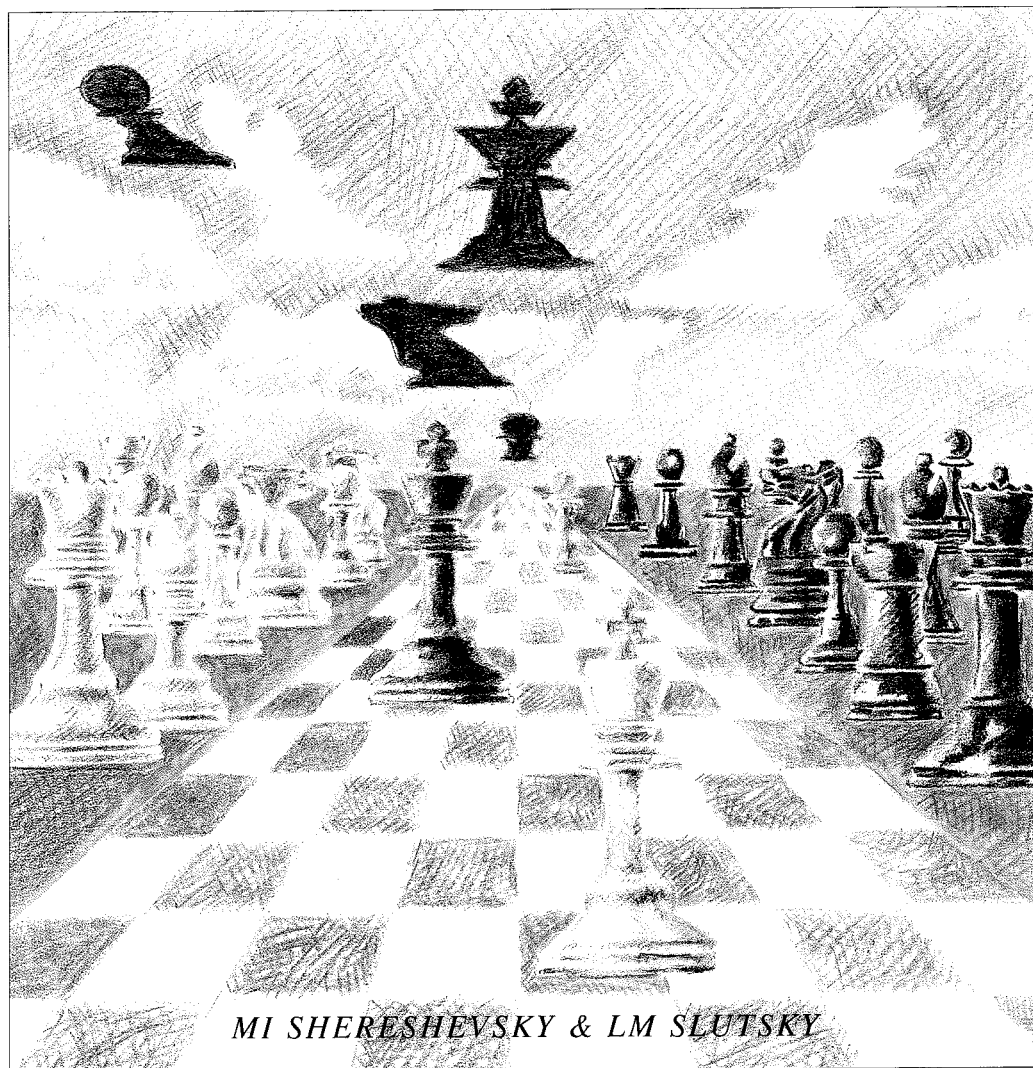


MASTERING THE ENDGAME

VOLUME 1



MI SHERESHEVSKY & LM SLUTSKY

CADOGAN
chess

Cadogan Chess Books

Chief Advisor: Garry Kasparov
Editor: Andrew Kinsman
Russian Series Editor: Ken Neat

Other CADOGAN CHESS books for the competitive player include:

Attack with Mikhail Tal
Mikhail Tal

Chess Fundamentals
José Capablanca

Grandmaster Chess
Glenn Flear

Grandmaster Achievement
Lyeve Polugayevsky

How Good is Your Chess?
Daniel King

Mastering the Endgame, Volume 2
Mikhail Shereshevsky and Leonid Slutsky

Smyslov's 125 Selected Games
Vasily Smyslov

Studies and Games
Jan Timman

Taimanov's Selected Games
Mark Taimanov

Timman's Selected Games
Jan Timman

For a complete catalogue of CADOGAN CHESS books (which includes the former Pergamon and Maxwell Macmillan Chess list) please write to:
Cadogan Books plc, London House, Parkgate Road, London SW11 4NQ
Tel: (0171) 738 1961 Fax: (0171) 924 5491

Mastering the Endgame

Volume 1:

Open and Semi-Open Games

by
M.I.Shereshevsky & L.M.Slutsky

Translated and Edited by
Ken Neat

CADOGAN
chess
LONDON, NEW YORK

MIDLAND COUNTY PUBLIC LIBRARY
MIDLAND, TX

First published by Pergamon Press 1991

This edition published 1996 by Cadogan Books plc,
London House, Parkgate Road, London SW11 4NQ.

Copyright © 1996

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publishers.

Distributed in North America by Simon & Schuster,
Paramount Publishing, 200 Old Tappan Road,
Old Tappan, New Jersey, 07675 USA.

All other sales enquiries should be addressed to
Cadogan Books plc, London House, Parkgate Road,
London SW11 4NQ.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the
British Library.

ISBN 1 85744 169 9

Published by Cadogan Books plc, London House,
Parkgate Road, London SW11 4NQ.

Printed in Great Britain by BPC Wheatons Ltd, Exeter

Contents

Foreword by GM Artur Yusupov	vii
Introduction	ix
Translator's Note	xi
Sicilian Defence	1
Dragon Variation	1
Paulsen Variation	10
Boleslavsky Variation	23
Lasker Variation	35
Rauzer Variation	40
Scheveningen Variation	51
The Exchange Sacrifice on c3	60
Ruy Lopez	65
Exchange Variation	65
Open Variation	77
Closed Variation	84
Other Variations	94
French Defence	113
Exchange Variation Formation	113
Nimzowitsch (Advance) Variation	117
Winawer/Nimzowitsch Variation	126
Classical Variation	142
McCutcheon Variation	148
Tarrasch Variation	152
Rubinstein Formation	165
Caro-Kann Defence	175
Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence	194

Open Games

King's Gambit

Evans Gambit

Philidor's Defence

Petroff's Defence

Four Knights Game

Three Knights Game

Two Knights Defence

Vienna Game

Scotch Game

Alekhine's Defence and Centre Counter Game

Index of Games

213

213

216

217

218

224

225

227

229

233

237

245

Foreword

The very idea of writing a book about the connection between endgame and opening is a bold and topical one. In certain modern opening variations, the logic of the play demands an early exchange of queens, and the game, by-passing the middlegame stage, goes quickly into an endgame. I recall the game Novikov-Tukmakov, played in the 51st USSR Championship in Lvov in 1984, where after 1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 c4 ♙g7 4 ♘c3 d5 5 cxd5 ♘xd5 6 e4 ♘xc3 7 bxc3 c5 8 ♚b1 0-0 9 ♙e2 ♘c6 10 d5 ♘e5 11 ♘xe5 ♙xe5 12 ♗d2 e6 13 f4 ♙g7 14 c4 ♚e8 15 e5 f6 16 d6 fxe5 17 ♙b2 exf4 18 ♙xg7 ♘xg7 19 0-0 ♚f8 20 ♚xf4 ♚xf4 21 ♗xf4 ♗f6 22 ♗e4 ♚b8 23 ♚f1 ♗d4+ 24 ♗xd4 cxd4 25 ♚b1 ♙d7 26 ♙f3 b6 27 c5 ♚c8 28 c6 ♙xc6 29 ♚c1 ♙d7 30 ♚xc8 ♙xc8 31 ♙c6 ♘f6 32 d7 ♙xd7 33 ♙xd7 e5 34 ♘f2 e4 35 ♙c6 ♘e5 White employed the innovation 36 h4! and went on to win.

The study of such endings resembles the analysis of adjourned positions, where modern means of information come to a player's aid, enabling him to examine a large number of recent games on the question interesting him. More often than not, he is able to establish a conclusive diagnosis and exhaust the argument. In the present book the authors have only briefly familiarised the reader with the state of theory in this type of position, and the main body of the book studies the plans and playing methods in the complex endings arising from the most topical openings. By studying a section of interest to him, the reader can gain an impression not only about the typical endgame, but also widen his opening horizons, since in the majority of cases the opening stage has been deeply analysed. The arrangement of the material is unusual. In contrast to the generally accepted classification system: Open Games, Ruy Lopez etc, the authors begin their analysis with the most popular present-day opening – the Sicilian Defence, and in order of decreasing amount of material they proceed from the major openings to less popular ones. There is a successful combination of classic games, with which the chapters usually begin, and modern examples. Also instructive are the examples of 'buried variations', i.e. instances where a particular opening has been condemned by theory in view of insurmountable difficulties in the endgame.

In conclusion, I should like to mention one factor which has not been especially emphasized by the authors, but which nevertheless follows directly from their book. Strangely enough, this 'opening-endgame' book will induce players to make a more serious study of the middlegame, since many 'solid' opening variations turn out to be very 'brittle' as regards the coming endgame, and here, as a rule, one has to try and decide things in the middlegame.

This book will undoubtedly be of great instructional value both to teachers and trainers, and to players studying the game independently.

Artur Yusupov
International Grandmaster

Introduction

A constantly increasing flood of information is currently streaming into all spheres of human activity, including chess.

Initially the information explosion was concerned with the opening stage. The development of fundamentally new opening systems and variations was the prerogative of players in the 1950s and 60s. Now one of the most popular chess publications is *Sahovski Informator*, each volume of which gives about 700 of the most interesting games played during the preceding six months. The modern grandmaster, armed with a sizable dossier on his opponents, and sometimes making use of a micro-computer, does not usually try and develop a new opening idea, but seeks some individual specific move, which will change the generally accepted assessment of the position, it being possible that this move will not occur in the opening, and not even in the middlegame, but in the endgame. The picture painted by the authors may seem too gloomy: thus back in 1975 grandmaster Bronstein wrote: "I am sometimes saddened at the thought that today there are no new moves on the first move, tomorrow there will be none on the second move, and then . . ." We hasten immediately to reassure the reader – there is no reason for despair. Chess is inexhaustible, and in our age there is sufficient analytical work for everybody. New ideas occur in all events, including matches for the World Championship. Remember, for example, Kasparov's move 8 ... d5 (after 1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜c6 5 ♜b5 d6 6 c4 ♜f6 7 ♜1c3 a6 8 ♜a3) in the 1985 match, or Karpov's new handling of the Tarrasch Defence in the 1984/85 match. Even so, opening theory generally develops more in depth than in width. The boundary between opening and middlegame has faded, and a knowledge of opening theory is now inconceivable without an analysis of middlegame problems.

Several books have been devoted to the connection of opening and middlegame; an example is Suetin's *Plan Like a Grandmaster*, published in 1988.

In our opinion, the time has come to look even further – into the endgame, and it is to the connection between the beginning and ending of a chess game that the present book is devoted.

Chess is all the time becoming more competitive and dynamic. A new time control has been introduced, by which a player has to spend not five, but six hours at the board, and make not 40, but 60 moves before adjourning. In such conditions, additional demands are made on endgame preparation. Severely restricted in time, a player must not only have a mastery of basic techniques, but must also be able to picture, even if only in general terms, the strategic course of the play. And the problem itself of exchanging queens and of assessing the resulting ending is often difficult to solve, for players who are not very experienced. The present book is an attempt to help a player in assessing the endgame typical of a given variation. We hope that, after reading the

book, it will be easier for a player to find plans for the two sides, take decisions more quickly, and have an accurate picture of what to expect in an endgame arising from this or that opening variation.

While working on the book, the authors encountered difficulties associated with the enormous amount of material. It transpired that to depict in one volume the picture of the endgame struggle from all opening variations was quite impossible. Therefore it was decided to divide the book into two volumes (the first – open and semi-open games, the second – closed games). The analysis normally begins from the moment that the queens disappear, although such a definition of the endgame is purely arbitrary. The opening stage of the variation is covered in greater or lesser detail, depending on its popularity and place in opening theory. We will warn in advance those who will criticise the book for what is not in it that they will not find here endings from the variation 1 e4 c5 2 c3, which we do not consider to be typical of the Sicilian Defence,* nor positions with a ‘hedgehog’ pawn formation or those resulting from the Maroczy Bind, which, in our opinion, are closer to the English Opening. The book also hardly considers any endings arising from opening variations which do not have a typical pawn formation, but we hope that the majority of readers will be able to study the range of endings which are characteristic of their opening repertoire.

* These endings are typical of the Queen’s Gambit, mostly with an isolated d-pawn, e.g. 2 ... d5 3 exd5 ♖xd5 4 d4 e6 5 ♘f3 ♙c6 6 ♙e2 cxd4 7 cxd4 ♙f6 8 ♙c3 ♖d8, or 2 ... ♙f6 3 e5 ♙d5 4 d4 cxd4 5 ♙f3 e6 6 cxd4 d6 7 exd6 etc.

Translator’s Note

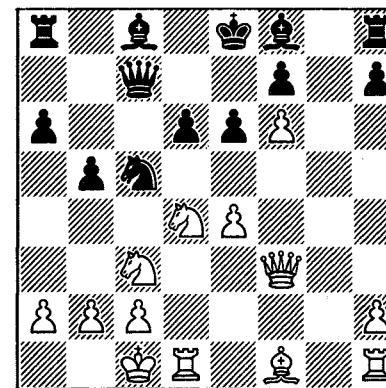
The original manuscript for this book was of daunting dimensions, and in order to bring it down to a manageable size, many games have had, with regret, to be omitted. These largely fall into two categories: (a) games which, though of interest, mainly repeat ideas seen in earlier examples, and (b) classic games which the reader is advised to study, but which are readily available in other titles currently in print, reference being made at the appropriate points in the text.

Sicilian Defence

The Sicilian Defence is probably the most popular opening of our time. The rapid development of its theory began in the post-war years, and is continuing to this day. The very approach to the opening on the part of Black has changed. Steinitz's theory obliged Black first to neutralise the advantage of the first move, and only then to try for an advantage. "Black must battle for equality, otherwise chess becomes a farce!", said Lasker.

The modern approach to chess strategy has changed the assessment of many Sicilian positions, without reducing them to an arithmetic counting of pawn weaknesses. Indeed, in the Sicilian middlegame, immediately after the opening, the play is so sharp and intricate that to assess the position by the pawn formation is inconceivable.

1



(This is a theoretical position arising after 1 e4 c5 2 d4 f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 dxd4 d6 5 dxc3 a6 6 g5 e6 7 f4 e7 8 f3

7 c7 9 0-0-0 d7 10 g4 b5 11 xf6 xf6 12 g5 d7 13 f5 c5 14 f6 gxf6 15 gxf6 f8.)

The Sicilian endgame is a different matter. Although even here a fierce piece battle often continues, with the reduction of forces the role of the pawn configuration gradually increases. Back in the 1920s, Reti remarked that the majority of short games with this opening were won by White, and the majority of the long drawn-out games by Black.

In modern tournament play, Sicilian endgames lasting many moves do not always end in Black's favour: systems such as the Lasker Variation and the Boleslavsky Variation have appeared, where Black's inferior pawn formation forces him to be cautious about going into an endgame.

There are many types of Sicilian endgame but, as a rule, the main variations have their specific pawn structures. These structures are in many ways similar and often transpose into one another, and therefore we have classified the endings according to the most important variations of the Sicilian Defence.

DRAGON VARIATION

The Dragon Variation is one of the oldest in the Sicilian Defence: it was played back in the last century. In the 1930s it was probably the most popular

variation of the Sicilian Defence. But then the Soviet theorist Rauzer developed a new plan for White, which sharply reduced the number of supporters of this variation for Black.

In his notes to his game with Larsen (Portorož 1958), the eleventh World Champion Bobby Fischer writes: "White's attack almost plays itself . . . weak players even beat grandmasters with it".

Fischer went on to remark that, from the statistics of games played in the 1960s, out of every ten games played in the Dragon Variation, White won about nine. True, in modern tournament play things are by no means so bad for Black, and the 'Dragon' has its strong supporters – in particular Tony Miles – but even so at 'high level' the 'Dragon' hardly ever occurs.

If Black should nevertheless manage to 'last out' to the endgame, the play in it sometimes takes the most unexpected turns. The irrationality of the play is frequently carried over to the endgame, and sometimes makes it no less fascinating than the middlegame. An example of this is the game **Bouaziz-Geller**. Mistakes in the opening often lead to a difficult endgame for Black, in which the sound Dragon pawn structure is irreparably spoiled, as seen in the games **Levenfish-Rabinovich** and **Averbakh-Larsen**.

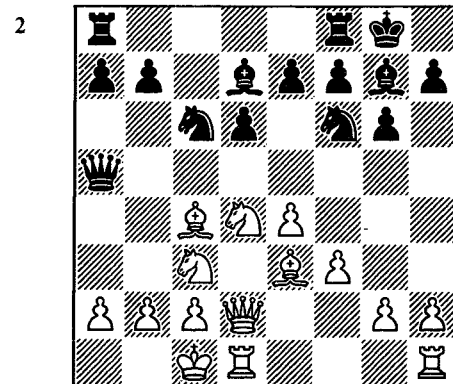
The theory of the Dragon Variation is very deeply developed and it can happen that an incorrect opening move leads by force to a lost ending, as in the game **Nedeljković-Volpert**.

Modern methods of playing against the Dragon Variation include not only the development of attacking plans against the black king, but also play aimed at a favourable endgame. White, exploiting his spatial advantage, occupies d5 with his knight and forces its exchange, which

leads to the creation of a weak black pawn at e7. A game on this theme is **Karpov-Miles**, London 1982 (cf. Karpov's *Chess at the Top 1979-1984* p.114). The chapter is concluded by the game **Short-Sax**, in which White realised his spatial advantage in an ending with rooks and opposite-colour bishops.

Bouaziz-Geller
Sousse Interzonal 1967

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♙xd4 ♘f6
5 ♘c3 g6 6 ♙e3 ♙g7 7 f3 ♘c6 8 ♙d2 0-0
9 ♙c4 ♙d7 10 0-0-0 ♙a5 (2)



Black's last move characterises a line of the Dragon which was extremely popular in the mid-sixties. His counterplay is based on ... ♙a5, ... ♙fc8, and ... ♘e5-c4, with pressure on the c-file, often involving the sacrifice ... ♙xc3!. It is important that it is the king's rook that goes to c8 – this weakens the effect of the typical thrust ♘c3-d5. In 1967 the theory of this line was only beginning to be developed. All that was known was that, against a routine attack by White following the pattern ♙b1, h2-h4, g2-g4 and h4-h5, Black can mount a powerful counterattack with ... ♙fc8, ... ♘e5-c4, ... ♙ac8, ... ♙xg4! and

... ♘xe4. The insecure position of the bishop at d7 was also apparent, and it is on the advance e4-e5 that Bouaziz bases his play.

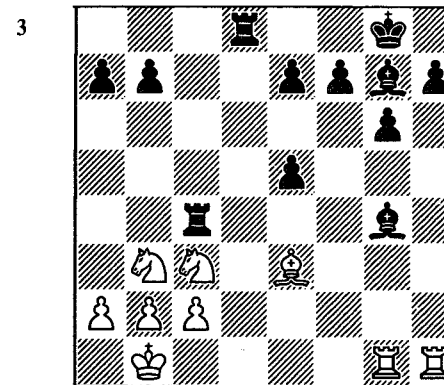
11 ♙b1 ♙fc8 12 ♙b3 ♘e5 13 h4 ♘c4 14 ♙xc4 ♙xc4 15 h5?!

The immediate 15 ♘b3 ♙d8 16 e5! or 16 ♙h6! is stronger, in each case with advantage to White.

15 ... ♘xh5 16 g4 ♘f6 17 ♘b3 ♙d8 18 e5

White appears to have achieved his aim, but with a brilliant counterblow Geller completely changes the situation.

18 ... ♙xg4!! 19 fxg4 ♙xg4 20 ♙dg1 dxe5 21 ♙xd8 ♙xd8 (3)



Geller saw of course that with his 18th move he was sacrificing not just a piece, but a rook: the bishop at g4 is inadequately defended, and the attack on the rook at c4 practically forces Black also to sacrifice the exchange. As a result White obtains a rook for four pawns, but the armada of pawns on the kingside, supported by the two bishops, makes Black's position definitely preferable. Perhaps Geller remembered how in 1953 at Zürich he had won a similar ending against Boleslavsky?!

22 ♘a5?

White is clearly disheartened. The knight is needed for the battle against the passed pawns, and two moves later it is obliged to return. The loss of two tempi in a very sharp situation is equivalent to defeat. However, even after 22 ♘d2 ♙xc3 23 bxc3 h5 24 ♙h2 b6! Black's chances are better (Janošević-Despotović, Yugoslavia 1969).

22 ... ♙xc3
23 bxc3

Black has only four pawns for a rook, but the five(!) connected passed pawns on the kingside supported by the two bishops give him a decisive advantage.

23 ... h5
24 ♘b3?!

White clearly does not sense the danger, and acts too slowly. He should have immediately created counterchances on the queenside by 24 ♙c1, with the threat of 25 ♘xb7.

24 ... e4!
25 ♘c5 ♙d6!

A strong move. Geller tactically defends the e4 pawn and threatens to begin advancing his kingside pawn avalanche with 26 ... f5.

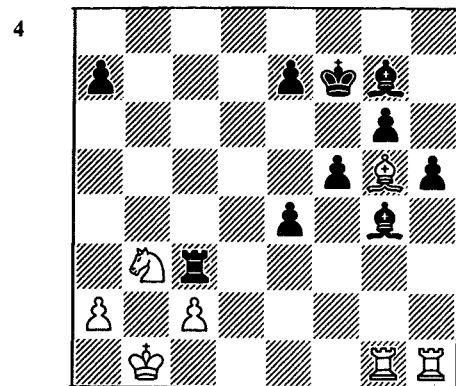
26 ♘xb7?!

Winning the b7 pawn costs White two further tempi, but in any case his position was lost.

26 ... ♙c6 27 ♘c5 f5 28 ♘b3 ♙xc3 29 ♙g5 ♙f7 (4)

White has no counterplay against the advance of Black's kingside pawn mass.

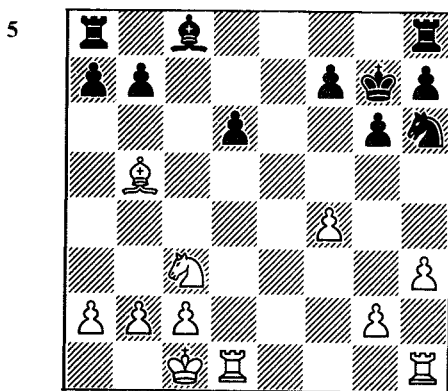
30 ♙c1 ♙c4 31 ♙d2 ♙c3+ 32 ♙e3 e5
33 ♙f1 a5 34 ♘d2? ♙d4 mate



Levenfish-I.Rabinovich

11th USSR Championship, Leningrad 1939

1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 d6 4 d3 cxd4
5 dxd4 g6 6 f4 g7 7 e5 g4 8 b5+ g8
9 h3 h6 10 e3 c6 11 exd6 dxd4 12
dxd4 dxd6 13 xg7+ xg7 14 dxd6
exd6 15 0-0-0 (5)



In the opening Black made a serious mistake – 7... d4?. According to modern theory, a good reply to Levenfish's move 6 f4 is 6 ... d5!.

6 ... g7 is quite possible, but in reply to 7 e5 Black has only two satisfactory continuations, 7 ... h5 and 7 ... dxe5. The game Peters-Mestel, Hastings 1980/81,

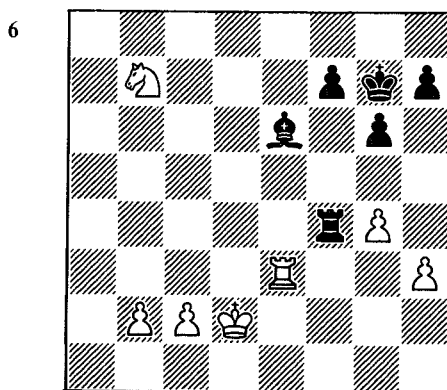
continued 7... h5 8 b5+ d7 9 e6 fxe6 10 xe6 xc3+ 11 bxc3 c8 12 d3 c6 13 g5 f5 14 d5 h6 15 e4 e6 16 xe6 xe6 17 0-0 f8, and Black had good prospects in the endgame. The correspondence game Dzhaferov-Guseinov, 1975, went 7 ... dxe5 8 fxe5 d7 9 e6 d5 10 b5+ dxc6! 11 exf7+ f8 12 dxc6 dxd1+ 13 dxd1 dxc6 14 c3 e6, and Black was close to equalising.

The endgame reached is difficult, possibly lost for Black. His isolated d6 pawn is very weak, while his pieces are undeveloped and scattered about the board.

15 ... d8 16 d2 e6 17 h1 d5 18 g4 e3 19 e1 a6

19 ... c4 20 xc4 xc4 21 d1 does not ease Black's position. Rabinovich tries to open lines and obtain counterplay.

20 xe3 axb5 21 dxb5 xa2 22 d6 d6 23 d6 a1+ 24 d2 f1 25 dxb7 f4 (6)



White has won a pawn and has two connected passed pawns on the queenside. It is now a straightforward matter of realising his advantage, which Levenfish carries out very surely.

26 c5 d5 27 d3 f1 28 b3 h6 29 c4 g2 30 e2 b1 31 g5+!

Such moves in the endgame should never be disregarded. White has no reason to hurry, and if he can worsen the position of the enemy king, then he should do this, and then set about advancing his passed pawns.

31 ... g7 32 f2 b7 33 b4 c8 34 c5 f5 35 c6

White again makes use of tactics.

35 ... h6

35 ... d3 36 d3 b4 37 c7! c4 38 d7 h6 39 h4 was hopeless for Black.

36 gxh6+ xh6 37 c7 b3 38 h4 c3 39 c5! c4 40 e5 g4 41 e4 c2+ 42 e3 f5 43 f4 c8 44 xf7 c4 45 f4 Black resigns

Averbakh-Larsen

Portoroz Interzonal 1958

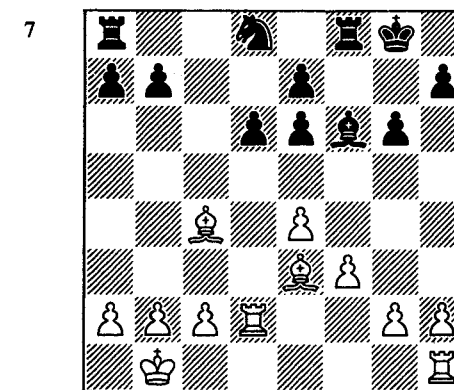
1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 dxd4 d6 5 c3 g6 6 e3 g7 7 f3 0-0 8 d2 c6 9 0-0-0 e6 10 b1 a5 11 xe6 fxe6 12 c4 d8 13 d5 dxd2 14 xf6+ xf6 15 d2 (7)

On the 9th move, instead of the then almost 'automatic' 9 c4, Averbakh preferred to castle long, allowing complications not unfavourable for Black (according to the theory of that time and also present-day theory) after 9 ... d5!?. However, let us hand over to Larsen: "I would play the Dragon Variation much more if it hadn't been analysed so thoroughly in recent years! ... I doubt whether the fashionable move 9 c4 is better than 9 0-0-0, after which it has not been clearly proved that the pawn sacrifice 9 ... d5! is correct."

But after choosing the little-studied (and quite good) move 9 ... e6, on the

very next move Larsen made a serious strategic mistake – 10 ... a5?, condemning Black to a difficult and thankless defence in an endgame without any chance of counterplay.

In Geller's opinion 10 ... e5 was better, although even in this case White retains the initiative after 11 xe6 fxe6 12 f4 eg4 13 c4 (ECO).



15 ... e5 16 d3 c8 17 b3 b6 18 d2 g7 19 g3

Averbakh calmly prepares active play on the kingside. Black cannot reply with counterplay on the opposite side of the board, and is forced to switch to cheerless defence. The chief drawback of his position is the lack of coordination between his rooks, which are obstructed by their own knight, obliged to defend the e6 pawn.

19 ... f6 20 h4 h6 21 f1 c7 22 f4 h5 23 d3!

This rook move demonstrates the helplessness of Black's position and provokes Larsen into making a freeing attempt.

23 ... c6
24 c3 e5

Rather than return the knight to d8. But when the weaker side disrupts the course of events in a poor position this

usually merely accelerates his defeat. White's kingside activity now develops into a direct attack on the black king.

25 f5 ♖a5 26 ♙d5 ♜c4 27 ♙c1 b5 28 g4! hxg4 29 ♙g3 ♙h8 30 ♙xg4 ♙xh4 31 ♙xg6+ ♜h7 32 ♙g8+ ♜h8 33 ♙e6 ♜b6?! 34 ♙h6+!

The decisive exchange.

34 ... ♙xh6
35 ♙xh6 ♙c4

Sadly necessary. There was no other defence against the threat of 36 ♙h1 and 37 ♙f8+.

36 ♙xc4 ♜xc4

White has a decisive material and positional advantage. The game concluded:

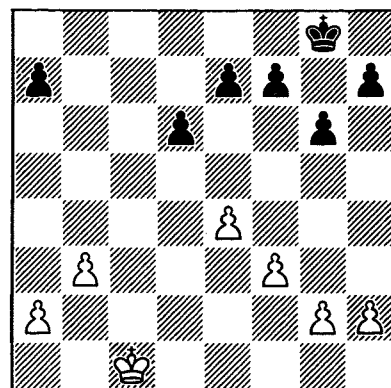
37 b3 ♖a5 38 ♙e3 ♜c6 39 ♙g1 a5 40 a3 ♜h7 41 ♜c2 a4 42 b4 ♜d8 43 ♙d1 Black resigns

Nedeljković-Volpert Belgrade 1961

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 g6 6 ♙c4 ♙g7 7 ♙b3 0-0 8 f3 ♜c6 9 ♙e3 ♜xd4 10 ♙xd4 ♙a5 11 ♙d2 ♙e6 12 0-0-0 b5 13 ♙b1 ♙fc8 14 ♙he1 ♙xb3 15 exb3 b4 16 ♜d5 ♜xd5 17 ♙xg7 ♜c3+ 18 ♙xc3 bxc3 19 bxc3 ♙xc3 20 ♙e3 ♙ac8 21 ♙xc3 ♙xc3 22 ♙xc3 ♙xc3 23 ♙b2 ♙c7 24 ♙c1 ♙xc1 25 ♙xc1 (8)

It is incredible, but true. The variation chosen by the two players has led almost by force to a pawn ending. Curiously, the later game Tal-Portisch, European Team Championship, Oberhausen 1961, followed almost the same course. An improvement for Black in this variation was made by Padevsky against Durašević (Belgrade 1961) - 17 ... ♜e3! with approximate

8



equality, but White can avoid this by choosing the move order 16 ♙xf6 bxc3 (16 ... ♙xf6 17 ♜d5) 17 ♙xc3 ♙xc3 18 bxc3, reaching the same position as in the game.

How should the resulting pawn ending be assessed? A notable feature is White's outside passed pawn on the queenside. White's chances are clearly better, but for a pawn ending this is not a good enough assessment. Here an exact diagnosis has to be established - whether the ending is won for White, or drawn. Until recently the position was thought to be won for White, the basis for this being the present game, which continued:

25 ... ♜f8 26 ♜c2 ♙e8 27 ♜c3 ♜d7 28 b4 ♜c6 29 a4 e6 30 ♜d4 ♙b6

Up till now everything has been very natural. To win White must break through with his king on the kingside, diverting the enemy king with his outside passed pawn on the opposite side of the board. In the given case it is not clear how to achieve this, since in the centre there are no breakthrough squares, and if at some point he plays e4-e5, then by ... d5 Black obtains a protected passed pawn in the centre. And yet a winning plan does exist.

31 g4 (10)

For the present it is difficult to detect any strategic aim behind White's move, and yet this is the key moment of the endgame.

31 ... ♜c7?

The losing move. To make it easier for the reader to grasp the essence of the endgame, we will first look at the game continuation.

32 g5! ♜b6
33 ♜c4

We will not comment on the next eight moves by the white king, since they were made to gain time on the clock.

33 ... a6 34 ♜d4 ♜c6 35 ♜c3 ♜b6 36 ♜c4 ♜c7 37 ♜d3 ♜c6 38 ♜c3 ♜b6 39 ♜d4 ♜c6 40 ♜d3 ♜b6 41 ♜c4 ♜c7 42 f4 ♜b6 43 ♜d4 ♜c6 44 ♜e3 ♜b6 45 f5!

White embarks on decisive action. This pawn is destined to become a queen.

45 ... a5

Passive tactics - 45 ... ♜c6 46 f6 ♜b6 47 ♜d4 ♜c6 48 ♜c4 ♜b6 49 a5+ ♜c6 50 h3 - would have lost quickly.

46 b5 ♜c5 47 f6 ♜b6 48 ♜f3 ♜c5 49 ♜g4 ♜b6 50 h3! ♜c5 51 h4 ♜b6 52 h5 ♜c5 53 h6

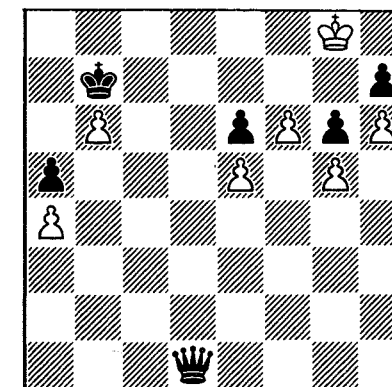
Completing the final preparations for the advance of the white king.

53 ... ♜b6 54 ♜f4 ♜c5 55 ♜e3 ♜b6 56 ♜d4 ♜b7 57 e5! d5 58 ♜c5 ♜c7 59 b6+ ♜b7 60 ♜d6!

Black queens his d-pawn two moves earlier than White, but he is unable to save the game. Now White's preceding play becomes understandable.

60 ... d4 61 ♜e7 d3 62 ♜xf7 d2 63 ♜g8 d1=♙ (9)

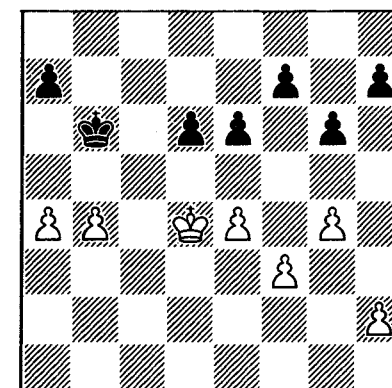
9



64 f7 ♙xa4 65 f8=♙ ♙b3 66 ♜xh7 Black resigns

1987 saw the publication of the volume on pawn endings of Averbakh's fundamental *Comprehensive Chess Endings*. The Soviet grandmaster made a thorough analysis of the Nedeljković-Volpert ending, and showed that Black could have gained a draw by subtle play. Let us examine the position after White's 31st move.

10



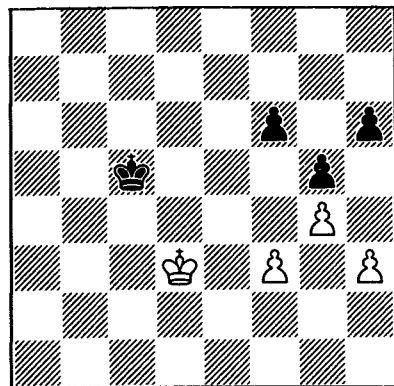
Averbakh considers that Black would have had every chance of drawing if he had played 31 ... g5!. Here are the main lines of his analysis:

(1) 32 ♜e3 ♜c6! 33 f4 gxf4+ 34 ♜xf4 d5! 35 ♜e5 (35 g5 d4!) 35 ... dxe4 36 ♜xe4

f6 37 ♖d4 ♖b6 38 ♖c4 a6 39 b5 axb5+ 40 axb5 e5 with a draw.

(2) 32 ♖c4 a6 (32... ♖c6 loses to 33 b5+ ♖b6 34 ♖b4 and 35 a5+) 33 b5 axb5+ 34 axb5 f6! 35 ♖b4 (35... ♖a5 was threatened) 35... d5 36 exd5 exd5 37 h3! h6 38 ♖a4 d4 39 ♖b4 d3 40 ♖c3 ♖xb5 41 ♖xd3 ♖c5 (11)

11



Averbakh analyses this position separately. "Things seem to be bad for Black: the opponent's king will break into his position and win a pawn. But after 42 ♖e4 ♖d6 43 ♖f5 ♖e7 44 ♖g6 ♖e6 45 ♖xh6 the clever 45... ♖d6! enables Black to maintain control of the key squares f5, f7 and f8. For example: 46 ♖h5 ♖e5! 47 h4 gxh4 48 ♖xh4 ♖f4, or 46 ♖h7 ♖d7! 47 ♖h8 ♖d8! 48 ♖g8 ♖e8! 49 ♖g7 ♖e7 50 ♖g6 ♖e6. Black's system of defence is very simple – maintaining the distant and close opposition."

(3) 32 ♖c4 a6 33 ♖d4!. White has provoked 32... a6, and he intends to advance f3-f4. 33... ♖c7! 34 ♖e3 ♖c6!. The black king occupies c6 at the right time, in order to answer with a counter in the centre. 35 f4 gxf4+ 36 ♖xf4 d5! with a draw.

The reader has looked through a thorough analysis of a pawn ending, and yet, despite the final outcome, it is unlikely

that anyone will want to repeat this ending as Black. Chess is so complicated that even in a pawn ending it can be difficult to establish an exact diagnosis. Returning to our example, we can cast doubts on White's very first move in the endgame. Instead of 26 ♖c2 he should have considered 26 b4! If now 26... a6 then 27 ♖c2 ♖e8 28 ♖b3 ♖d7 29 ♖a4 ♖c6 30 ♖a5 is very strong, while on 26... ♖e8 there can follow 27 b5! ♖d7 28 ♖c2 ♖c7 29 ♖b3 ♖b6 30 ♖b4, when White achieves a favourable position by driving back the enemy king with his a-pawn.

Short-Sax Hastings 1983/84

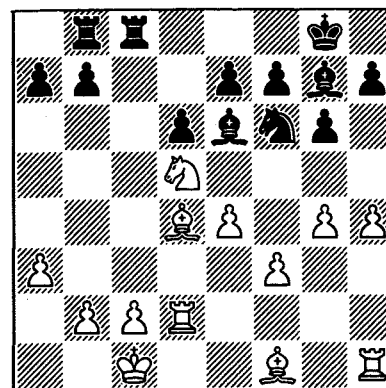
1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 g6 6 ♖e3 ♖g7 7 f3 0-0 8 ♖d2 ♖c6 9 g4 ♖e6 10 0-0-0 ♖xd4 11 ♖xd4 ♖a5 12 a3 ♖fc8 13 h4 ♖ab8 14 ♖d5 ♖xd2+ 15 ♖xd2 (12)

Until 1982 the move 9 g4 was rarely played, and served mainly as a means of avoiding competitions in the depth of theoretical knowledge after 9 0-0-0 d5!?. The real history of the line began after two games by Karpov in the 1982 London tournament – against Mestel and Miles (both of these games are annotated by Karpov in *Chess at the Top 1979-84*, Pergamon, 1984).

Mestel continued 9... ♖xd4 10 ♖xd4 ♖e6, but after 11 ♖d5! he was prevented from developing his queen actively (... ♖a5!), and 11... ♖xd5 12 exd5 ♖c8 13 h4 ♖c7 14 ♖h2! e5 15 dxe6 fxe6 16 h5 gave White the advantage.

Miles played more accurately, reaching the diagram position, but after 15... ♖xd5 16 exd5 he was unable to overcome his defensive difficulties.

12



Soon after the opening a typical Dragon endgame has been reached with a weakness at e7. The difficulty of defending such positions has long been known. An old example is Tal-Khasin (29th USSR Championship, Baku 1961), where after 9 ♖c4 ♖xd4 10 ♖xd4 ♖e6 11 ♖b3 ♖a5 12 0-0-0 b5 13 ♖b1 b4 14 ♖d5 ♖xd5 15 exd5 ♖b5 16 ♖he1 a5 17 ♖e2 ♖xe2 18 ♖xe2 a4 19 ♖c4 ♖fc8 20 b3 (also strong is 20 ♖b5 ♖a5 21 ♖xf6! ♖xf6 22 ♖c6 with advantage to White, Tal-Larsen, Zürich 1959) 20... ♖f8 21 g4! ♖e8 22 ♖b5 axb3 23 cxb3! ♖xd4 24 ♖xd4 Black was unable to hold the endgame.

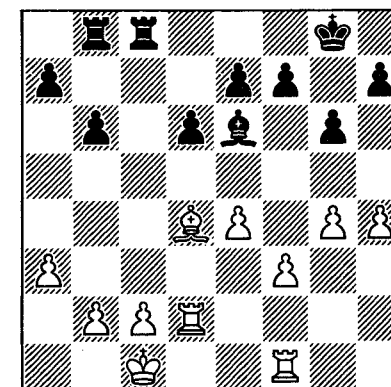
15... ♖xd5 16 ♖xg7 ♖e3 17 ♖d4 ♖xf1 18 ♖xf1 b6 (13)

How right Karpov was, in stating that after 14 h5 b5 "the direct attack on the king is not always successful", was shown by the game Plaskett-Watson (Birmingham 1983): 15 h6 b4! 16 hxg7 bxa3 17 ♖h6 axb2+ 18 ♖d2 ♖xg4! with a crushing counterattack against the white king.

15... ♖h8 is less critical, as played by Kir.Georgiev against Short (Oakham 1984). White gained the advantage in a sharp ending after 16 ♖d5 ♖xd2+ 17 ♖xd2 ♖xd5 18 exd5 ♖xd5 19 ♖xh8 ♖xf3 20 ♖h3 ♖xg4 21 ♖g3 ♖xh8 22 ♖xg4.

With his 16th move ♖xg7! in the present game Short avoids the above endgame, since with his pawn at h4 (instead of h6) White's chances are markedly reduced (Marjanović-Velimić, Yugoslav Championship, Herzog-Novi 1983). In turn, not wishing to suffer with a weak pawn at e7 after 16... ♖xg7 17 exd5, Sax preferred 16... ♖e3. It was hard to imagine that, with opposite-colour bishops and no obvious pawn weaknesses, the ending would be very unpleasant for him...

13



19 g5!

White fixes the opponent's kingside pawns and threatens by 20 h5 to begin a real attack on that part of the board.

19 ... h5
20 f4

Capturing en passant would not have been especially advantageous.

20... ♖h3 21 ♖ff2 ♖c6 22 f5 ♖e8 23 b3

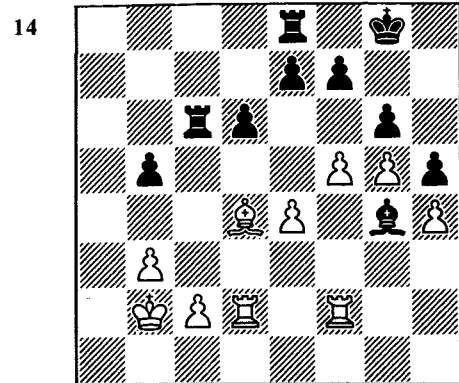
Having seized space on the kingside, Short prepares to put pressure on Black's position in the centre with c2-c4.

23 ... ♖g4
24 ♖b2 a6

Sax forestalls the opponent's plan and

prepares counterplay – 25 ... b5 in reply to 25 c4.

25 a4 b5
26 axb5 axb5 (14)



Black has acquired a weak pawn at b5, and White commences play on both flanks, combining an attack on the opponent's king with pressure on the queenside.

27 ♖c3 ♜c5 28 f6! ♜c6 29 ♜d5 exf6

Black is forced into a series of exchanges favouring White. 29 ... ♜c5 30 fxe7 ♜xd5 31 exd5 ♜xe7 32 ♜f6 and 33 ♜b4 was totally bad for him.

30 ♜xf6 ♜xe4 31 ♜xb5 ♜c8 32 ♜d2

Threatening 33 ♜b8 and 34 ♜xd6.

32 ... ♜f8
33 c4! ♜e8

Short gives the following variation in reply to 33 ... ♜xh4: 34 c5 ♜e4 (34 ... ♜e8 35 cxd6 ♜d7 36 ♜e5 ♜xd6 37 ♜e7+ ♜c6 38 ♜c2+) 35 cxd6 ♜d7 (35 ... ♜e8 36 d7+) 36 ♜b8+ ♜c8 37 ♜b7 with a decisive advantage for White.

34 ♜bd5 ♜xh4

The inclusion of 34 ... ♜d7 35 ♜e5 would not have improved Black's position.

35 ♜xd6 ♜xd6 36 ♜xd6 ♜d7 37 c5

In this position Black overstepped the time limit. His position is lost, as shown by the following brief variation given by Short: 37 ... ♜h2+ 38 ♜a3 ♜c2 39 b4 h4 40 ♜d1! h3 41 ♜b3 ♜f2 42 c6.

PAULSEN VARIATION

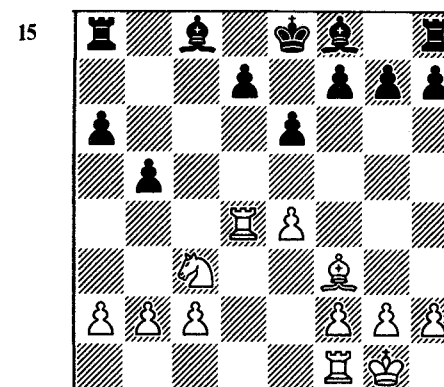
The Paulsen Variation is perhaps the most flexible in the Sicilian Defence. During the course of the game the black pawn formation can assume patterns typical of the Scheveningen Variation, the Boleslavsky Variation, or even the Dragon Variation. In addition, the knight exchange ♜d4xc6, normally unfavourable for White in other variations, is here a typical stratagem for White, and can lead to an asymmetric pawn formation, in which White has a pawn majority on the queenside and Black in the centre.

The 'pure' Paulsen endgame has a number of advantages for Black compared with Scheveningen set-ups. In particular, the d-pawn is more easily defended at d7 than at d6, and the vacant dark squares leave scope for manoeuvre. In positions of this type Black's main active plan is a queenside pawn offensive with ... a6-a5 and ... b5-b4, combined with pressure on the c-file, which, however, is typical of many Sicilian set-ups. A classic example of this plan is provided, in our opinion, by the game *I. Zaitsev-Taimanov*. White's plan in this endgame is much more difficult to define. Most often his chances lie in eliminating the opponent's dark-square bishop and the seizure of the dark squares, pressure on the d-file and the undermining flank move a2-a4. White's strategy is well illustrated by the game *Tal-Kochiev*.

In the remaining endings of this section a transformation of the 'Paulsen' pawn formation occurs, and various plans are carried out, but in each case the struggle is typical of the Sicilian Defence. Cf. also *Karpov-Taimanov*, USSR Spartakiad, Moscow 1983, annotated by Karpov in *Chess at the Top 1979-1984* p.176 (Pergamon, 1984).

Tartakower-Sultan Khan Semmering 1931

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜c6 5 ♜c3 a6 6 ♜e2 ♜ge7 7 ♜e3 ♜xd4 8 ♜xd4 ♜c6 9 0-0 b5 10 ♜d2 ♜xd4 11 ♜xd4 ♜c7 12 ♜ad1 ♜c5 13 ♜f3 ♜xd4 14 ♜xd4 (15)



The British grandmaster Sultan Khan, a native of the Punjab, had a poor knowledge of opening theory, which, however, did not prevent him in a very short time from achieving outstanding successes. For his rapid ascent Sultan Khan was largely indebted to his amazing positional feeling. It is sufficient to say that the manoeuvre employed by him, ... ♜ge7, ... ♜xd4 and ... ♜c6, is topical even today, nearly 60 years later – a unique instance in such a sharp opening as the Sicilian Defence. Moreover, the 'legislator of fashion' in the Paulsen

Variation, grandmaster Taimanov, has in recent decades been regularly choosing the move order employed by Sultan Khan.

Returning to the present game, we should remark that Tartakower's reaction to Black's unusual sixth move – natural development – was unfortunate. Instead of 7 ♜e3, 7 f4 or 7 ♜b3 came into consideration. And White's decision to give up his strong dark-square bishop (9 ♜e3 was definitely better) and then go into an endgame was simply wrong. In the endgame it is hard for White to counter the positional advantages of the opponent, who has two strong bishops, the more flexible pawn formation, and prospects of pressure on the queenside.

14 ... ♜a7!

An excellent manoeuvre. The black rook is transferred to c7, from where it will assist the queenside pawn offensive and restrict the enemy knight, while the d-pawn remains at d7, where it is less vulnerable.

15 e5 ♜c7 16 a3 ♜e7 17 ♜d2 f6!

Of course, it is unfavourable for Black to allow ♜e4-d6.

18 exf6 ♜xf6?

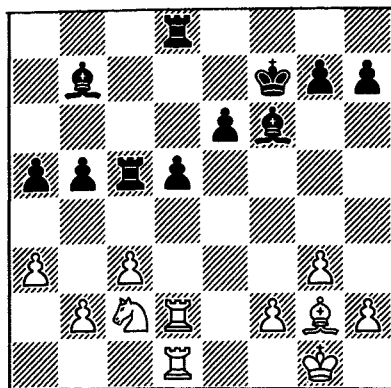
Capturing with the pawn was stronger. Behind its strong pawn screen the black king did not have to fear the bishop check at h5, and could have moved to either d8 or f8. Now White succeeds in setting up a solid defence.

19 ♜d1 0-0
20 c3 d5

The drawbacks of this move are obvious, but there is no other way for Black to bring his light-square bishop into play.

21 ♜e1 ♜d8 22 ♜e3 a5 23 ♜c2 ♜f7 24 g3 ♜c5 25 ♜ed1 ♜b7 26 ♜g2 (16)

16



As a result of Black's inaccurate 18th move White has managed to fortify his position on the queenside and in the centre. Black must try to break through with ... b4 or else reconcile himself to a draw.

26 ... ♖c6 27 f4 ♚b6 28 h4 g6 29 ♜h2 ♜c8 30 ♜e1 ♜c7 31 ♜h3 ♜c8 32 ♜de2 h5 33 ♜d1?! ♜d7 34 ♜ed2?

By skilful manoeuvring Tartakower has significantly improved his position and created a practically impregnable fortress. But with his last move he voluntarily weakens his counterplay against the e6 pawn, allowing Black to link his dark-square bishop with the ... b4 advance. Without risking anything, White could have resorted to waiting tactics by moving his king, after first returning his rook from d1 to the e-file.

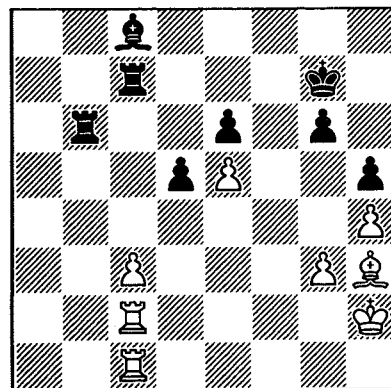
34 ... ♜e7 35 ♜d4 b4 36 axb4 axb4 37 ♜f3?

By his unfortunate actions on moves 33 and 34, White has allowed the opponent to revive his fading initiative. The only way to save the game was by counterplay against the e6 pawn. He should have exchanged pawns on b4 and played his rook to e2. Instead, Tartakower prepares to play his knight to e5, where it will be

exchanged, after which the black e6 pawn is no longer a weakness.

37 ... bxc3 38 ♜e5+ ♜g7 39 bxc3 ♜c8 40 ♜c2 ♜f6 41 ♜dc1 ♜xe5! 42 fxe5 (17)

17



White has weak pawns at c3 and e5. Loss of material is inevitable.

42 ... ♜bc6 43 ♜f1 ♜c5 44 ♜d3 ♜d7 45 ♜g1 ♜a4 46 ♜a2 ♜b3 47 ♜a3 ♜xc3 48 ♜xc3 ♜xc3

Black has won a pawn. Sultan Khan conducts the technical phase of the game very surely.

49 ♜e2 d4!

Of course, not 49 ... ♜xg3+? 50 ♜f2 ♜c3 51 ♜d1.

50 ♜f2 ♜h6 51 g4 hxg4 52 ♜xg4 ♜c2+ 53 ♜g3 ♜c4 54 ♜f4 ♜f2+! 55 ♜e4? ♜d5+! 56 ♜d3 ♜g2

The game could have concluded here. The finish was:

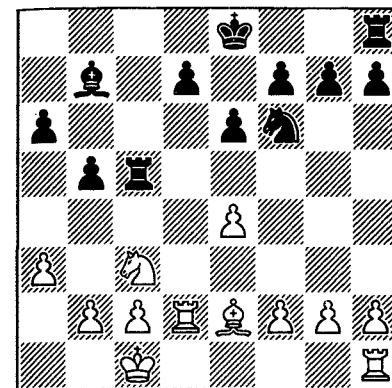
57 ♜xe6 ♜xe6 58 ♜xd4 ♜d2+ 59 ♜e3 ♜h2 60 ♜a6 ♜f5 61 ♜d4 ♜xh4+ White resigns

I. Zaitsev-Taimanov

30th USSR Championship, Yerevan 1962

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 e6 5 ♜c3 a6 6 ♜e2 ♜c7 7 a3 b5 8 ♜xc6 ♜xc6 9 ♜e3 ♜b7 10 ♜d4 ♜c8 11 0-0-0 ♜f6 12 ♜d2 ♜c5 13 ♜xc5 ♜xc5 14 ♜xc5 ♜xc5 (18)

18



At the 29th USSR Championship in Baku, a year before the game in question, Taimanov suffered a catastrophe in his favourite variation. His game with Bronstein went 9 ... ♜c5?! 10 ♜d4! f6? 11 ♜xb5!, and White won quickly. The move 10 ♜d4 is also a 'patent' of Bronstein, tried by him against Ivkov in the USSR-Yugoslavia match, Lvov 1962. During the few months following the Lvov match, Taimanov found a harmonious set-up of the black pieces, neutralising White's plan of 10 ♜d4 followed by 0-0-0. Thus after 11 ... ♜f6 he was already threatening 12 ... ♜xe4! and 12 ... ♜xa3. (It should be mentioned that 10 ... ♜d6! 11 ♜xd6 ♜xd6 12 0-0-0 ♜e5 13 ♜d4 f6 is also quite good, Gurgeniidze-Suetin, Kharkov 1963.) The ending arising after 12 ... ♜c5 is very pleasant for Black: his bishop is more active than White's and he plans play on the c-file combined with ... a5 and ... b4, whereas White's pressure on the d-file is completely unpromising, and the slight weakness of the dark squares is of no significance. Even so, White's defences

would have been more solid after the simple 15 f3. With his next move Zaitsev assists the squeezing of White's position on the kingside.

15 ♜f3? g5!

An excellent move. Black begins squeezing the opponent's position from two sides.

16 ♜hd1 h5!

Taimanov does not forget about possible counterplay by White. The careless 16 ... g4? would have had dismal consequences after 17 ♜xg4! ♜xg4 18 ♜xd7.

17 ♜d6 ♜c6
18 h4

White had a possibility which, though interesting, was clearly insufficient to equalize - 18 ♜d5. By 18 ... exd5 19 exd5 g4! 20 dxc6 gxf3 21 ♜xf6 fxe2 Black would have retained the advantage.

18 ... gxf4
19 ♜h1

But here 19 ♜d5!? was perhaps the best practical chance. White would have had better drawing chances in the rook ending after 19 ... exd5 20 exd5 ♜xd5 21 ♜xd5 ♜xd5 22 ♜1xd5 ♜xd5 23 ♜xd5, than after the continuation chosen in the game.

19 ... a5! 20 ♜d4 e5! 21 ♜d2 b4 22 axb4 axb4 23 ♜d5 ♜xd5 24 exd5 ♜c4!

By his energetic attack on the queenside Taimanov has prevented White from regaining his pawn, and has increased his advantage decisively.

25 d6

Otherwise Black himself would have placed his pawn at d6.

25 ... 0-0!

It is quite possible to forget about such a move in the endgame. The king's rook comes into play by the shortest path, and the game concludes within a few moves.

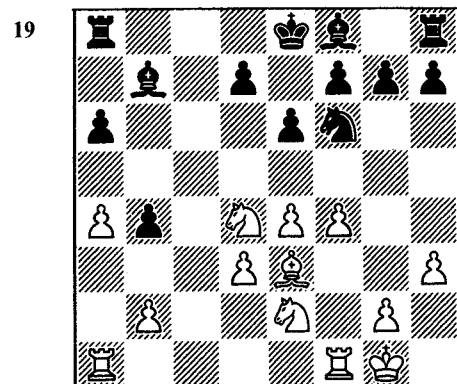
26 ♖h3 ♜f4 27 ♜b1 ♜b8 28 ♜a2 ♜b6!
29 ♜b3 ♜g7 30 ♜h1 ♜g6 31 ♜a1 h3 32
♜g1 ♜h6 33 ♜a8 hxc2 34 ♜xc2 ♜e8 35
♜d3 ♜xd6 36 ♜e3 ♜c7 37 ♜f3 ♜e6!

White lost on time.

Tal-Kochiev
Leningrad 1977

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 a6 5
♜c3 ♜c7 6 ♜d3 ♜c6 7 ♜e3 ♜f6 8 0-0
♜e5 9 h3 b5 10 f4 ♜c4 11 ♜xc4 ♜xc4 12
♜d3 ♜b7 13 a4 ♜xd3 14 cxd3 b4 15 ♜ce2
(19)

The opening variation with 9 ... b5 has long had the reputation of being unfavourable for Black. Black in 1966 in Fischer-Petrosian, Santa Monica, 12 ... d5 13 e5 (13 exd5 ♜xd3 14 cxd3 b4 15 ♜e4 ♜xd5 led to an unclear game in Nezhmetdinov-Tal, USSR Spartakiad, Moscow 1959) 13 ... ♜d7 14 ♜xc4 dxc4 15 f5 ♜xe5 16 fxe6 ♜xe6 17 ♜ae1 gave White the better game. Kochiev's attempt to improve Petrosian's play by 12 ... ♜b7? has led to a difficult ending.



White has practically completed the mobilisation of his forces, which have formed a powerful grouping in the centre, and are ready to become active on the queenside. Black still has to complete his development and not allow the creation of serious weaknesses on the queenside. With these two tasks Kochiev is unable to cope.

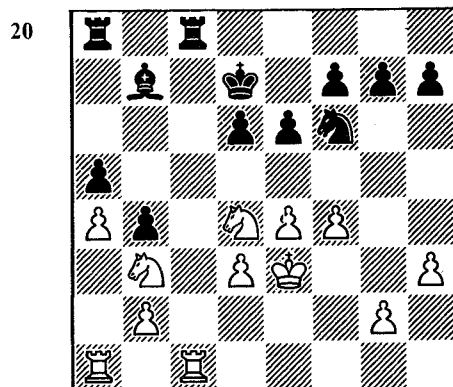
15 ... ♜c5 16 ♜f2 d6 17 ♜b3!

The white knight heads for a5.

17 ... ♜xe3+
18 ♜xe3 a5

Black has managed to prevent the squeezing of his queenside, but at the cost of creating a chronic weakness – his a5 pawn.

19 ♜ed4 ♜d7
20 ♜fc1 ♜hc8 (20)



Black has been able to parry the opponent's first onslaught and to complete his development. White has to find ways to strengthen his position.

21 ♜d2!

Tal carries out an adroit pirouette with his cavalry. (This first occurred in Uytunen-Reshevsky, Palma de Mallorca 1970, where White also won.) The knight at b3 makes

way for its colleague, and itself prepares to go to c4, after which the a5 pawn will be indefensible.

21 ... ♜a6

21 ... ♜a6 would not have changed the character of the play. There could have followed 22 ♜4b3 ♜c7 23 ♜xc7+ ♜xc7 24 ♜xa5! ♜xd3 25 ♜xd3 ♜xa5 26 ♜c4 ♜c5+ 27 ♜b3.

22 ♜xc8 ♜xc8
23 ♜4b3 d5

Weakening the c5 square, for which the white pieces now aim. But 24 ♜c4, winning the a5 pawn, was threatened.

24 ♜c5 ♜a7 25 ♜c1 dxe4 26 dxe4

White's positional advantage has become decisive. Now comes an energetic finish.

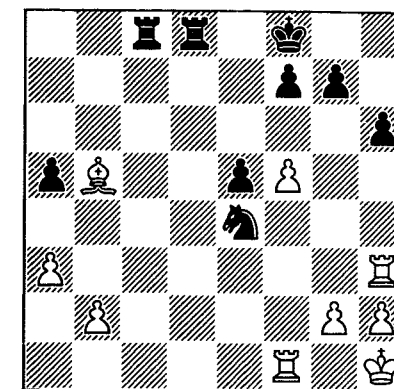
26 ... ♜b8 27 ♜xb7! ♜xb7 28 ♜c5 ♜d7 29 ♜b5+ ♜c8 30 ♜c4 ♜c7 31 ♜d4 f6 32 ♜xa5 e5+ 33 fxe5 fxe5+ 34 ♜xe5 ♜c2 35 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 36 ♜a7+ ♜e6 37 ♜xg7 ♜xb2 38 g4 h5 39 gxh5 b3 40 h6 Black resigns

Lepyoshkin-Bebchuk
Moscow 1964

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 a6 3 ♜c3 e6 4 d4 cxd4 5
♜xd4 ♜c7 6 ♜d3 ♜c6 7 ♜e3 ♜f6 8 0-0 b5
9 a3 ♜b7 10 ♜h1 ♜xd4 11 ♜xd4 ♜c5 12
♜xc5 ♜xc5 13 f4 d6 14 ♜e1 0-0 15 ♜h4
♜fe8 16 f5 e5 17 ♜f3 h6 18 ♜g1 d5 19 exd5
♜xd5 20 ♜g3 ♜f8 21 ♜xd5 ♜xd5 22 c4
bxc4 23 ♜xc4 ♜e4 24 ♜h3 a5 25 ♜f1
♜ac8 26 ♜b5 ♜ed8 27 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 (21)

A single glance at the position is sufficient to decide that Black has a clear advantage. The game has as though followed a script written by the black pieces. A well played opening, a timely counter in the centre, and then a transition

21



into a superior, perhaps even technically won ending. Black's advantage is apparent in all the strategic components. His knight occupies the only open files, his king is closer to the centre, his pawn formation is better, and he has complete superiority in the centre. Also, White cannot count on the limited number of pawns on the kingside. If he exchanges his two queenside pawns for the black a-pawn, then practically any ending will be hopeless for him in view of his breakaway pawn at f5.

28 ♜e3 ♜d4 29 ♜g1 f6 30 ♜d3 ♜c5 31
♜xd4 exd4 32 ♜d3 ♜d2 33 ♜d1 ♜b3

White has managed to simplify the position somewhat, but things have by no means improved for him. The black e5 pawn has crossed to the d-file and has been transformed into a dangerous passed pawn, the knight at b3 occupies a splendid position, and the rook at c5 is working very effectively both along the file, and along the rank.

34 ♜f2

White brings his king to the centre, but Black can also do the same with greater effect. This was perhaps an instance when the centralisation of the king was untimely

(it is practically never incorrect). It would have been much more appropriate to begin tackling the enemy knight with 34 ♖b1. After the possible sequel 34 ... a4 35 ♖a2 ♖c1 36 ♖b1 Black would have had more problems to face.

34 ... ♖e7 35 ♖f3 ♖d6 36 g4 ♖e5

Black no longer has to worry about his knight. The rook ending after 37 ♖c2 ♖e3+ 38 ♖f4 ♖d5 39 ♖xb3+ ♖xb3 is easily won for him.

37 ♖e4 ♖c5 38 ♖f4 a4 39 h4 ♖c4 40 ♖d3+ ♖d5 41 g5 hxg5+ 42 hxg5 ♖c5

The d-pawn's moment has arrived.

43 ♖f1 ♖e4+ 44 ♖g3 ♖e5 45 gxf6 gxf6 46 ♖c1 ♖e3+ 47 ♖g2 ♖e4

The centre is 'dark' from the number of black pieces. The game is decided.

48 ♖b5 d3 49 ♖xa4 ♖e2+ 50 ♖f3 ♖d4 51 ♖c8 ♖f2+ 52 ♖g4 ♖xb2 53 ♖c6 ♖g2+ 54 ♖f3 ♖f2+ 55 ♖g4 d2 56 ♖d8+ ♖e3 57 ♖a4 ♖f4+ 58 ♖h5 ♖g3+ 59 ♖g6 ♖xa4 White resigns

Kostro-Moiseyev
Moscow 1970

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖c6 5 ♖c3 a6 6 ♖e3 ♖c7 7 ♖d3 ♖f6 8 0-0 ♖e5 9 h3 ♖c5 10 ♖e2 d6 11 f4 ♖g6 12 ♖b3 ♖xe3+ 13 ♖xe3 0-0 14 ♖ae1 b5 15 a3 ♖b7 16 ♖h2 e5 17 f5 ♖e7 18 ♖h1 ♖fe8 19 ♖g5 d5 20 ♖d2 ♖h8 21 ♖f3 ♖ad8 22 ♖h4 ♖b6 23 exd5 ♖exd5 24 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 25 ♖fe3 ♖c6 26 ♖e4 ♖xe4 27 ♖xe4 f6 28 ♖d3 ♖xe4 29 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 30 ♖xe4 ♖xd3 31 cxd3 (22)

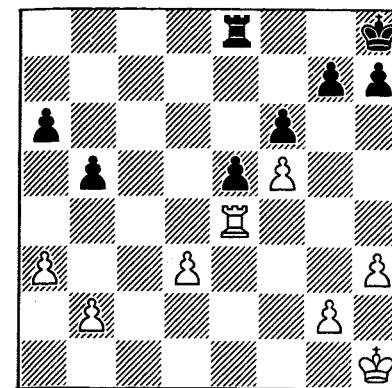
With his 11th move, Moiseyev – a

leading expert on the Paulsen Variation – significantly improves Black's play in comparison with the 23rd game of the Spassky-Petrosian Match (1969), where 11 ... ♖ed7 was played. Spassky, playing White, easily gained an advantage: 12 ♖b3 ♖xe3+ 13 ♖xe3 b6 14 ♖ae1 ♖b7 15 e5! It is precisely against the threat of e4-e5 that 11 ... ♖g6 is aimed: the d7 square remains unoccupied, and after the exchange on e5 Black begins counterplay against the e5 pawn by ... ♖d7. For example: 12 ♖b3 ♖xe3+ 13 ♖xe3 0-0 14 ♖ae1 b5 15 e5 dxe5 16 fxe5 ♖d7 ♖. It has to be admitted that Kostro failed to appreciate the subtleties of the chosen variation, and with 12 ♖b3?! (in analogy with the Spassky-Petrosian game) he already lost his opening advantage. According to Boleslavsky, White could have fought for an advantage by 12 ♖ae1! 0-0 13 ♖d1 b5 14 c3 ♖b7 15 ♖f2, lining up his forces in the immediate vicinity of the enemy king.

Also of interest is Petrushin's move 12 ♖f2!? On the careless 12 ... 0-0 there followed 13 e5! dxe5 14 ♖xe6! with complications favourable for White in Petrushin-Suetin, RSFSR Championship, Tula 1974.

After 12 ♖b3? Black did not experience any development difficulties, and in reply to the opponent's passive 16 ♖h2?! he began active counterplay in the centre with 16 ... e5!. Kostro's 17 f5? was a serious strategic mistake – it was time to play for equality with 17 fxe5 dxe5. White's attacking chances were problematic: his heavy pieces were 'cramped' on the kingside – largely because of the move h2-h3. (Normally White's queen or rook can be conveniently deployed on this square.) But Black was able to make the thematic advance ... d5, and after opening the d-file he seized the initiative.

22



31 ... ♖d8

The rook ending is difficult for White. His rook is forced to occupy an extremely unfortunate position at e3, and it is some time before he can free it with the help of his king. Apart from the weak pawn at d3, White's kingside pawn formation is far from irreproachable on account of the breakaway f5 pawn. As we see, Black has more than sufficient positional pluses. White's only trump is the fact that rook endings, according to Tartakower's witty definition, are never won.

32 ♖e3 ♖d4 33 g3 ♖g8 34 ♖g2 ♖f7 35 ♖f2 ♖e7 36 ♖e2 ♖d6 37 ♖d2 ♖d5 38 ♖c3

Both sides have brought their kings to the centre. Black has strengthened his position to the maximum, and it is now time for positive action.

38 ... g6!

A strong move, camouflaging Black's subsequent plan. It is advantageous for him to set the opponent the problem of whether to exchange, before the game is adjourned. The inclusion of 38 ... a5 39 b4 was most probably to White's advantage, in view of possible counterplay against the b5 pawn.

39 ♖f3?

Black's cunning proves fully justified. White's only chance was to exchange on g6. After 39 fxg6 hxg6 40 ♖f3 f5 41 ♖f2 he would have retained hopes of a draw, although Black has many possible plans for strengthening his position. Had Black played 38 ... g5, White might well have had the sense to capture en passant. After 38 ... g6 it was psychologically much more difficult for him to do this.

39 ... g5!

The black rook's complete control of the fourth rank makes the win technically straightforward. White cannot avoid pawn weaknesses on the kingside.

40 ♖f1 h5 41 ♖c1 h4 42 g4 ♖f4

The two pawn weaknesses at h3 and d3 cannot be held.

43 ♖d2 ♖f2+ 44 ♖e3 ♖h2 45 ♖c8 ♖xh3+ 46 ♖d2 ♖g3 47 ♖d8+ ♖c6 48 ♖f8 ♖xg4 49 ♖xf6+ ♖d5 50 ♖xa6 ♖f4 51 ♖b6 ♖c5 52 ♖g6 ♖xf5 53 ♖e3 ♖d5 54 ♖b6 h3 55 ♖xb5+ ♖c6 56 ♖b8 g4 57 ♖h8 ♖f1 58 ♖h4 g3 White resigns

Nezhmetdinov-Vasyukov
USSR Championship Semi-Final, Kiev 1957

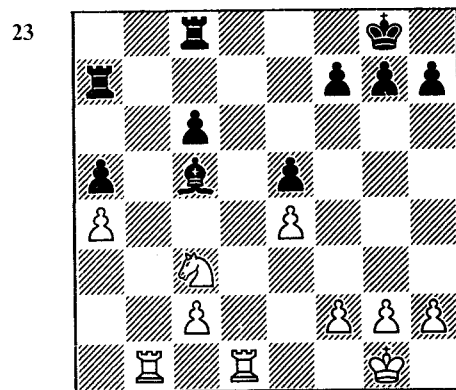
1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 a6 5 ♖c3 ♖c7 6 ♖e2 ♖f6 7 0-0 ♖c6 8 ♖g5 ♖e7 9 ♖xc6 bxc6 10 ♖d4 e5 11 ♖c4 ♖b8 12 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 13 b4 0-0 14 a4 ♖e7 15 ♖ab1 a5 16 b5 ♖d6 17 ♖fd1 ♖c5 18 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 19 ♖g4 ♖a7 20 bxc6 dxc6 21 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 (23)

The outstanding Soviet master Rashid Nezhmetdinov (1912-1974) had an exceptionally deep understanding of the Sicilian Defence, against which he had to

his credit a number of typically crushing wins. Chess players will always be delighted by attacks bearing the 'Nezhmetdinov' stamp: Nezhmetdinov-Paoli (Bucharest 1954), Nezhmetdinov-Tal (29th USSR Championship, Baku 1961) – the list can easily be extended. Less well known are Nezhmetdinov's positional squeezes in the Sicilian. The present game is one of these. The manoeuvre dxc6 and d4 is a Nezhmetdinov patent. The natural recapture $9 \dots \text{bxc6}?! (9 \dots \text{dxc6}$ is safer) slightly weakened the queenside; after $10 \text{ d4}!$ White was threatening e4-e5 (bad was $10 \dots 0-0$ 11 e5 d5 12 dxd5), and Black was forced to play $\dots \text{e5}$, allowing White to attack the d7 pawn with xf6 and g4 .

After driving the queen to b8 (on $11 \dots 0-0$ there would have followed 12 xf6 xf6 13 d5), Nezhmetdinov, by threatening a queenside blockade with 15 a5 , forced the opponent himself to seek the exchange of queens.

The culmination of White's plan was $19 \text{ g4}!$, provoking the exchange of light-square bishops.



The diagram position favours White. He controls both open files, and the black pawns at a5 and e5 restrict their own bishop. However, Black's position cannot be considered totally unpromising. In

endings with pawns on both wings, rook and bishop in tandem are traditionally stronger than rook and knight, and if Black should succeed in extending the scope of his bishop by advancing his kingside pawns, he can hope for counterplay.

22 cf1 cf8

$22 \dots \text{g6}$ came into consideration, preparing $\dots \text{f5}$ with an outlet for the king towards the centre via f7 .

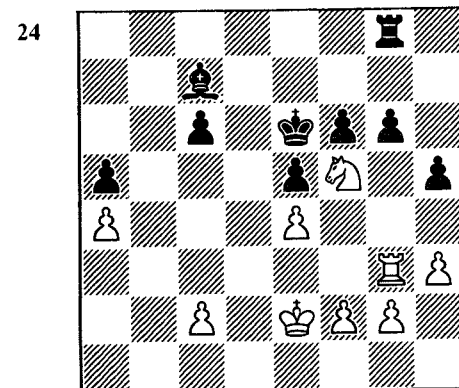
23 ce2 ce7 24 fb3 g6 25 da2 $\text{d7}?$

Inconsistent. After $25 \dots \text{f5}$ 26 exf5 gxf5 27 fh3 cf6 28 fh6+ and 29 fe6 the white pieces would have become very active, but the simple $25 \dots \text{ce6}$, retaining the possibility of $\dots \text{f5}$, would have enabled Black to obtain a satisfactory position. The exchange of one pair of rooks allows White to weaken the opponent's kingside pawns and to hinder his counterplay.

26 fxd7+ cxd7 27 dc1 f6 28 fh3 $\text{h5}?$

A further mistake. $28 \dots \text{fh8}$ was better, retaining hopes of playing $\dots \text{f5}$ in a favourable situation. Now White attacks the g6 pawn, forcing Black to switch to passive defence on the kingside.

29 db3 db6 30 fg3 fg8 31 dd2 ce6 32 dc4 ec7 33 fb3 cd7 34 fg3 fg7 35 h3 fg8 36 de3 ce6 37 df5 (24)



Black's uncertain play has led to a difficult position. White has gained the opportunity for combined play on both wings against the g6 and c6 pawns, while threatening to use the b-file for invasion by his rook.

37 \dots $\text{fb8}?$

The final mistake, after which Black can hardly hope to be able to cover his weaknesses on the b-file by $\dots \text{fb8}$.

38 dh4 g5

The difference in the bishop's position immediately tells. Were it at b6 , $38 \dots \text{cf7}$ would be possible, whereas now he would have no way of meeting 39 fb3 . After the advance of the pawn to g5 , the white knight obtains eternal use of the f5 square, and Black's position goes rapidly downhill.

39 df5 fh8
40 h4! g4

Other moves are no better. On $40 \dots \text{gxh4}$ White has the very strong 41 fg7 , when his rook breaks through along the seventh rank to the enemy queenside pawns, while on $40 \dots \text{fg8}$ there could have followed 41 hxg5 fxg5 42 fh3 h4 43 g3 hxg3 44 fh6+ and 45 fxg3 .

41 f3 gxf3+ 42 cxf3 ed6 43 fg7 fb8 44 fa7 ef8 45 fxa5 fb2 46 fa8! cf7 47 g4!

White conducts the concluding stage with great energy.

47 $\dots \text{hxg4+}$ 48 cxc4 fxc2 49 fa7+ ce8 50 h5 fg2+ 51 ch3 fe2 52 fa8+ cf7 53 h6 fxh6

There is no other way of stopping the pawn.

54 dxc6+ cg6 55 df5 fxe4 56 de7+ cg5 57 fg8+ ch5 58 a5 fa4 59 dxc6

The rest is not of any great interest. The game concluded:

59 $\dots \text{f5}$ 60 fa8 fa3+ 61 cg2 e4 62 a6 f4 63 a7 fa2+ 64 cf1 fa1+ 65 ce2 fa2+ 66 cd1 fa1+ 67 cc2 fa2+ 68 cb3 fa6 69 fh8+ cg4 70 a8= fxa8 71 fxa8 f3 72 cc2 cg3 73 cd1 cf2 74 de5 Black resigns

Robatsch-Portisch
Varna Olympiad 1962

1 e4 c5 2 cf3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 dxd4 a6 5 d3 dc6 6 dxc6 bxc6 7 $0-0$ d5 8 dd2 df6 9 b3 db4 10 exd5 dc3 11 fb1 cxd5 12 db2 cc7 13 dxc3 fxc3 14 ce2 db7 15 fde1 $0-0$ 16 f4 dd7 17 df3 a5 18 a4 h6 19 ce3 fde8 20 dd4 fa6 21 fxa6 fxa6 22 fxc3 fxc3 (25)

White played the opening inaccurately. Modern theory regards Averbakh's continuation 8 c4! as the most dangerous for Black. The idea of it is extremely attractive: to immediately open the centre and exploit both Black's lack of development and the defects of his pawn formation.

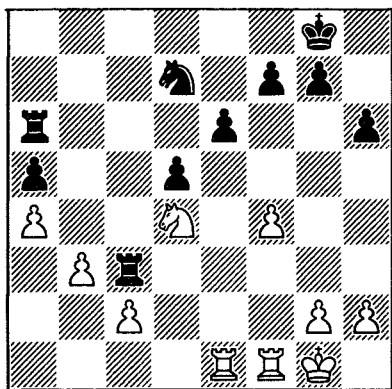
After $8 \dots \text{df6}$ 9 cxd5 cxd5 10 exd5 dxd5 11 de4! de7 12 dc3 db7 13 dxd5 exd5 14 fa4+ fd7 15 fxd7+ cxd7 16 fd1 White won a pawn in Averbakh-Taimanov (27th USSR Championship, Leningrad 1960), while $10 \dots \text{exd5}$ 11 dc3 de7 12 fa4+! fd7 13 fe1! gave White a clear advantage in Fischer-Petrosian (Candidates Match, Buenos Aires 1971).

Nowadays, in reply to 5 d3 , Black usually chooses $5 \dots \text{ec5}$, $5 \dots \text{g6}$, or, most often, $5 \dots \text{df6}$, and on c2-c4 (immediately or after $0-0$) he switches to a 'hedgehog' set-up, with $\dots \text{d6}$, $\dots \text{b6}$ and $\dots \text{db7}$ etc.

9 ce2 is stronger than 9 b3 , and only after $9 \dots \text{de7}$ 10 fe1 $0-0$ – 11 b3! (Smyslov-Tal, Candidates Tournament,

Yugoslavia 1959). Finally, after 9 ... ♖b4! White could have played 10 ♖b2! (Spassky-Petrosian, World Championship, Moscow 1969), not fearing 10 ... ♗xd2 in view of 11 ♗xd2 dxe4 12 ♗g5! with complications favouring White. After 10 exd5?! ♗c3! Black's position was already the more pleasant, although of course there was as yet nothing decisive. In order to exploit the slight weakness of White's queenside, by 17 ... a5 Portisch provoked the reply 18 a4, restricting the mobility of the white pawns, and then took play into a favourable ending.

25



White's queenside pawns are fixed and immobilised. If Black should succeed in advancing his pawn centre, his advantage will become very real.

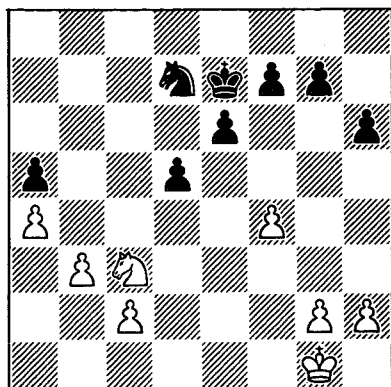
23 ♖f3 ♗c5
24 ♗ee3?!

Robatsch chooses an erroneous plan. He aims only for simplification, assuming that this is the shortest path to a draw. But in the knight ending Black's advantage will be more apparent, since there will be no way of restraining the advance of his central pawns. However, even with the rooks on White had plenty of problems.

24 ... ♗a8 25 ♗c3 ♗ac8 26 ♖b5 ♗f8 27

♗xc5 ♗xc5 28 ♗c3 ♗xc3 29 ♖xc3 ♗e7 (26)

26



One of the main factors in knight endings is the existence of a spatial advantage. The placing of the kings is also very important. Here there is nothing to prevent Black from advancing his pawn centre and seizing space. His king is already in the centre, and is ready both to support the advance of his pawns, and to attack the opponent's queenside. It is possible that White's game is already lost.

30 ♖b5 f6 31 ♗f2 e5 32 f5?

32 fxe5 is more natural.

32 ... ♗c5 33 ♗f3 d4 34 ♖a3 e4+ 35 ♗e2

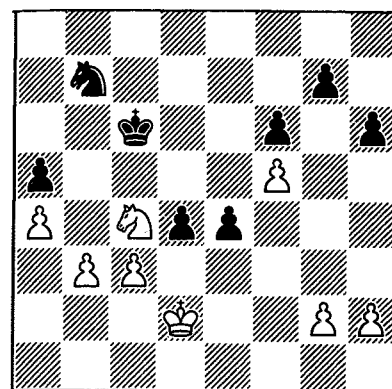
One gains the impression that everything is satisfactory for White: He obtains some counterplay by attacking the a5 pawn, and the black pawns in the centre are blocked by his king. But this impression is deceptive. Portisch has assessed the position more deeply, and within three moves it becomes clear that White is on the verge of defeat.

35 ... ♗d7! 36 ♗c4 ♖b7 37 ♗d2 ♗c6

Threatening to play the king to b4, with a complete bind on White's position.

38 c3 (27)

27



Black faces concrete problems. 38 ... d3 fails to 39 b4, with equal chances. On 38 ... ♗c5 White cannot play 39 ♖xa5 ♖xa5 40 b4+ ♗c4 41 bxa5 dxc3+, but after 39 cxd4+ ♗xd4 40 ♖e3 he retains hopes of a draw. Portisch chooses another, elegant continuation, exploiting tactical factors.

38 ... e3+!
39 ♗e2

It transpires that 39 ♗d3 loses immediately to the check at c5.

39 ... dxc3 40 ♗xe3 ♗c5 41 ♗d3 ♖b4 42 ♗c2 ♗c5 43 ♖xa5

The best practical chance. 43 ♖e3 ♖xb3 44 ♖d5+ ♗xa4 45 ♖xc3+ ♗a3 would have led to an easy technical win.

43 ... ♗xa5
44 ♗xc3

For the knight White has two connected pawns. Accurate play is required of Black.

44 ... ♖b6 45 a5+ ♗c6 46 b4 ♖e4+ 47 ♖d4 ♖d6 48 g4

The consequences of 32 f5? begin to tell.

48 ... ♖f7
49 a6 ♖d6

It is important for Black to evict the enemy king from the centre.

50 ♗d3

50 h4 was bad because of 50 ... h5!.

50 ... h5!
51 gxf5 ♖b6

The white pawns are scattered and doomed. Portisch begins bringing in the harvest.

52 b5 ♖xb5 53 h6 gxf6 54 ♗e4 ♖c7 55 ♗f4 ♖xa6

In four moves, three white pawns have disappeared from the board. The end is near.

56 ♗g4 ♗c5 57 ♗h5 ♗d5 58 ♗xh6 ♗e5 59 ♗g6 ♖b4 White resigns

Fischer-Taimanov

Candidates Match, Vancouver 1971

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 ♗c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♗c7 5 ♗c3 e6 6 g3 a6 7 ♗g2 ♖f6 8 0-0 ♖xd4 9 ♗xd4 ♗c5 10 ♗f4!

The Paulsen Variation's peak of popularity came in the early 1960s, and the chief credit for this undoubtedly belongs to grandmaster Mark Taimanov. Today this sounds implausible, but it remains a fact: in the 30th USSR Championship (Yerevan 1962) all Taimanov's 'White' opponents opened with 1 e4, and in all nine games the Paulsen Variation was played. The outcome: Taimanov with Black scored 7 points out of 9!

One of the few grandmasters who played the Sicilian at that time, but avoided the Paulsen Variation, was Bronstein, who once remarked in surprise that "... Black's ship with such 'holes' (he had in mind the gaps in the pawn formation

on the dark squares) . . . was able to stay afloat for long". For his part, when playing White in the Paulsen Variation Bronstein based his strategy precisely on exploiting the weakness of the dark squares – for example, in games with Ivkov (USSR v. Yugoslavia, Lvov 1962), Taimanov (29th USSR Championship, Baku 1961), Boleslavsky (25th USSR Championship, Riga 1958) and others.

10 ♖f4! is also an invention of Bronstein's, with the same aim – the dark squares! The game Bronstein-Taimanov (Budapest 1961) continued 10 ... ♗xd4?! 11 ♗xc7 ♗xc3 12 bxc3 d5 13 exd5 ♗xd5 14 ♗e5 f6 15 ♗d4, with advantage to White.

10 ... d6
11 ♖d2 h6

Black aims for ... e5, restricting White's light-square bishop, and first prevents ♗g5, after which White would have gained control of d5.

11 ... h6 was introduced by grandmaster Vasyukov, Taimanov's second at the match in Vancouver, at a tournament in Skopje in 1970. The game Janosević-Vasyukov went 12 ♗a4?! e5! 13 ♗xc5 dxc5 14 ♗e3 ♗g4, with a good game for Black. Fischer finds a simple and logical plan of pressure in the centre, after which Black in this game is not destined to equalize. Nowadays the position after White's 11th move is definitely considered to favour him, and Black prefers more flexible plans, for example:

8 ... h6 9 ♗xc6 (9 ♗b3!?) 9 ... dxc6 10 ♗e3 e5 11 ♗a4 ♗e6 12 ♗b6 ♖c8 13 ♗c5 with a slight advantage to White, Tal-Romanishin, Yerevan 1980, or 1 e4 c5 2 ♗f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗c6 5 ♗c3 a6 6 g3 ♗ge7 7 ♗b3 d6 8 ♗g2 ♗d7 9 0-0 ♗c8!? 10 a4 ♗e7 11 a5 0-0 with a complicated battle, Romanishin-Taimanov, 42nd USSR

Championship, Leningrad 1974.

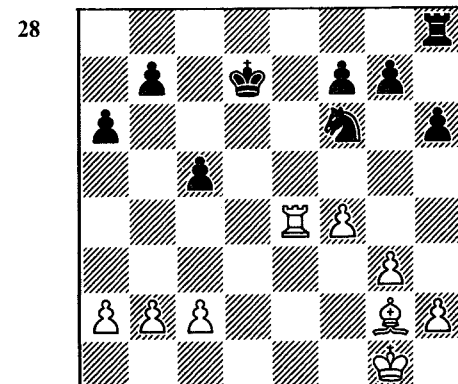
12 ♗ad1! e5
13 ♗e3 ♗g4

13 ... ♗xe3?! is unfavourable: 14 fxe3!, and 14 ... ♗e7? loses to 15 ♗xf6.

14 ♗xc5 dxc5 15 f3 ♗e6 16 f4 ♗d8 17 ♗d5! ♗xd5 18 exd5 e4 19 ♗fe1 ♗xd5 20 ♗xe4+ ♗d8 21 ♖e2 ♗xd1+ 22 ♖xd1+ ♖d7

Black seeks relief in an endgame; the position after 22 ... ♗c8 23 ♗e5! can hardly have appealed to him.

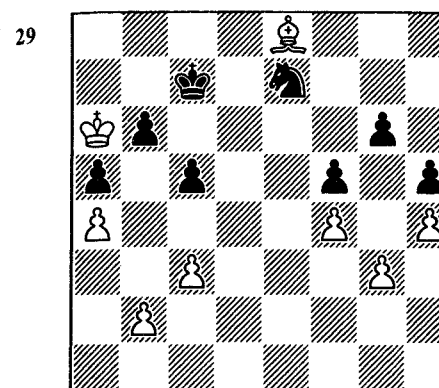
23 ♖xd7+ ♗xd7 (28)



The position is an open one, and the bishop is clearly superior to the knight. It is true that realizing this advantage is very difficult, since the pawn formation is symmetric, and there is no possibility of setting up a passed pawn. To see how Fischer coped with this problem, the reader is referred to p.179 of *Endgame Strategy* (Pergamon, 1985), where this ending is analysed in detail by one of the authors. Here, to avoid duplication of material, we merely give the concluding moves.

25 ♗e5 b6?! 25 ♗f1! a5 26 ♗c4 ♗f8 27 ♗g2 ♗d6 28 ♗f3 ♗d7 29 ♗e3 ♗b8 30

♗d3+ ♗c7 31 c3 ♗c6 32 ♗e3 ♗d6 33 a4 ♗e7 34 h3! ♗c6 35 h4 h5?! 36 ♗d3+ ♗c7 37 ♗d5 f5 38 ♗d2 ♗f6 39 ♗e2 ♗d7 40 ♗e3! g6 41 ♗b5 ♗d6 42 ♗e2 ♗d8 43 ♗d3 ♗c7 44 ♗xd6 ♗xd6 45 ♗d3 ♗e7 46 ♗e8 ♗d5 47 ♗f7+ ♗d6 48 ♗c4 ♗c6 49 ♗e8+ ♗b7 50 ♗b5 ♗c8 51 ♗c6+ ♗c7 52 ♗d5! ♗e7 53 ♗f7 ♗b7 54 ♗b3! ♗a7 55 ♗d1 ♗b7 56 ♗f3+ ♗c7 57 ♗a6 ♗g8 58 ♗d5 ♗e7 59 ♗c4 ♗c6 60 ♗f7 ♗e7 61 ♗e8 (29)



Zugzwang.

61 ... ♗d8 62 ♗xg6 ♗xg6 63 ♗xb6 ♗d7 64 ♗xc5 ♗e7 65 b4 axb4 66 cxb4 ♗c8 67 a5 ♗d6 68 b5 ♗e4+ 69 ♗b6 ♗c8 70 ♗c6 ♗b8 Black resigns

BOLES LAVSKY VARIATION

In the middle of the present century, after the moves 1 e4 c5 2 ♗f3 ♗c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 d6 6 ♗e2 grandmaster Isaac Boleslavsky began employing a system of play which involved advancing the e-pawn two squares. At the cost of weakening the d5 square and his d6 pawn, Black gained space and drove away the white knight to a less active position at f3 or b3. Boleslavsky's very

first games showed that such a method of play was quite acceptable and promising for Black, and soon White altogether stopped playing ♗e2 on his sixth move.

Boleslavsky's strategy also found its way into the Najdorf Variation in the line 1 e4 c5 2 ♗f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 a6 6 ♗e2 e5. Boleslavsky succeeded in defeating his opponents even in the endgame. In these games White, as though bewitched, gazed at the d5 square, while in the meantime the black pieces occupied key squares and gradually squeezed White's position.

Nowadays, methods for White of handling endgames in the Boleslavsky Variation have been sufficiently well developed. The chief credit for this goes to grandmaster Yefim Geller, who has played a number of strategically complete games, demonstrating effective plans for White both in the middlegame and in the endgame. In this book we give two games which have become classics: Geller-Fischer and Geller-Bolbochan.

Black's strategy in endgames from the Boleslavsky Variation is fairly clear: he must try to advance ... d5. The attempt to weaken White's pressure on the centre with ... f5 is normally ineffective – an example is provided by the game Tal-Najdorf.

In cases where Black succeeds in making the central break, the active placing of his pieces ensures him a favourable ending.

Apart from the games examined here, the reader's attention is also drawn to Smyslov-Tal, Candidates Tournament, Yugoslavia 1959, annotated by Smyslov on p.123 of his *125 Selected Games* (Pergamon, 1983), and Karpov-Mecking, Hastings 1971/72, on p.67 of *Anatoly Karpov: Chess is my Life* (Pergamon, 1980).

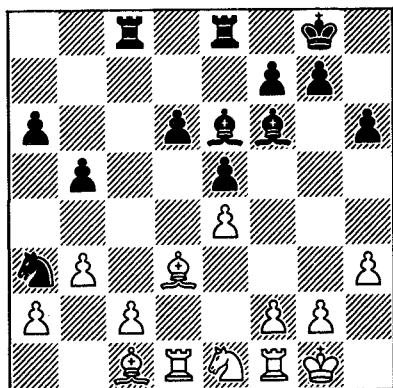
Levenfish-Boleslavsky

Kuybyshev 1943

1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 dxd4
 5 dxc3 d6 6 e2 e5 7 d3 h6 8 0-0 e7
 9 e3 0-0 10 d2 e6 11 ead1 e8 12 h3
 13 c8 14 h2 a5 15 e1 c4 16 e1 a6
 17 d3 a5 18 d3 b5 19 b3 a3 20 d5
 21 xe1 22 xf6+ 23 xf6 24 xe1 (30)

This game was one of the first played with the Boleslavsky Variation 6 e2 e5!. It is not surprising that, on encountering a new interpretation of the Sicilian Defence, Levenfish failed to find an effective plan and gradually ended up in an inferior position. After retreating his knight to f3 White should have developed his dark-square bishop at b2, for a long time preventing ... d5. For example: 8 b3 e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 b2 g4?! 11 e1 c8 12 h3 xf3 13 xf3 d4 14 d3 b5 15 d1! b4 16 e2! ± (Smyslov-Ciocaltea, Moscow 1956), or 8 0-0 e6 9 b3 e7 10 b2 0-0 11 d2 d4?! (11 ... d5!? 12 exd5 dxd5 13 dxd5 exd5 14 e4±) 12 d3 c8 13 e2 xe2+ 14 xe2 d7 15 c4 a6 16 b1! c5 17 d3 g5 18 ead1 ± (Bronstein-Lanka, Yurmala 1978). The piece arrangement chosen by Levenfish proved unfortunate: Black's initiative on the queenside developed unhindered.

30



To parry the pressure of the black pieces, White has gone into a difficult ending. With his next, brilliant move, Boleslavsky consolidates his hold on a very important square in White's position and fixes the weak c2 pawn, and after the ... d5 break White's position collapses.

21 ... d1!

A manoeuvre which is not often seen. In this unusual way the black knight is transferred to the weakened c3 square.

22 b2 c3
 23 e1!?

White's unwillingness to exchange on c3 is understandable, but he cannot tolerate the knight at c3 for long. Soon Levenfish is forced to exchange bishop for knight in an even less favourable situation.

23 ... d5!

The thematic break in the centre is made, and White's game begins to go rapidly downhill.

24 f3 d4
 25 a4

A feeble attempt to obtain counterplay.

25 ... d7 26 axb5 27 g3

It is already too late to suggest anything for White.

27 ... xd3
 28 cxd3 e6

Preparing an attack on the b3 pawn.

29 f4 b8 30 xc3 dxc3 31 fe5 xe5
 32 d3 xg3 33 d4 d6 34 d5 xd3
 35 xa6 xb3 36 c6 b2! 37 e7+
 38 xf7 d1+ White resigns

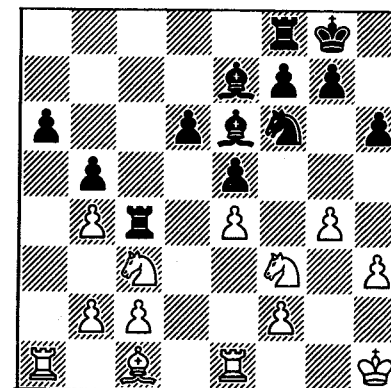
Stoltz-Boleslavsky

Groningen 1946

1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 dxd4
 5 dxc3 d6 6 e2 e5 7 d3 h6 8 e4
 9 e7 10 e2 0-0 10 h3 e6 11 0-0 c8 12
 13 b3 a5 14 d1 c7 15 g4 xb3 16
 axb3 a6 17 h1 b5 18 b4 c4 19 xc4
 20 xc4 19 e1 (31)

White played the opening without any great pretensions, and with simple, natural moves Black obtained a good game. Especially apt was Boleslavsky's 13th move, so that if 14 b5 e4 15 xc4 xc4 16 xc4 xc4 17 dxd6 exd6 18 dxd6 xc2 19 dxe5 e8 20 d3 dxe4 21 d5 d4 with the better endgame for Black (shown by Boleslavsky). Stoltz's reaction of 14 g4? and 16 h1?, with the idea of building up an attack on the kingside, may today provoke merely an ironic smile, but it should not be forgotten that forty years ago the Boleslavsky Variation was unfamiliar, and attempts were sometimes made to refute it by excessively sharp means. Black replied with energetic counterplay on the queenside and transposed into a favourable ending, although, as shown by Boleslavsky, 17 ... b7 with the threats of 18 ... xc3 and 18 ... c4 would possibly have been even stronger.

31



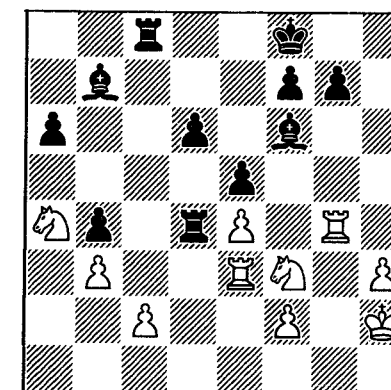
In the ending Black has a decisive positional advantage. White's pawn formation is hopelessly spoiled, both on the queenside, and on the kingside. Black has the advantage of the two bishops and a great superiority in the placing of his pieces, and he will soon also be a pawn up, since White cannot save his b4 pawn.

19 ... c8!

Black defends his a6 pawn and transfers his bishop to b7, from where it attacks the e4 pawn.

20 g5 hxg5 21 xg5 b7 22 h2 xb4
 23 b3 c8 24 e3 d4! 25 g1 f8 26
 xf6 xf6 27 g4 b4 28 a4 (32)

32



28 ... xc2!

Boleslavsky finds the quickest way to win. By this exchange sacrifice Black gains a very strong attack.

29 xd4 exd4
 30 e1

30 f3 e5+ 31 g2 e2 was even worse.

30 ... xf2+
 31 g2 f3

Of course, 31 ... e5+ 32 g1 xg2+ 33 xg2 f5 would also have won.

32 ♖c2 d3 33 ♖c7 ♕e5+ 34 ♖g1 d2 35 ♖d1 ♕d4+ 36 ♖h2 ♖f2+ 37 ♖g3 ♕xe4 38 ♖c4 ♖f3+?!

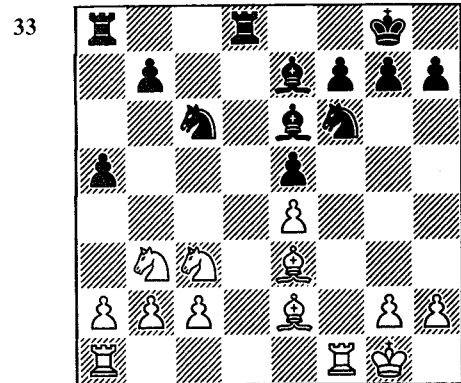
A time trouble inaccuracy. 38 ... g5 would have won immediately. The move played allows White to hold on for a further eight moves.

39 ♖h2 ♕e5+ 40 ♖g1 d5 41 ♖c8+ ♖e7 42 ♖xd2 ♕f4 43 ♖b2 ♕e3+ 44 ♖h2 ♖f1 45 ♖g3 ♖g1+ 46 ♖h2 ♖g6 White resigns

Sterner-Boleslavsky

Sweden v. USSR, Stockholm 1954

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 d6 6 ♕e2 e5 7 ♖b3 ♕e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♕e3 ♕e6 10 f4 a5 11 fxe5 dxe5 12 ♖xd8 ♖fxd8 (33)



In choosing the Boleslavsky Variation, Black voluntarily parts with the advantages which a "Sicilian endgame" promises him: few would be happy to play with Black the hypothetical position arising if the queens were mentally removed from the board after, say, Black's 7th move – the pawn at d6 is no adornment to Black's position. But in the middlegame, although Black has a 'bad' d-pawn, he has excellent play for his pieces. In the present game

Boleslavsky's opponent aimed too directly for a draw: for the sake of exchanging queens he relieved the opponent of his weak pawn, strengthened the already powerful placing of his pieces, and to cap it all – created a weak pawn at e4 in his own position! It is not surprising that he was unable to hold the resulting ending.

And now a little about the opening. If White chooses the plan with f2-f4, then the move 9 ♕e3 is superfluous. Black could easily have equalised with 10 ... exf4 11 ♕xf4 (with loss of tempo) 11 ... d5 12 e5 ♖e4=, or even 10 ... d5!? 11 f5 d4. 9 ♖h1 or 9 f4 is stronger, e.g. 9 ♖h1 ♕e6 10 f4 exf4 11 ♕xf4 d5 12 e5 ♖e4 13 ♕d3 ♖xc3 14 bxc3 ♖c8 15 ♖d4 ♖d7 16 ♖b1 ♖xd4 17 cxd4 ± (Karpov-Timman, Bad Lauterberg 1977).

Boleslavsky rejected 10 ... exf4 in favour of 10 ... a5?!, aiming for a complicated game, and he could have ended up in an inferior position: 11 f5! ♕c8 12 ♕c4! a4 13 ♖d2 a3 14 b3 ♖b4 15 ♖d5 ♖bxd5 16 ♕xd5 ♖xd5 17 exd5 ± (analysis by Boleslavsky). All this, however, remained behind the scenes: Sterner unhesitatingly captured 11 fxe5? ...

13 ♖fd1?

This further move, demonstrating White's aiming for simplification, leads to a lost position. As shown by Boleslavsky, essential was 13 ♖c5 ♕xc5 14 ♕xc5 ♖d4 15 ♕d3 (15 ♕e7? ♖xe4! 16 ♕xd8 ♖xc3 17 bxc3 ♖xe2+ 18 ♖f2 ♖xd8 19 ♖xe2 ♕c4+) 15 ... ♖d7 16 ♕a3 ♖ac8, with the better game for Black.

13 ... ♖b4 14 ♖xd8+ ♕xd8 15 ♕d3

White has no satisfactory continuation. 15 ♕d1 is bad because of 15 ... ♕g4!, while on 15 ♖c1 there would have followed 15 ... a4 16 ♖d2 (16 ♖c5 ♕b6 17 ♕f2 ♕xc5 18 ♕xc5 ♖xa2) 16 ... ♖xa2! 17

♖xa2 ♕xa2 18 b3? ♕a5! (Boleslavsky).

15 ... a4
16 ♖d2

On ♖c5 Black has the unpleasant 16 ... ♕b6.

16 ... a3 17 b3 ♖g4 18 ♕c5 ♖xd3 19 cxd3 ♖c8 20 ♕b4

20 d4 b6 21 ♕b4 ♖e3! would merely have prolonged the resistance a little.

20 ... ♕b6+ 21 ♖f1 ♖e3+ 22 ♖e2 ♖c2 White resigns

Geller-Bertok

USSR v. Yugoslavia, Belgrade 1961

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 a6 6 ♕e2 e5 7 ♖b3 ♕e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♕e3 ♖c7 10 ♖d2 ♖bd7 11 a4 b6 12 ♖fd1 ♕b7 13 f3

An enormous contribution to the theory of the 6 ♕e2 e5 variation has been made by grandmaster Geller. It was he who determined the strategic plans for White, and found the piece arrangements, which have today become classic. This is what he has to say: "It is wrong to suppose that White's predominant idea in the Sicilian Defence is an attack on the kingside. After all, in variations where his knight retreats from d4 to b3, all White's minor pieces, plus his queen's rook and queen are normally directed towards the queenside, where Black is weakened due to the advance of his a- and b-pawns, and sometimes also his e-pawn. Therefore it makes sense first to tie down Black's forces by activity on the queenside, and only then, if the opportunity arises, to set one's sights on the black king." (Geller)

In the early 1960s the plan put forward

by Geller of squeezing Black on the queenside and in the centre was perhaps the most outstanding strategic idea in the Sicilian Defence. Not surprisingly, at first Geller's opponents, irrespective of their strength, were unable to counter the systematic 'suffocation' strategy. In this game, by present-day standards, Black has committed several mistakes, slight ones of course, but quite sufficient to end up in a strategically difficult position:

(1) The early determination of the queen's position – 9 ... ♖c7?!. More flexible is 9 ... ♕e6!.

(2) 10 ... ♖bd7?! is also inaccurate, and for two reasons: (a) against a2-a4, one of the basic moves of White's set-up, it is sensible to reply ... ♖c6, which is now ruled out; (b) the move envisages the development of the queen's bishop at b7, where it is not especially well placed: control is removed from the important squares c4 and f5. 10 ... ♕e6 is better.

In modern praxis Black counters the queenside squeeze much more energetically, for example: 8 ... ♕e6 9 ♕e3 ♖bd7 10 a4 ♖c8 11 ♖d2 ♖b6 12 a5 ♖c4 13 ♕xc4 ♖xc4 14 ♖d3 ♖c8 15 ♖d2 ♖c6 16 ♖fc1 0-0 17 ♖a4 d5! (Geller-Dvoiris, Sochi 1983).

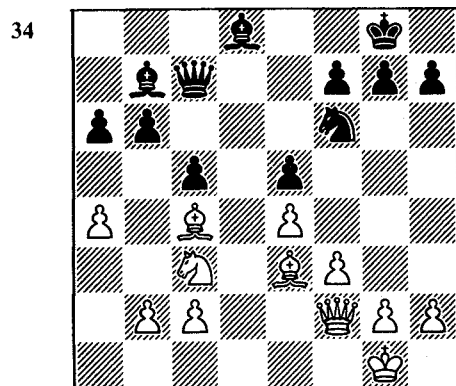
13 ... ♖fd8
14 ♕f1 ♖c5?!

An antipositional move, after which White's advantage increases. In the given variation ... ♖c5 is sensible only if after the exchange on c5 Black can quickly advance his pawn phalanx: ... c4, ... b5 etc. To carry out this plan the bishop is needed at e6: thus the game Bradvarević-Sokolov, Yugoslavia 1962, went 10 a4 b6 11 ♖d2 ♕e6 12 ♖fd1 ♖bd7 13 f3 ♖c5 14 ♖xc5? (14 ♖c1! is strong here – Boleslavsky) 14 ... dxc5 15 ♖e1 c4 16 ♖f2 ♖c6 17 ♖h1 b5 with advantage to Black.

15 ♖xc5 dxc5
16 ♜f2 ♜xd1?

And this is already the decisive mistake. The exchange of a pair of rooks leads to a hopeless ending for Black: after occupying the c4 square, White puts pressure on the a6 pawn, drives the black queen to c8 and seizes control of the d-file, after which all the weak squares in Black's position (d5, d6, f7, f5) simply cannot be defended. As shown by Simagin, the only possibility of resisting was with 16 ... ♜d4!?

17 ♜xd1 ♜d8 18 ♜xd8+ ♜xd8 19 ♜c4!
(34)



With his last move White occupies the important a2-g8 diagonal with his bishop and prepares to set up a queen/bishop battery along the f1-a6 diagonal to attack the black pawn at a6.

19 ... ♜e7 20 ♜e2 ♜c8 21 ♜d3 h6 22 ♜f1!

All the strategically important squares and diagonals, and the only open file, are in White's hands. Black is condemned to a cheerless defence, but Geller is not in a hurry to take positive action. He deploys all his pieces on their most favourable squares, not forgetting about the king.

22 ... ♜f8 23 ♜e1 ♜e7 24 ♜f2!

The start of the offensive. The bishop is switched to g3 in order to attack the e5 pawn.

24 ... ♜f8 25 ♜g3 ♜d7 26 ♜d5!

The white knight immediately aims for the breach created in the centre.

26 ... ♜g5
27 ♜f2!

There is no point in White going in for the complications arising after 27 ♜xb6 ♜xb6 28 ♜d6+ ♜g8 29 ♜xb6 ♜d7.

27 ... ♜d8 28 ♜e3 ♜c7 29 ♜f5 ♜b8 30 ♜h4 ♜c6 31 ♜d5 ♜c8

The preparatory work is completed, and with a tactical blow White energetically concludes the game.

32 ♜xf7! g5

On 32 ... ♜xf7 White has the decisive 33 ♜c4+.

33 ♜c4! ♜f6 34 ♜f2 ♜c6 35 ♜g6 ♜d7 36 a5! ♜a7 37 axb6 ♜xb6 38 ♜xc5+ ♜xc5 39 ♜xc5+ ♜g8 40 ♜xe5 Black resigns

Geller-Bolbochan Stockholm Interzonal 1962

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 a6 6 ♜e2 e5 7 ♜b3 ♜e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♜e3 ♜c7 10 ♜d2 b6 11 ♜fd1 ♜e6 12 a4 ♜bd7 13 f3 ♜b7 14 ♜c1 ♜fd8 15 ♜1a2 ♜c5 16 ♜b4 a5 17 ♜bd5 ♜xd5 18 ♜xd5 ♜xd5 19 ♜xd5 ♜xd5 20 ♜xd5 (35)

The endgame on the board is the culmination of White's strategy. This was one of the first games in which the famous Geller manoeuvre ♜b3-c1-a2-b4-d5 was seen. Nowadays Black does not hurry with 9 ... ♜c7 (9 ... ♜e6!), and on the 12th move 12 ... ♜c8!? would have made sense,

Therefore the probability of winning the game 'with little bloodshed', by allowing the opponent himself to lose, is quite considerable.

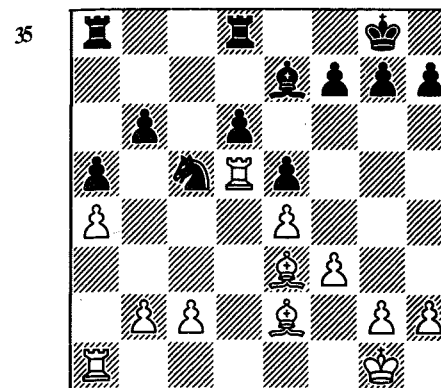
27 ... ♜f8 28 ♜d3 ♜e7 29 ♜a2 ♜bc8 30 ♜a3 ♜a7

For the moment Black defends successfully, preventing the b2-b4 break.

31 ♜b5 ♜b8 32 ♜a1 ♜c7 33 ♜ad1 ♜f8 34 ♜f2 ♜e7 35 ♜f1 ♜f8 36 ♜g2 ♜e7 37 ♜e1

White begins harassing the opponent from the other side. 38 f4 is threatened.

37 ... ♜e6 38 ♜e3 ♜a7 39 ♜e2! (36)

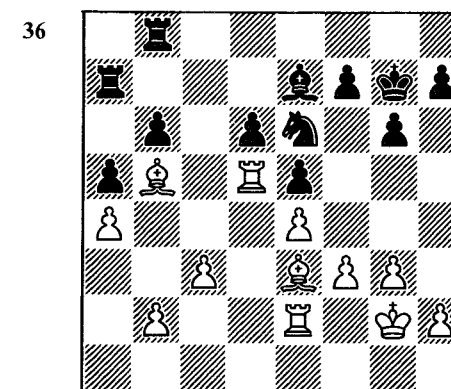


in order to answer 13 f3 with 13 ... ♜c6! 14 ♜d5 ♜xd5 15 exd5 ♜a5!.

The assessment of the ending itself is clear: Black's position is strategically lost. White has too many advantages: spatial superiority, the two bishops, better pawn structure, undisputed control of the light squares, and the possibility of pawn offensives on both wings.

20 ... g6 21 c3 ♜a7 22 ♜b5 ♜b8 23 ♜ad1 ♜g7 24 ♜f1 ♜c7 25 ♜e2 ♜e6 26 g3 ♜c5 27 ♜a1

White has at his disposal a number of tempting plans. He can prepare b2-b4, or he can prepare f3-f4, but Geller takes the wisest decision – no decisive measures before the time control. Playing Black in such a position is much more difficult. He must keep a watch on the manoeuvres of the white pieces on both wings, and be prepared to repel a breakthrough on any part of the board. Such play is always exhausting. In addition, Geller has correctly weighed up the psychological situation. Any active advance on the part of Black may prove fatal. To hold a position in tension for a long time, parrying the opponent's threats and not even thinking of activity, is a task with which even the world's leading players can rarely cope.



The threat is stronger than the execution.

39 ... f5?

Black fails to withstand the 'torture'. Now the game concludes instantly.

40 exf5 gxf5
41 f4!

Black resigns. The loss of at least his f5 pawn is inevitable.

Geller-Fischer Stockholm Interzonal 1962

1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 dxd4 d6 5 dxc3 a6 6 e2 e5 7 d3 e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 e3 c7 10 a4 b6

During the early rounds of the tournament, Geller's variation was opposed by Leonid Stein, who pinned his hopes on advancing ... d5: 8 ... c7 9 e3 d6 10 a4 0-0 11 a5 b5 12 axb6 dxb6, but with several precise blows Geller demolished his plan and obtained a great advantage: 13 d5! e6 14 d2 f8 15 dxb6! cxb6 16 d5! dxd5 17 exd5 d7 18 a2 h6 19 f1.

Fischer prevents a4-a5, but like Bertok he places his bishop on the unfortunate square b7.

11 d2 b7
12 f3 c6

A very interesting point. At that time the strongest plan was considered to be that carried out by Black in the game Suetin-Shamkovich (27th USSR Championship, Leningrad 1960): 12 ... d6 13 f1 f8 14 a1 (?) c6 15 e1 b7 16 f1 d5! 17 exd5 dxd5 18 dxd5 dxd5 with an excellent game, since on 19 dxa6 dxa6 20 d5 dxd5 21 dxa6 there can follow 21 ... c2! 22 dxc2 d1+ with advantage. Fischer, as we see, has avoided the 'strongest' plan, and, no doubt, not without reason. Instead of 14 a1 Geller would have played 14 d1!, and since 14 ... d5 is not possible (15 exd5 b4 16 d1a2±), the knight heads via a2 to b4 and d5, while ... a5, preventing d4b4, gives White the b5 square.

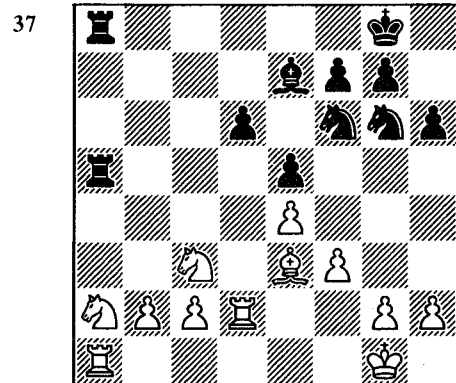
However, the move order chosen by Fischer also fails to solve the problems facing Black. Geller deploys his pieces on their best squares (d2!, c4!, f1!, d2!), paralysing Black's queenside and centre.

13 f1 d6 14 e1 h6 15 f1 b7

16 c4 f8 17 d2 f8 18 d1 g6 19 d1a2!

The concluding move of the Geller variation. Black has an unpleasant choice: to allow the knight at a2 to go to b4, or, after ... a5, the c3 knight to go to b5. Fischer finds the best practical chance: sacrificing a pawn, he takes play into an endgame, where he tries to tie down White's forces by a pin on the a-file.

19 ... b5!? 20 axb5 axb5 21 dxb5 dxb5 22 cxb5 cxb5 23 dxb5 a5 24 d6c3 c8a8 (37)



In the endgame White is a pawn up in a good situation, and objectively his position can be considered won. But in order to transform this won position into a won game, he must play with precision and accuracy. Geller only had to allow himself to relax slightly, and his resourceful opponent immediately obtained counter-chances.

25 d1!?

A quiet move, but not the strongest. White coordinates his rooks and prepares to support his passed b-pawn with a rook from behind. But 25 b3! would have been much more energetic, with the idea of 26 d4a4, not fearing 25 ... d5 26 exd5 b4 27

dxb4 xal+ 28 f2, with an overwhelming position for the exchange.

25 ... f4
26 b3?!

Again irresolutely played. 26 b4 was more energetic.

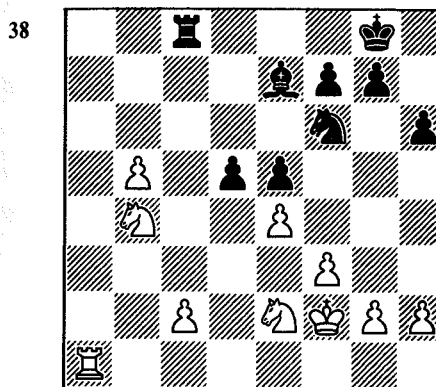
26 ... c8

Black has managed to obtain counter-play.

27 b4 a3
28 b5 d2+

Black, of course, is not satisfied with the variation 28 ... axc3 29 dxc3 cxc3 30 xf4 exf4 31 b6, when White wins.

29 dxe2 xe3 30 f2 a3 31 d4 b4 xal 32 xal d5! (38)



33 d5?!

Commenting on this position in the tournament bulletin, Geller wrote: "The position has become more complicated, and White has to play very accurately. During the game I calculated the following variation: 33 d6 c5+ 34 e1 dxe4 35 a4 exf3 36 c4. White appears to be winning, since on any move by the bishop (or 36... d7) there follows 37 d7+. But at the last moment I noticed that, after 36

... f2+ 37 f1 a8 38 xc5 d4, unexpectedly it is Black who wins! Therefore I immediately rejected 33 d6, but mistakenly. The point is that in the variation 33 ... c5+ 34 e1 dxe4 there is no need at all to play the sharp 35 a4, since the simple 35 dxe5 exf3 36 gxf3 takes play into a technical ending where White is a pawn up and has two connected pawns".

33 ... d5 34 exd5 xc2 35 b1

35 c1 b2 36 c7 would have left White more chances of success.

35 ... c5+ 36 e1 b6 37 c1

All the same White has had to play his rook to c1, but in a less favourable situation.

37 ... b2

This is evidently sufficient for a draw, but 37 ... a5+ looks even more convincing.

38 c8+ h7 39 d1 dxb5 40 d3 b4 41 c2 d4 42 a8 c5 43 a4

On 43 d4 there would have followed 43 ... f5!

43 ... g6

The sealed move. There is no longer any win for White.

44 d4 d4 45 b5 b6 46 d3 f5 47 d6 f6 48 c4 g1 49 h3 h2 50 b7 e4

Black's passed e-pawn is no weaker than the enemy passed pawn. Chances are equal.

51 fxe4 fxe4
52 d4 f5

Draw agreed. On 53 d6 there would have followed 53 ... g1+ and 54 ... e6.

Tal-Najdorf
Bled 1961

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 a6 6 ♙e2 e5 7 ♘b3 ♙e7 8 ♙g5 ♙e6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 11 ♖d3 ♘c6 12 ♘d5 ♙g5 13 ♙fd1 ♘h8 14 c3 f5 15 ♙f3 ♙xd5 16 ♖xd5 ♙xe4 17 ♖xe4 ♖e7 18 ♖d5 ♙f6 19 ♘d2 ♙xd2 20 ♙xd2 ♖c7 21 ♙e1 ♙af8 22 ♙e3 g6 23 ♙e4 ♘g7 24 ♙f3 ♙xf3 25 ♙xf3 ♙f6 26 ♙e4 ♖f7 27 ♖b3 ♖xb3 28 axb3 (39)

This game was played in the last, 19th round of a major international tournament. The situation at this moment was fairly tense: Tal was leading Fischer by half a point. Last round tactics (a win is desirable, but on no account should one lose!) dictated the choice of opening: at that time, in reply to the Najdorf Variation, Tal almost invariably chose 6 ♙g5.

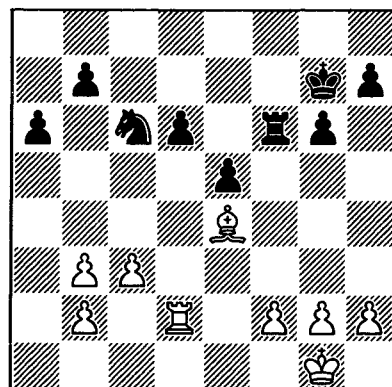
With his 11th move, Tal slightly improved on White's play compared with the then well known game Averbakh-Petrosian (26th USSR Championship, Tbilisi 1959), which went: 11 ♘d5?! ♘d7! 12 ♖d3 ♙c8 13 c3 ♙g5, with a splendid game for Black.

The subtle point of 11 ♖d3, recommended by Petrosian, is that Black is prevented from playing ... ♘d7 and is forced to develop his knight at c6 "... where it is less flexibly placed" – Petrosian.

However, from the opening Tal did not achieve much, and instead of the anti-positional plan with ... f5 (13 ... ♘h8 14 c3 f5?) Najdorf could without difficulty have obtained a sound position by 13 ... ♙c8 14 c3 ♘e7!. In reply to 14 ... f5? Tal responded brilliantly: 15 ♙f3!, and took secure control of the light squares in the centre. After 19 ♘d2! the weakness of the d6 pawn became appreciable. Najdorf defended tenaciously, and exchanged one pair of rooks and then

the queens, but White's advantage remained.

39



In the ending White has a number of advantages: superior pawn formation (two pawn islands against three, with a chronic pawn weakness at d6), more active pieces, and the traditional superiority of rook and bishop over Black's rook and knight.

28 ... ♘d8 29 b4 ♙f7 30 ♙d5 ♙e8 31 b5 axb5 32 ♙xb5

White has succeeded in isolating the b7 pawn, but Black's position is still quite defensible.

32 ... ♙f7 33 ♙b6 ♘d7 34 ♙d5!

"A shrewd move. Tal invites Black to break out. With his very next move Najdorf falls into the trap. After 34 ... ♙f6 it is not apparent how White could have realised his advantage" – Petrosian.

34 ... ♙f4
35 g3 ♙a4?

He should have returned the rook to f6.

36 ♙xb7! ♙a1+

If 36 ... ♙c7, then 37 ♙a6.

37 ♙g2 ♙c7 38 ♙a6 ♙b1 39 ♙d5 ♙xb2 40 ♙a7+ ♘b7

Black has managed to save his pawn, but his position has been hopelessly spoiled. White has gained access to the opponent's pawn weakness both in the centre, and on the kingside. Tal assuredly carries out a combined attack on the two parts of the board.

41 ♙f3 ♙b8 42 ♙a6 ♙c7 43 ♙a8 ♘c5 44 ♙a7+ ♘b7

White has gained a tempo and can now make an active move on the kingside.

45 h4 ♙b8 46 ♙a6 ♙c7 47 ♙a8 ♙b5

Najdorf hopes to stop White's winning mechanism, but after 48 c4 ♙b3+ 49 ♙g4 he conceded defeat.

Arnason-Kasparov

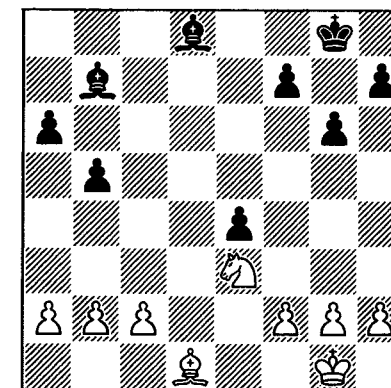
World Junior Championship, Dortmund 1980

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 a6 6 ♙e2 e5 7 ♘b3 ♙e7 8 ♙g5 ♙e6 9 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 10 ♖d3 ♘c6 11 ♘d5 ♙g5 12 0-0 ♘e7 13 ♘xe7 ♖xe7 14 ♙fd1 ♙d8 15 ♘a5 0-0 16 ♘c4 d5 17 exd5 ♙xd5 18 ♖f3 ♙fd8 19 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 20 ♖f5 b5! 21 ♘e3 ♙b7 22 ♙d1 ♙xd1+ 23 ♙xd1 g6 24 ♖d3 ♖b4 25 ♖d7 ♖e7 26 ♖d3 e4 27 ♖d2 ♖d8 28 ♖xd8+ ♙xd8 (40)

White 'sensed' insufficiently keenly the subtleties of the opening variation chosen. The plan of ♙xf6 – ♖d3 – ♘d5 is better carried out after both players have castled: then by ♙fd1! (cf. the Tal-Najdorf game) White restrains somewhat the freeing move ... ♘e7, and with it the moves ... ♙fd8 and ... d5. After the hasty 10 ♖d3?!, Arnason was then obliged to play 12 ♙d1 instead of 12 0-0, since after 12 ... ♘e7! Black already had a slight advantage. This advantage was increased after White allowed the opponent to play ... d5 unhindered (instead of 15 ♘a5?!, better

was 15 c4 – Kasparov). True, in Kasparov's opinion Black twice missed the strongest continuation (21 ... ♙e6! ♠ and 23 ... e4! ♠), but nevertheless the heavy-piece exchanges on the d-file, inevitable after ... d5, led to a favourable ending for Black ...

40



Black's advantage of the two bishops plays an important role in an open position with pawns on both wings. There are no other serious defects in White's position, which makes it all the more interesting to see whether or not Black's advantage is sufficient for a win.

29 c3 ♙g7

Kasparov considers that it was more accurate to play 29 ... f5 immediately, and on 30 g3 to bring the king to the centre with 30 ... ♙f7.

30 a4!

It is important for White to reduce the number of pawns.

30 ... bxa4

For Black it is desirable to retain at least one pawn on the queenside. Therefore he leaves himself with the pawn at a6, since the b5 pawn could have been attacked by the white bishop from e2 and the knight from d4 or a3.

31 ♖xa4 f5 32 g3 ♜f6 33 h4 ♙c8 34 ♙d1 h6

The Soviet grandmaster considered this to be a micro-inaccuracy, and thought that the immediate 34 ... ♜e5 would have been stronger.

35 ♙e2 a5 36 ♙b5 ♜e5 37 ♜c4+ ♜d5 38 ♜e3+ ♜c5?!

It would perhaps have been better to leave the king on the opposite wing to support the pawn offensive. Now White begins counterplay on the kingside which leads to great simplification.

39 ♙e8 g5 40 hxf4 hxf4 41 ♙g6 f4 42 gxf4 gxf4 43 ♜g2

By 43 b4+ White could have exchanged Black's queenside pawn, but after 43 ... axb4 44 cxb4+ ♜d4 the black king would have occupied a powerful position in the centre.

43 ... ♜c4!

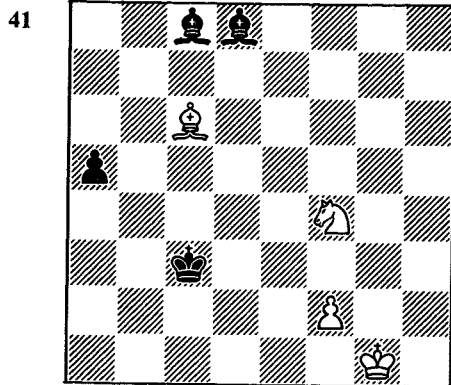
Only in this way can Black play for a win. Kasparov gives up both kingside pawns, pinning his hopes on his passed a-pawn.

44 ♜xf4

Arnason accepts the challenge. He could have retained his b-pawn by the manoeuvre 44 ♙f7+ ♜d3 45 ♜xf4+ ♜c2 46 b3 ♜xc3, but then Black would have been left with his e-pawn.

44 ... ♜b3 45 ♙xe4 ♜xb2 46 ♙c6 ♜xc3 (41)

The position has been greatly simplified. The attention of both players is focused on the a5 pawn. The tasks for each are absolutely clear: White must eliminate it, and Black must promote it to a queen.



47 ♜f1 ♜d2!

The black king advances, in order to 'shoulder-charge' its white opponent away from the queenside.

48 ♙b5?!

In Kasparov's opinion, White could have gained a draw by 48 ♜d5! Then on 48 ... ♙a6+ 49 ♜g2 ♙c4 he plays 50 f4, reminding Black that he too has a passed pawn, while on 48 ... ♙f5 he replies 49 ♜e3.

48 ... ♙f5
49 ♜d5?

Now this is inappropriate. Arnason allows Kasparov to exploit one aspect of the advantage of the two bishops. At a favourable moment one of them can be exchanged for an enemy minor piece.

49 ... ♙d3+!

An unexpected decision.

50 ♙xd3 ♜xd3 51 ♜e1 a4 52 ♜d1 a3 53 ♜c1

White loses after 53 ♜b4+ ♜c3 54 ♜a2+ ♜b2 55 ♜b4 ♙e7 56 ♜c2 a2, when he gradually ends up in a zugzwang, in analogy with the course taken by the

game.

53 ... ♜c4! 54 ♜e3+ ♜b3 55 f4

55 ♜c2 is bad because of 55 ... ♙g5+.

55 ... ♙c7 56 ♜b1 a2+ 57 ♜a1 ♙a5!

Kasparov is aware of the opponent's counter-resources. The careless 57 ... ♙xf4 would have thrown away the win after 58 ♜c4!

58 ♜d5 ♙d2

White resigns. The black bishop penetrates via c1 to b2 and gives mate.

LASKER VARIATION

After the initial moves 1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 Lasker once employed 5 ... e5, a move considered eccentric at the time. His contemporaries sharply criticised 5 ... e5, and for many years the Lasker Variation was forgotten. Only in the 1950s did it become the object of a detailed analysis by Argentinian players, and 6 ♜db5 d6 7 ♙g5 a6 8 ♙xf6 gxf6 9 ♜a3 d5 became known as the Pelikan Variation, after the name of its leading practitioner. 9 ... d5 was quite a popular continuation in the late 1950s, especially after Pilnik with Black obtained an excellent game against Geller in the Amsterdam Candidates Tournament, 1956. Games from later years showed, however, that the Pelikan Variation was unfavourable for Black: the weaknesses created in his pawn formation were too serious. Neither in the middlegame, nor in the endgame, does his active piece play compensate for these defects. (The Lasker Variation is in general the least 'endgame-friendly' in the Sicilian Defence). The decline in popularity of the Pelikan

Variation was largely due to the game Fischer-Rossetto given here, and at the present time it has been almost completely supplanted by the Chelyabinsk Variation 8 ♙xf6 gxf6 9 ♜a3 b5, or 8 ♜a3 b5.

The Chelyabinsk Variation, which the Soviet players Sveshnikov, Panchenko and Timoshchenko began constantly and successfully employing, was initially regarded with irony and mistrust. Then White intensively began trying to refute it, but the variation remained alive, acquired more and more new supporters, and brought Black many points. Soon players with White began avoiding this sharp variation, and grandmaster Sveshnikov, one of its authors, often thanks his opponents directly at the board when they risk entering into a theoretical discussion with him.

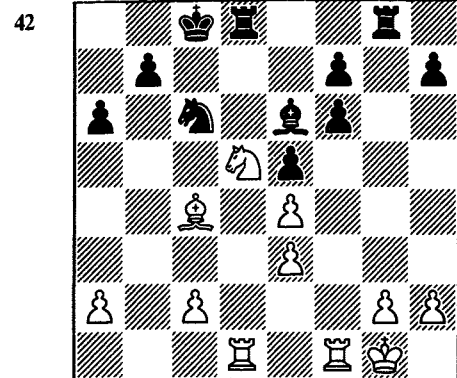
All the games in this section ended in a win for White, since the defects in the pawn formation, arising in the opening itself, give Black few chances of success in the endgame.

Fischer-Rossetto

Buenos Aires 1960

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 e5 6 ♜db5 d6 7 ♙g5 a6 8 ♙xf6 gxf6 9 ♜a3 d5 10 ♜xd5 ♙xa3 11 bxa3 ♙e6 12 ♙c4 ♙a5+ 13 ♙d2 0-0-0 14 ♙d1 ♙xa3 15 0-0 ♙hg8 16 ♙e3 ♙xe3 17 fxe3 (42)

Fischer's brilliant move 16 ♙e3! emphasized White's endgame advantage and exposed Black's weaknesses on the f-file. Rare later attempts by Black to uphold 9 ... d5 proved unsuccessful, e.g. 13 ... ♙xd2+ 14 ♜xd2 0-0-0 15 ♙hd1 f5 16 f3 ♙hg8 17 g3 ♜b8 18 ♜e3, Stein-Benko, Caracas 1970.



Both sides have pawn weaknesses. But whereas White's doubled pawns control very important squares in the centre and can be attacked only along the rank, Black's doubled pawns constitute an obvious weakness and are under frontal pressure by the enemy rook. The assessment of the position is not in doubt. White has a great, and possibly decisive advantage.

17 ... ♖b8

On 17 ... ♖g4 White had the reply 18 ♜xf6.

18 ♜b3

The pawn capture 18 ♜xf6? would have allowed Black to gain counterplay by 18 ... ♖g4.

18 ... ♖g6
19 ♜b6!

Fischer exchanges one pair of rooks, so as to be able to concentrate his efforts on the enemy weaknesses and eliminate Black's counterplay in the centre.

19 ... ♖c7 20 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 21 ♜d5+ ♜xd5 22 ♜xd5

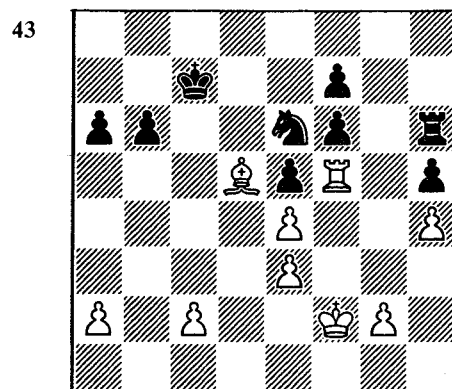
The American grandmaster has obtained his favourite balance of material in the endgame, with a white rook and bishop

battling against an enemy rook and knight. Fischer gained a number of striking victories in this type of endgame, one of the best known being his game with Taimanov (cf. p.21). White's plan is clear. By the advance of his h-pawn he will provoke ... h5, and then either eliminate the enemy h-pawn, or exchange it by g2-g4 and obtain a passed pawn on the kingside.

22 ... ♜e6
23 h4 h5

Forced. Black could not allow 24 h5.

24 ♜f5 ♜h6 25 ♜f3 ♖g6 26 ♜f2 b6 27 ♜f5 ♜h6 (43)



White's bishop and rook have taken up dominating positions on strong squares. It now seems time to set about creating a passed pawn by ♖g3, ♖h3 and g2-g4. But before taking positive action on the kingside, Fischer decides to weaken the opponent's position on the opposite side of the board, and in passing he offers to fall into a trap.

28 ♜c4!! ♜c5?

It was hard to refrain from such a tempting move, but he should have stuck to passive defence with 28 ... b5.

29 ♜f3! ♜b7

Black is triumphant. 30 ... ♜d6 cannot be prevented.

30 ♜xf7 ♜d6 31 ♜xh5 ♜xf7 32 ♜g4!

Only now is Fischer's intention revealed. The exchange of rooks followed by 34 ♜h5 is threatened, and so Black's reply is forced.

32 ... ♖g6+ 33 ♜f5 ♖xg2 34 ♜h7

This pin along the seventh rank is the basis of White's entire plan, begun with 28 ♜c4. Strategy and tactics in chess are too closely linked, and it is hard to be a good strategist while being a poor tactician, or vice versa. The remaining events are not of any great interest.

34 ... ♜f2+ 35 ♜g6 ♜xc2 36 ♜xf7+ ♜c6 37 a3 ♖g2+ 38 ♜xf6 ♜a2 39 ♜xe5 ♜xa3 40 ♜f6+ ♜c5 41 ♜f1 ♜xe3 42 ♜c1+ ♜b4 43 ♜h1 a5 44 h5 Black resigns

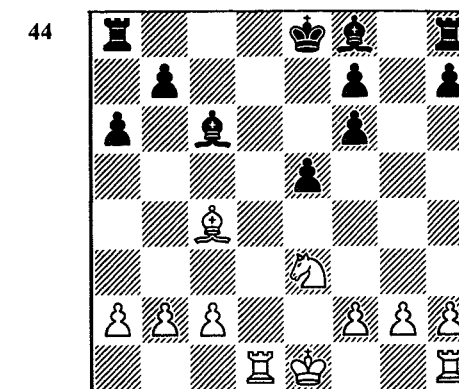
Karpov-Taimanov

39th USSR Championship, Leningrad 1971

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜c6 5 ♜b5 d6 6 ♜f4 e5 7 ♜e3 ♜f6 8 ♜g5 ♜e6 9 ♜1c3 a6 10 ♜xf6 gxf6 11 ♜a3 ♜e7 12 ♜c4 d5 13 exd5 ♜xd5 14 ♜xd5 ♜xd5 15 ♜e3 ♜c6 16 ♜c4 ♖xd1+ 17 ♜xd1 (44)

This USSR Championship took place at exactly the same time as the Fischer-Petrosian Final Candidates Match in Buenos Aires. And it was only by a few days that the present game 'missed' the 1st game of the Fischer-Petrosian match, in which the Ex-World Champion employed a prepared variation – the Moldavian master Chebanenko's move 11 ... d5! which immediately took the entire variation off the agenda. The move chosen by

Taimanov, 11 ... ♜e7?!, leads by force to a difficult ending.



White's advantage associated with his superior pawn formation looks fairly stable. Black's two bishops do not compensate for the defects of his position.

17 ... ♜c8 18 ♜d5! ♜xd5 19 ♜xd5 ♜e7 20 ♜e2 ♜e6 21 ♜hd1 f5

The preceding series of moves looks very natural for both sides. Black has been aiming to repair his kingside pawns, while White has deprived the opponent of one of his bishops, has consolidated his position, and has seized the d-file. However, the impression is that Black has been more successful. If White plays 22 c3, then after 22 ... f4 23 ♜c2 f5 the position becomes level. Karpov finds an interesting pawn sacrifice, which enables him to retain the initiative.

22 g3! f4?!

Taimanov accepts the challenge. 22 ... f6 was more restrained, with a slight advantage for White after 23 c3.

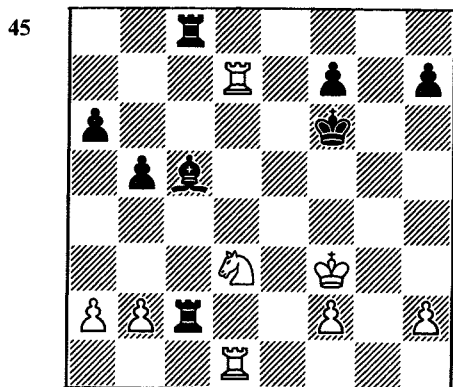
23 gxf4 exf4 24 ♜g2 ♜xc2+ 25 ♜f3 ♜c5

Black returns the pawn, since 25 ... ♜xb2 26 ♜xf4+ ♜f6 27 ♜e1! with the threat of 28 ♜h5+ gives White a very

strong attack.

26 ♖xf4+ ♜f6 27 ♜d3 ♜c8 28 ♜d7 b5? (45)

This pseudo-active move, depriving the black bishop of support, is an imperceptible but serious mistake. 28 ... b6 was correct. To be fair, it must be said that to foresee the danger lying in wait for Black was very difficult.



Superficially, Black's position appears perfectly safe. The pawn structure is symmetric, the kings stand opposite one another, and each side has one active rook. But Karpov notices in the opponent's position an imperceptible detail – the temporary disconnection of the black rooks, and he begins a swift attack on the f7 pawn.

29 ♜e1! ♜g7
30 ♜e4! ♜c4

Sadly necessary. Had Black played 28 ... b6 two moves earlier, he could have defended with 30 ... ♜c6 31 ♜f4 ♜f6, which is not now possible in view of the exchange on f6 and the pin 33 ♜c7. It is by such nuances that Karpov often outplays his opponents. We see clearly that by now Black has a difficult game, but to detect a mistake such as 28 ... b5? is always

difficult. And so the impression is gained that Karpov's victories arise out of nothing.

31 ♜e5 ♜xe4 32 ♜xe4 ♜g8 33 f4!

Karpov rejects the possible transition into a rook ending with an extra pawn after 33 ♜xf7 ♜d6, and continues to intensify the pressure.

33 ... ♜f8

Going completely onto the defensive with 33 ... ♜f8 does not suit Taimanov, and he prefers to part with a pawn in the hope of gaining counterplay.

34 ♜xf7 ♜c2
35 ♜g5! ♜h6

36 ♜d8 and 37 ♜e6 was threatened.

36 ♜e6! ♜xh2
37 ♜f5 ♜xf4

The only move. 37 ... ♜g2 would have lost immediately to 38 ♜d8+ and 39 ♜h8.

38 ♜xf4?!

38 ♜xf4 ♜xb2 39 ♜f6 h6 40 ♜g7+ would have won more quickly.

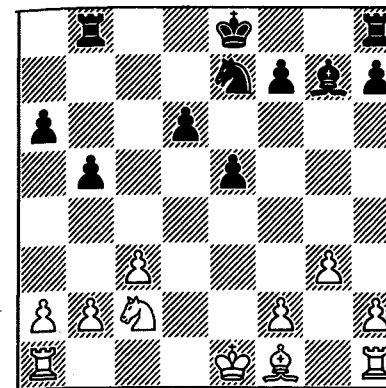
38 ... ♜xb2 39 ♜g7+ ♜h8 40 ♜a7 h5 41 ♜xa6 b4 42 ♜d4 ♜g2 43 ♜f3 ♜d2 44 ♜e3 ♜b2 45 ♜f4 ♜d2 46 ♜f5 ♜b2 47 ♜g5! b3 48 ♜h6+! ♜g8 49 ♜f6 Black resigns

Illescas-Domont
Seville 1987

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 e5 6 ♜db5 d6 7 ♜g5 a6 8 ♜a3 b5 9 ♜xf6 gxf6 10 ♜d5 f5 11 c3 ♜g7 12 exf5 ♜xf5 13 ♜c2 ♜e6 14 g3 ♜xd5 15 ♜xd5 ♜e7 16 ♜b7 ♜b8 17 ♜xb8+ ♜xb8 (46)

The opening contains a number of subtle points.

46



Thus 11 c3 contains a little trap, which Black successfully avoids. The plausible 11 ... fxe4? allows 12 ♜xb5! axb5 13 ♜xb5, which is much stronger than the immediate sacrifice (11 ♜xb5 axb5 12 ♜xb5), since the white queen is covering a4, and in some lines it can also come into play at g4. In the game A.Rodriguez-Georgadze, Sukhumi/Tbilisi 1977, after 13 ... ♜g5 (the lines 13 ... ♜b8? 14 ♜bc7+ ♜d7 15 ♜g4+ and 13 ... ♜a7? 14 ♜xa7 ♜xa7 15 ♜a4+ demonstrates the queen's newly-acquired freedom) 14 ♜bc7+ ♜d8 15 ♜xa8 ♜xg2 16 ♜f1 ♜a6 17 ♜e3 ♜f3 (17 ... ♜xh2 18 ♜a4!) 18 ♜g1 ♜d3 19 ♜b6 ♜h6 20 ♜xf3 exf3 21 ♜d1 e4 22 ♜bd5 White's material advantage eventually prevailed.

On move 14 White normally supports his advanced knight with 14 ♜ce3, and answers 14 ... ♜e7 with 15 g3, a recent example being the game Geller-Fedorowicz, New York 1990: 15 ... ♜xd5 16 ♜xd5 0-0 17 ♜g2 a5 18 0-0 ♜b8 19 ♜h5 ♜h8 20 ♜ad1 f5 21 ♜d2 ♜d7 22 ♜fd1 ♜f7 23 ♜h4 e4 24 ♜f4 ♜e5, when the exchange sacrifice 25 ♜xd6! ♜xd6 26 ♜xd6 destroyed the solidity of Black's position, and White went on to win.

But the Spanish player went 14 g3 immediately. This gave him the option of

meeting 14 ... ♜e7 with either 15 ♜ce3, transposing into normal lines, or 15 ♜g2, but in any case Black should have played 14 ... ♜e7, since the ill-judged exchanges 14 ... ♜xd5? and 16 ... ♜b8? took play into an ending where the weakness of his queenside pawns could be immediately exploited.

18 ♜b4! ♜b6

Unfortunately, 18 ... a5 fails to the tactical trick 19 ♜a6! ♜b6 20 ♜xb5+ ♜xb5 21 ♜c7+. Now 19 ♜xa6 ♜xa6 20 ♜xb5+ ♜c6 looks quite good for White, but he finds an even stronger continuation.

19 a4!

Threatening simply to win the a6 pawn by 20 a5.

19 ... a5 20 ♜xb5+ ♜xb5 21 axb5 axb4 22 ♜a7

White has not only activated his queen's rook, but has also acquired a menacing passed pawn at b5, and it proves impossible for Black to coordinate his pieces to prevent the queening of this pawn.

22 ... ♜d5 23 0-0 e4 24 ♜d1 bxc3 25 bxc3

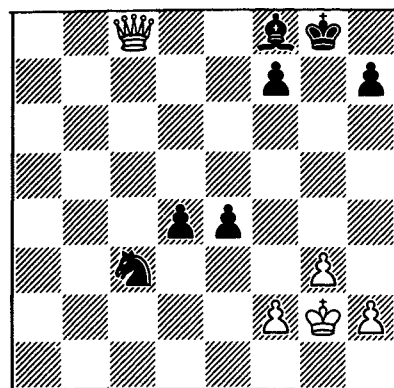
Of course, White does not allow his opponent to gain counterplay by 25 ♜xd5? cxb2 26 ♜d1 0-0, for example 27 b6 ♜d4! 28 ♜a4 ♜xb6 29 ♜b4 ♜c5, with drawing chances.

25 ... ♜xc3 26 b6! d5 27 b7 0-0 28 ♜a8

Moving the rook at d1 would have allowed Black time to play 28 ... ♜e5, but now the appearance of a new white queen cannot be prevented.

28 ... ♜xd1 29 ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 30 b8=♜ ♜c3 31 ♜g2 d4 32 ♜c8! (47)

47



Black is paralysed: his bishop is pinned, and neither his knight nor his d-pawn can move. He is effectively in zugzwang.

32 ... h6 33 ♖f1 ♗g7 34 ♖c4 Black resigns

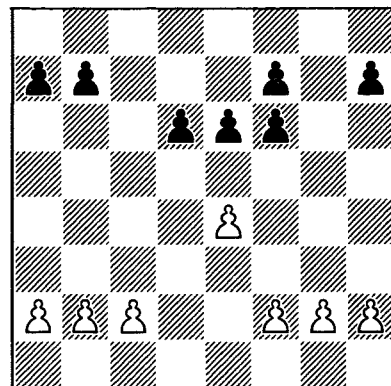
RAUZER VARIATION

White's sixth move ♗g5, suggested by the Soviet master Rauzer after 1 e4 c5 2 ♗f3 ♗c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 d6, or 1 e4 c5 2 ♗f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 a6, is one of the most dangerous for Black. This move envisages several aggressive plans for White. He prepares queenside castling and then, depending on circumstances, he builds up a striking force of pieces and pawns in the centre (f2-f4, ♖he1, e4-e5), or attacks on the kingside (f2-f3, g2-g4, h2-h4), while sometimes by a frontal attack on the d6 pawn he forces Black to break up his kingside after the exchange ♗xf6 gxf6. The pawn formation arising in this last instance

(diagram 48)

characterises one of the endgame varieties of the Rauzer Variation. As compensation for his compromised kingside, Black

48



usually has the advantage of the two bishops, and the pawns at d6, e6 and f6 control important central squares. An additional factor in Black's counterplay is the half-open g-file, pressure along which often forces White to play g2-g3, after which Black has the possibility of ridding himself of his weak h-pawn by ... h5-h4. Experience has shown that in this variety of the Rauzer Variation, relying on the possibilities of counterplay listed, Black has better prospects in the endgame than in the middlegame.

For White's plan involving the advance e4-e5, the endgame arising in the game *Ivkov-Taimanov* is typical. Although the game concluded in White's favour, the assessment of this type of ending is not straightforward, and depends on the specific situation at the point of transition to the endgame. Both sides have their pluses and minuses: Black has the better pawn formation, White a spatial advantage and control of the only open d-file.

The Rauzer Variation can also lead to an ending where each side has a pawn majority on the wing, in which the methods of play are well known. And at the end of this section we give some games with rarely occurring pawn configurations.

Another game to note is *Karpov-Byrne*,

Hastings 1971/72, on p.65 of *Anatoly Karpov: Chess is my Life* (Pergamon, 1980).

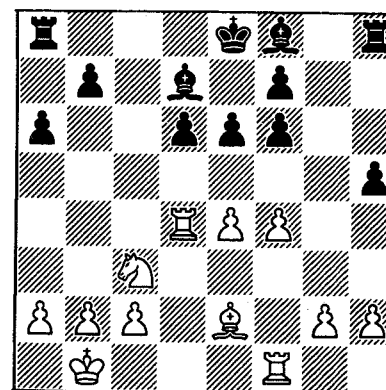
Keres-Petrosian

Candidates Tournament, Amsterdam 1956

1 e4 c5 2 ♗f3 ♗c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 d6 6 ♗g5 e6 7 ♖d2 h6 8 ♗xf6 gxf6 9 0-0-0 a6 10 ♗e2 h5 11 ♗b1 ♗d7 12 f4 ♖b6 13 ♖hf1 ♖xd4 14 ♖xd4 ♗xd4 15 ♗xd4 (49)

White has made the same mistake as in the game *Suetin-Botvinnik*, 20th USSR Championship, Moscow 1952, where after 10 f4 ♗d7 11 ♗c4 h5 12 ♗b1 ♖b6, instead of the correct 13 ♗b3, White played 13 ♖hf1 ♖xd4 14 ♖xd4 ♗xd4 15 ♗xd4. "The secret of the position is that after the exchange of queens and one pair of knights, Black gets rid of all his troubles, his king in the centre is better placed than the white king, he retains the two bishops, and the d6 pawn will be securely defended" (Botvinnik). For the complete *Suetin-Botvinnik* game, cf. *Half a Century of Chess* p.177 (Pergamon, 1984).

49



In the resulting ending the white bishop is much better placed at e2 than at b3, but even so White has no advantage.

In the later game *Keres-Botvinnik* (Moscow 1956), White gained the advantage after 13 ♗b3! 0-0-0 14 ♖hf1 ♗a5 15 ♖f3 ♗xb3 16 axb3 ♗b8 17 ♗a4 ♖a7 18 f5! ♗e7 19 fxe6 fxe6 20 ♖xf6!.

15 ... h4!

Well played. Black fixes the g2 pawn and gains counterplay along the g-file.

16 f5 ♗c8
17 ♖d3 ♗c5!

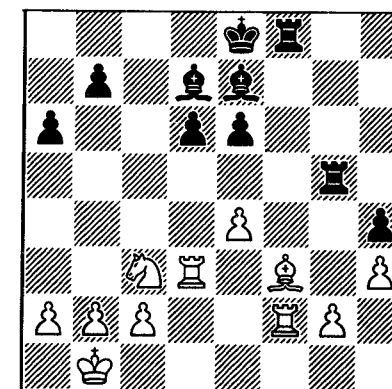
Petrosian acts in analogy with the *Suetin-Botvinnik* game. The sacrifice of the f6 pawn, for the sake of activating his dark-square bishop, promises him sufficient counterplay.

18 fxe6 fxe6 19 ♖xf6 ♗g5 20 ♖f2

The immediate 20 ♗f3 would not do in view of 20 ... ♗g7 21 ♖f4 ♗e5.

20 ... ♖hg8 21 ♗f3 ♗e7 22 h3 ♖f8 (50)

50



The position has stabilised. Black's two bishops and piece activity compensate for his slight material deficit. Both sides embark on a period of lengthy manoeuvring, with the aim of improving the placing of their forces.

23 ♖fd2 ♗c6 24 ♗d1 ♗d7 25 b3 b5 26 ♗f2 ♗c7 27 ♗g4 ♖f4 28 ♖e2 ♗d7 29 a3

♖c7

Petrosian has deployed his pieces in ideal positions, and he calmly waits, inviting White to try and find a winning possibility.

30 ♖c1 d5!?

Showing a flexible approach to the defence. Black boldly opens up the position, exploiting tactical nuances. Otherwise the white king would have approached the f4 rook via d2 and e3 and driven it from its active position, which would have been a definite achievement for White.

31 exd5 ♗xa3+ 32 ♖d2 ♗xd5 33 ♗xd5 exd5 34 ♖e6 a5 35 ♖h6 d4!

It transpires that capturing the h4 pawn is dangerous for White in view of the opponent's counterattack along the dark squares: 36 ♖xh4? ♗b4+ 37 ♖e2 ♖c5. Keres is forced to simplify the position further.

36 c3 dxc3+ 37 ♖xc3+ ♗b7 38 ♖d3 ♖f7 39 ♖xh4 ♖e7 40 ♖e3 ♗c5

Black's counterattack has achieved its aim. White is obliged to force a draw.

41 ♖g4

Draw agreed. After the exchange of all the pieces a drawn pawn ending is reached.

Suetin-Yuferov

USSR Olympiad, Moscow 1972

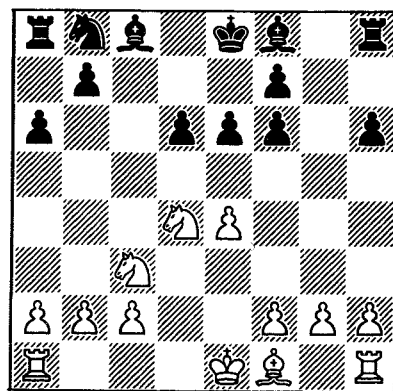
1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 a6 6 ♗g5 e6 7 ♖f3 h6 8 ♗xf6 ♖xf6 9 ♖xf6 gxf6 (51)

Present-day theory regards with some scepticism the attempt by White to gain an advantage after 7 ♖f3, precisely because of the reply 7 ... h6. But the continuation

chosen by Suetin is harmless only at first sight. With his tenth move, in view of the positional threat of ♗h5, White practically forces the advance ... h5, and then fixes the black pawn on this square, thus seriously hindering Black's possibilities of active counterplay. It is not easy for Black to defend: thus in the game Verner-Savon (USSR 1971), his excessively sharp playing 'for a win' had dismal consequences: 10 ♗e2 h5 11 h4 ♖d7 12 0-0-0 ♖a7 13 ♖b1 b6 14 f4 ♖c7 15 ♗f3 ♗b7 16 ♖de2 ♖g8 17 ♖h3 b5 18 a3 ♖c4 19 ♖g3 f5 20 exf5 ♗xf3 21 gxf3 ♖xf4 22 fxe6 fxe6 23 ♖ge4 d5 24 ♖g5 ♖g6 25 ♖e1 ♗e7 26 ♖xe6 ♖xh4 27 ♖f4! ♖xf4 28 ♖xe7+, and White soon won.

In the game under consideration Yuferov carries out a positionally sounder plan, the essence of which is the idea of activating the black bishops after ... e5 and ... f5. One gains the impression that the transition into the endgame is indeed unfavourable for White, and we consider sharp continuations such as Levenfish's recommendation of 8 ♗h4 ♖bd7 9 0-0-0 ♖e5 10 ♖e2 g5 11 f4! to be more promising.

51



Compared with the Suetin-Botvinnik endgame, Black's chances are even more favourable. In that game, as compensation for the defects in his pawn formation,

Botvinnik had the 'pure' advantage of the two bishops, whereas here Black also has a knight. As a rule, this factor always increases the possibilities of active play for the side with the two bishops.

10 ♗e2 h5!

A standard procedure in endings of this type. It is unfavourable for Black to allow the white bishop to go to h5.

11 h4 ♗d7
12 a4

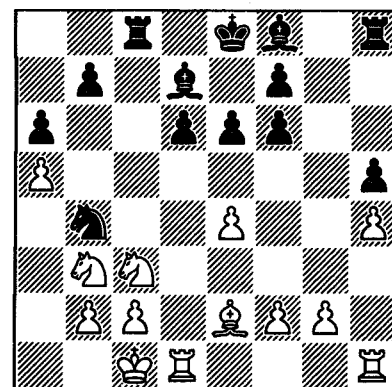
A debatable move. On the one hand, White hinders the development of Black's initiative on the queenside with ... b5, but on the other hand he weakens the important b4 square, which becomes an excellent post for the enemy knight.

12 ... ♖c6
13 ♖b3

The exchange of knights on c6 would have led to the even further strengthening of the enemy centre after 13 ... bxc6, and to the opening of the b-file, which would be unfavourable for White.

13 ... ♖c8 14 a5 ♖b4 15 0-0-0 (52)

52



Black has successfully deployed his pieces on the queenside, and is now faced with choosing an active plan. Yuferov

makes a committal, but positionally well-founded move, which demonstrates the great potential of Black's position.

15 ... e5! 16 ♖b1 f5! 17 ♗f3 ♗e7 18 exf5 ♗xf5 19 ♖d2 ♖c7 20 ♗e4 ♗e6 21 g3 f5

The black pieces and pawns are as though gradually waking up, and each of them hurries to occupy its most favourable position. It only remains for Black to play his king to f7 and include his king's rook in the game, and things will become totally bad for White. Therefore Suetin decides to part with his bishop, if only to check the growing activity of the opponent's pieces.

22 ♗d5! ♖xd5 23 ♖xd5 ♖c4 24 ♖hd1

The exchange on e7 would have led to a strategically lost endgame for White.

24 ... ♗f8 25 ♖d3 ♖h6 26 ♖c1

White's counterplay lies in his pressure on the d-file and secure control over d5. Therefore Suetin aims to transfer his badly placed knight at b3 closer to this strategically important square.

26 ... ♖c5!
27 b4?

A mistake. The advance of the white b-pawn makes the position of the black rook at c4 invulnerable, and allows Yuferov to carry out an important breakthrough on the kingside. It was essential to return the knight to b3, when Black would have had to seek other ways to develop his initiative.

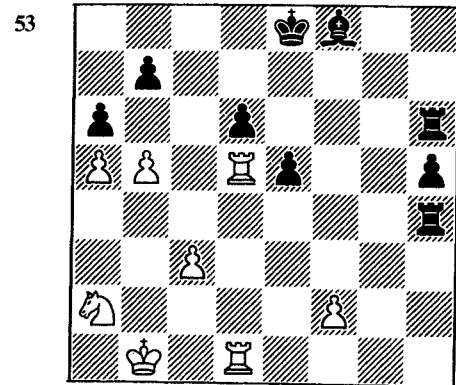
27 ... ♖c4
28 ♖a2 f4!

With the white pawn at b2, this breakthrough would not have brought Black any advantage in view of the reply b2-b3.

29 gxf4?!

Now White loses a pawn, but provokes the exchange of the opponent's light-square bishop. After 29 ♖ac3 ♙f5 (29... e4 30 ♖d4) 30 ♖3d2 fxg3 31 fxg3 it would not have been easy for White to defend his g3 pawn, but even so this continuation should have been preferred.

29 ... ♙xd5 30 ♖xd5 ♖xf4 31 b5 ♖xh4 32 c3 (53)



Black has an extra passed pawn on the kingside, which is bound to decide the game. It is now a matter of technique.

32 ... ♖h7

32... axb5 33 ♖xb5 ♖h7 would perhaps have been more precise.

33 bxa6 bxa6 34 ♖b4 ♖a7 35 ♖c2 ♖f4 36 ♖d3 ♖f3 37 ♖b1 h4 38 ♖b8+ ♖f7

Such a late first move by the king is a rather rare phenomenon in the endgame.

39 ♖b4 ♖xf2+ 40 ♖b3 ♖e6 41 ♖d3 ♖ff7 42 ♖a4 ♖f1

Black prepares to attack the enemy king from the rear and restricts the possible movements of the white knight.

43 ♖b3 ♙e7
44 ♖b6 ♖h1

The threat of the h-pawn's advance

forces Suetin to take play into a lost rook ending.

45 ♖c6 ♖d7 46 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 47 ♖xa6 h3 48 ♖a2 ♖e6 49 ♖a8 ♖h7 50 ♖a6 ♖d7 51 ♖a8 ♖g7

White is threatened with the advance of the enemy h-pawn to the queening square after 52 ... ♖g2+, 53 ... ♖a1 (b1)+ and 54 ... h2, and so he is forced to leave the d6 pawn in peace and switch to the neutralisation of the h-pawn.

52 ♖h8 ♖g2+ 53 ♖b3 h2 54 ♖dh3 ♖d5

Black's plan includes the exchange of one pair of rooks, and he is even happy to exchange his h-pawn for the a-pawn.

55 ♖a4 ♖b2 56 ♖a3 ♖g2 57 ♖a4 ♖a2+ 58 ♖b5 ♖b1+ 59 ♖a6 ♖ba1 60 ♖xh2 ♖xa5+ 61 ♖b6 ♖5a2 62 ♖h4 ♖b2+ 63 ♖b4 ♖xb4+ 64 cxb4

Black has achieved his aim. The rest is elementary.

64 ... e4 65 ♖e8 ♖d4 66 b5 d5 67 ♖c6 ♖c1+! 68 ♖d6 ♖b1 69 ♖c6 e3 70 b6 ♖d3 71 b7 e2 White resigns

Ivkov-Taimanov

Yugoslavia v. USSR, Belgrade 1956

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 d6 6 ♙g5 e6 7 ♖d2 ♙e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 f4 ♖xd4 10 ♖xd4 h6 11 ♙h4 ♖a5

One of the basic positions of the Rauzer Variation, especially popular in the 1950s, has been reached. Black chose 10 ... h6, not fearing 11 h4?! in view of 11 ... hxg5 12 hxg5 ♖h7 followed by ... ♙xg5. Now White has a choice: to force the transition into an endgame by 12 e5, play for an attack against Black's kingside, which has been weakened by ... h6, by 12 ♖g1,

or begin piece pressure in the centre with 12 ♙c4. Present-day theory considers 12 ♙c4! the strongest.

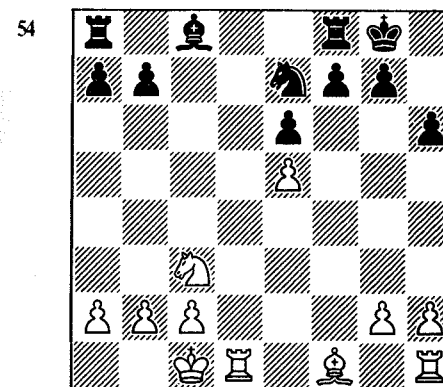
12 e5

This move, introduced by Isaac Boleslavsky (Boleslavsky - Gligorić, Candidates Tournament, Zurich 1953) is the most critical continuation. At first it seemed that the ending, which arises by force after 12 e5, favoured White, but then Boleslavsky took the side of Black and demonstrated (both analytically and practically!) that his position and the variation as a whole were quite acceptable. Indeed, the assessment of the given line of the Rauzer Attack depended entirely on the assessment of the ending arising after Black's 15th move.

12 ... dxe5
13 ♖xe5 ♖xe5

Gligorić played 13 ... b6?!, which led after 14 ♖xa5 bxa5 to an inferior ending. Note that 13 ... ♖b6?! loses to 14 ♖a4 ♖c6 15 ♙b5 ♖xg2 16 ♖hg1, so that Black is obliged to exchange queens.

14 fxe5 ♖d5
15 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 (54)



In 1956 the specialists were not yet in agreement about the assessment of this

position – and this is understandable, since there was a lack of practical material. And on the basis of 'theoretical' arguments it was difficult to give an assessment. On the one hand, White has the d-file and a queenside pawn majority, which, it would seem, should give him the advantage. But, on the other hand, for the opening of the d-file White has 'paid' with a weakness at e5, and it is against this weakness that Black bases his counterplay. The decisive word in the assessment of the diagram position belongs to Boleslavsky – it was through his efforts that equality of chances was established.

16 ♙d3

The most logical move, and probably the strongest.

Nothing is achieved by 16 ♙c4 in view of 16 ... a6 17 a4 ♖c6 18 ♖he1 ♖d8 19 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 20 ♖e4 ♖c6 21 ♖d6 ♖b8 – analysis by Boleslavsky.

Initially Keres' continuation 16 ♙b5!? seemed dangerous for Black. Thus after 16 ... ♖b8?! 17 ♖he1 b6 18 g3 ♖b7 19 ♖e4 ♖c7 20 ♖d6 White gained a secure advantage in Keres-Boleslavsky (24th USSR Championship, Moscow 1957). But soon a precise plan, neutralising the bishop move, was found by Boleslavsky: 16 ♙b5 a6! 17 ♙d3 (after 17 ♙d7 ♖d8 18 ♙a4 ♖xd1+ 19 ♖xd1 b5 20 ♙b3 ♖g6 Black has the advantage – Boleslavsky) 17 ... b5 18 ♙e4 ♖b8! 19 ♖d6 (or 19 a3 a5 20 b4 axb4 21 axb4 ♙b7 22 ♖he1 ♖fc8 23 ♖b2 ♖c4 24 ♖b3 ♖bc8 25 ♖d3 ♙xe4 26 ♖xe4 ♖c6! ♠, Schmid-Elisakases, Munich Olympiad 1958) 19 ... b4! 20 ♖a4 ♖b5!, and Black seized the initiative (Litvinov-Boleslavsky, Byelorussian Championship, Minsk 1959).

16 ... ♙d7?

At that time Taimanov was far from

alone in his optimistic assessment of this move. Annotating the Boleslavsky-Gligorić game, Bronstein wrote: "... with the pawn at h6, the move ... ♔d7 is perfectly possible. After 17 ♔h7+ ♕xh7 18 ♖xd7 ♕c6 the exchange of the b7 pawn for the e5 pawn is not dangerous for Black, provided only that the player with White is not too great a lover of the endgame". It is not known whether or not Ivkov considered himself a great lover of the endgame, but he happily went in for this continuation. The advantages for White are obvious: the weakness at e5 disappears, and his pawn majority on the queenside becomes threatening. Concrete analysis shows that Black simply does not have time to exploit his pawn majority in the centre. The only correct continuation, according to Boleslavsky, is 16 ... b6! 17 ♔e4 ♖b8 18 ♖he1 ♔b7 19 ♖d7 ♔xe4 20 ♕xe4 (20 ♖xe4 ♕c6 21 ♖c7 ♖fc8 22 ♖xc8+ ♖xc8 23 ♕b5 ♕f8 24 ♖c4 ♕e7=) 20 ... ♕c6 21 ♕d6 ♖fd8 22 ♖c7 ♕xe5 23 ♖xe5 ♖xd6 24 ♖xa7 ♖bd8! 25 b3 ♖d1+ 26 ♕b2 ♖ld2=.

17 ♔h7+ ♕xh7 18 ♖xd7 ♕c6 19 ♖xb7 ♕xe5 20 ♖e1!

Here it is, Ivkov's decisive improvement! A game Boleslavsky-Geller (1954) went 20 ♕b5 ♖fb8!, and the players agreed a draw. This is what grandmaster Ivkov had to say: "By transferring the rook along the third rank, White attacks the weak black pawn on the a-file. Played in the style of recommendations by Capablanca, who said it was essential to be cautious about moving pawns and to leave the third rank free for the rooks".

20 ... f6

20 ... ♕c6 is strongly met by 21 ♖e4 ♖ab8 22 ♖xb8 ♖xb8 23 ♖c4 ♖c8 24 b4! – Boleslavsky.

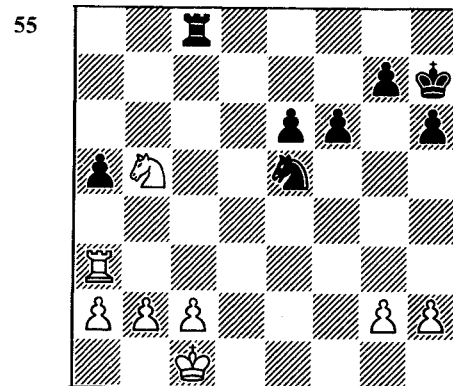
21 ♖e3! ♖fb8 22 ♖c7 ♖c8 23 ♕b5 ♖ab8

"If 23 ... a6, then 24 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 25 ♕d4 ♖e8 26 ♖a3±" – Boleslavsky.

24 ♖a3 a5!

Cleverly played. White cannot take the a-pawn in view of 25 ... ♖xb5!

25 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 (55)



How can White show that he still has an advantage? The consequences of 26 ♖xa5 ♕d3+ 27 ♕b1 ♕e1 are unclear. Ivkov again demonstrates his deep understanding of the position and finds a way to simplify favourably.

26 ♕d4! ♕c4 27 ♖c3 e5 28 b3!!

Black is offered the choice of a pawn, rook or knight ending, each of which is unsatisfactory for him.

28 ... ♕d6

"After 28 ... exd4 29 ♖xc4 the rook ending is hopeless. In the pawn ending the following interesting win is possible: 29 ... ♖xc4 30 bxc4 ♕g6 31 ♕b2!! ♕f5 32 ♕b3 ♕e6 33 ♕a4 ♕d6 34 ♕b5 f5 35 ♕b6 ♕d7 36 ♕c5 etc. Or here 33 ... f5 34 ♕xa5 f4 35 ♕b6 g5 36 c5 b4 37 c6 f3 38 gxf3 gxf3 39 c7 etc." (Ivkov).

29 ♖xc8 ♕xc8 30 ♕c6 a4 31 bxa4!?

Of course, 31 b4 looks more imposing, but the text also has many virtues.

31 ... ♕g6 32 a5 ♕f7 33 a6 ♕e6 34 a7 ♕b6 35 ♕b4!

White's extra pawn on the queenside has tied down the opponent's main forces. Ivkov exploits a favourable opportunity to transfer play to the opposite wing.

35 ... ♕d6 36 c4!

d5 must be secured for the knight.

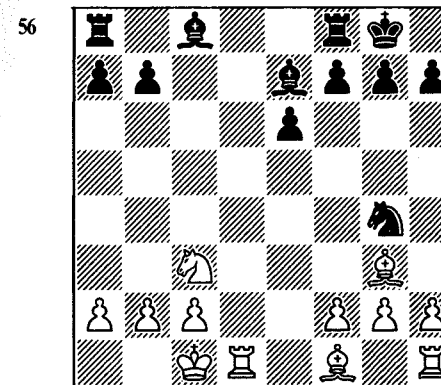
36 ... ♕c5 37 ♕d5 ♕a8 38 ♕e3 ♕b6 39 ♕f5 ♕xa7 40 ♕xg7 ♕b6 41 g4! ♕xc4 42 ♕f5 e4 43 ♕xh6 ♕e5 44 h4 ♕b6 45 h5 ♕c5 46 ♕d2 ♕d5 47 ♕f5 ♕f3+ 48 ♕e2 ♕g5 49 h6

Here Taimanov evidently grew tired of chasing the enemy passed rooks' pawns, and he terminated his resistance.

Vasyukov-Boleslavsky

USSR Championship Semi-Final, Kiev 1957

1 e4 c5 2 ♕f3 ♕c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♕xd4 ♕f6 5 ♕c3 d6 6 ♕g5 e6 7 ♖d2 ♕e7 8 0-0-0 ♕xd4 9 ♖xd4 0-0 10 e5 dxe5 11 ♖xe5 ♖b6 12 ♕e3 ♕g4 13 ♖xb6 ♕xe5 14 ♕c7! ♕g4 15 ♕g3 (56)



The variation with the exchange 8 ... ♕xd4, which has the aim of avoiding the line 8 ... 0-0 9 ♕b3, is considered by theory to be unfavourable for Black. By an energetic break in the centre Vasyukov has forced his opponent to go into an ending which favours White. It would have been even worse for Black to play 12 ... ♖b4 (12 ... ♖c6 13 ♕b5) 13 a3 ♖h4 14 g3 ♖h5 15 ♖c7!.

The resulting ending is characterised by each side having a pawn majority on the wing, with an open d-file. The most natural plan for each side is normally the advance of his pawn majority, and in doing so it is very important to try and control the d-file. White can easily carry out such a plan, but for Black it is completely unreal. For him the most important thing is to coordinate his rooks and defer ... e5 until better times.

15 ... ♕f6

In the event of 15 ... f6 White has the very unpleasant 16 ♕e2 followed by 17 ♕f3.

16 ♕b5!

White plays the ending subtly, provoking a weakening of the opponent's queenside.

16 ... a6
17 ♕e2 b5

17 ... ♕d7 18 ♕f3 ♕c6 19 ♕xc6 bxc6 20 ♕d6 is no better for Black.

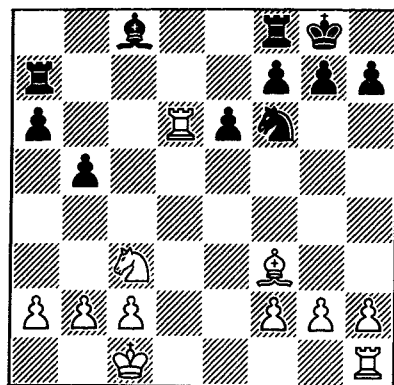
18 ♕f3 ♖a7
19 ♕d6 ♕xd6

Black would have lost immediately after 19 ... ♕b7? 20 ♕xe7 ♕xf3 21 ♕xf8 ♕xd1 22 ♕c5 ♖c7 23 ♖xd1.

20 ♖xd6 (57)

The position has simplified, and White's advantage has assumed real proportions.

57



He controls the only open file, all his pieces are about to occupy splendid positions, and the advanced black pawns on the queenside present an excellent target for developing his initiative on that part of the board.

20 ... ♔d7 21 ♖hd1 ♖c8 22 ♖b6!

With the concrete threat of 22 ♖b7.

22 ... ♖f8
23 h3

Useful prophylaxis. It is hard for Black to find a sensible move.

23 ... ♔c8 24 ♔c6! h6 25 ♖d6

One after another, all the white pieces make their way into the enemy position.

25 ... g5
26 b3!

Even in such an overwhelming position one has to watch for counterplay by the opponent. The incautious 26 b4 ♗g7 27 a4 bxa4 28 ♔xa4 ♔d7 29 ♔xd7 ♔xd7 30 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 31 ♖xa6 ♔b5 would have allowed Black counterchances after 32 ... ♔f1.

26 ... ♗g7 27 a4 bxa4 28 ♔xa4 a5 29 c4

Given the opportunity, Black would

not be averse to giving up a pawn with 29 ... ♔d5 followed by seizing the e-file. Vasyukov forestalls this attempt.

29 ... ♔d7 30 ♔c5 ♔xc6 31 ♖bxc6 ♖fa8

The black rooks present a dismal picture.

32 ♗b2!

All the white pieces are in their optimum positions. Now the king must help its army to break down the opponent's defences.

32 ... h5 33 ♗a3 h4 34 ♗a4 ♔h5 35 ♔e4!

Throughout the entire game, Vasyukov skilfully combines an attack on the enemy position with suppression of any possible counterplay. The 'dim-witted' 35 ♖a6? ♔f4 36 ♖xa7 ♖xa7 37 ♖a6 ♖xa6 38 ♔xa6 ♔xg2 39 c5 g4 would have thrown away the win.

35 ... ♗h6 36 ♖c5 ♖g8 37 ♖xa5 ♖xa5+ 38 ♗xa5 ♔f4 39 c5 ♔xg2 40 f3

The play has become concrete, and it is obvious that the complications are bound to end in favour of White.

40 ... ♔f4 41 c6 ♔d5 42 ♔c5 ♖a8+ 43 ♔a6!

In conclusion a little bit of tactics: 43 ... ♔c7 44 ♗b6 ♔xa6 45 ♗b7.

43 ... ♗g6 44 b4 ♔xb4 45 ♗xb4 ♖xa6 46 ♗b5 ♖a8 47 c7 ♖c8 48 ♗c6 ♗f6 49 ♖d4 e5 50 ♖g4 ♗g6 51 ♖e4! ♗f6 52 ♗d7 ♖h8 53 c8=♖ ♖xc8 54 ♗xc8 ♗e6 55 ♖g4! Black resigns

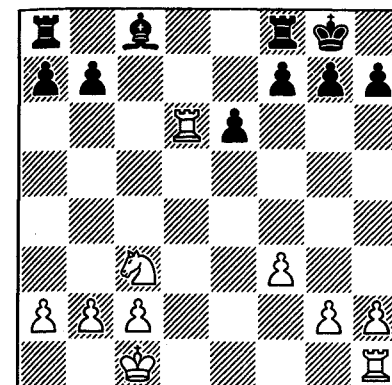
Radulov-Inkiov

Bulgarian Championship, Sofia 1980-81

1 e4 c5 2 ♔f3 ♔c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♔xd4 ♔f6 5 ♔c3 d6 6 ♔g5 e6 7 ♖d2 ♔e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 f3 d5 10 exd5 ♔xd5 11 ♔xe7 ♔dxe7

12 ♔xc6 ♔xc6 13 ♔b5 ♖b6 14 ♔xc6 ♖xc6 15 ♖d6 ♖xd6 16 ♖xd6 (58)

58



The central advance 9 ... d5?! is premature (9 ... a6!? is preferable). With the strong moves 12 ♔xc6!, 14 ♔xc6! and 15 ♖d6! Radulov has simplified the game and gone into a favourable ending. Each player has a pawn majority on the wing, with the d-file open. In such positions, as a rule, the advantage is gained by the side that succeeds in taking control of the only open file.

16 ... e5?!

The plans of the two sides are determined by the pawn formation. Black must advance his pawns on the kingside, and White on the queenside. In the given instance the active move 16 ... e5, weakening the d5 square, is dubious. The difference in the placing of the pieces is too great. 16 ... b6 was preferable, switching to passive defence.

17 ♔d5 ♔e6?

And here 17 ... b6 was simply essential.

18 ♔c7 ♖ad8
19 ♖xd8?

White returns the compliment. 19 ♖xe6! would have won a pawn immediately.

19 ... ♖xd8 20 ♔xe6 fxe6 21 ♖d1!

The simplest way for White to realise his advantage. The exchange on d1 is completely unsatisfactory for Black.

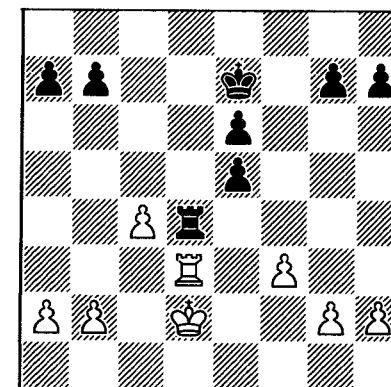
21 ... ♖d5
22 ♖d3 ♗f7

Here too the capture on d3 would have led to an easy win for White.

23 ♔d2 ♗e7
24 c4! ♖d4 (59)

Black battles tenaciously for the only open file. The rook ending after 24 ... ♖c5 25 ♗c3 b5 26 b3 bxc4 27 bxc4 is a technical win for White. He is essentially a pawn up with the enemy king cut off.

59



25 ♖xd4!

Pawn endings are the most concrete of all chess endings, and so a mistake in assessing the position when transposing into a pawn ending can have the most serious consequences. On the other hand, transposing into a won pawn ending is the best way of realising an advantage.

25 ... exd4 26 ♗d3 e5 27 f4! exf4 28 ♗xd4 ♗d6 29 b4 a5 30 a3 axb4 31 axb4 g5 32 ♗e4 ♗e6 33 h4!

A strong move. White either breaks up the opponent's pawns on the kingside, or speeds up the creation of his own passed

pawn on that part of the board.

33 ... f3

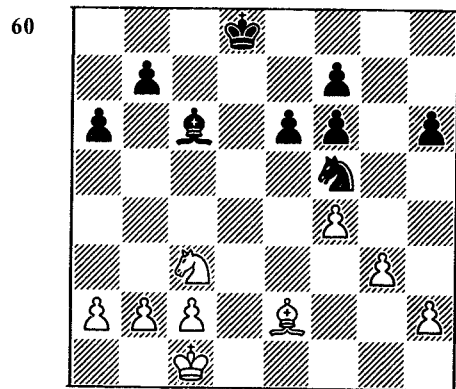
In the event of 33 ... h6 34 hxg5 hxg5 35 c5 d7 36 f5 c6 37 xg5 b5 38 xf4 xb4 39 g4 xc5 40 e5! b5 41 g5 b4 42 g6 b3 43 g7 b2 44 g8=♖ b1=♖ 45 ♖c8+ b4 46 ♖b8+ Black loses his queen. In this variation the importance of 33 h4! is seen. Black also fails to save the game after 33 ... gxh4 34 xf4 f6 35 c5! e6 36 e4 d7 37 d5 e7 38 e5 d7 39 b5 e7 40 f5 d7 (40 ... f7 41 c6 bxc6 42 b6) 41 f6 d8 42 g7, and White wins.

34 xf3 e5 35 hxg5 d4 36 g4 xc4 37 h5 xb4 38 h6 Black resigns

Barden-Taimanov

Great Britain v. USSR, London 1954

1 e4 c5 2 f3 c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 xd4 f6 5 c3 d6 6 g5 e6 7 d2 a6 8 0-0-0 d7 9 f4 h6 10 h4 xe4 11 e1 f6 12 f5 a5 13 xd6+ xd6 14 xd6 c7 15 d2 0-0-0 16 e2 e7 17 d1 f5 18 xf6 gxf6 19 d3 c6 20 g3 xd3 21 xd3 d8 22 xd8+ xd8 23 xd8+ xd8 (60)



Thirty plus years ago, theory had not

yet passed a final judgement on the sharp variation of the Rauzer Attack played in this game. But today all the questions would appear to have been settled, and the 'verdict' of the theorists is severe: the variation is difficult for Black. The critical position arises after White's 14th move. After 14 ... ♖c7, as chosen by Taimanov, White gains the advantage by 15 d2!, e.g. 15 ... ♖xf4 16 xf6 gxf6 (16 ... ♖xf6 is bad - 17 d5) 17 d4±, Berger-Benko, Budapest 1955. 14 ... 0-0-0 also fails to equalise; the game Spassky-Rabar (Göteborg Interzonal 1955) is widely known: 15 d1! ♖c7 16 ♖f2 d7 17 d3 c6 18 f5 e5 19 e1 d5 20 xd5 xd5 21 ♖g3! ±.

The continuation chosen by Barden, 15 d2, is fairly harmless: the exchange of heavy pieces takes place on the d-file almost by force, and the game goes into an almost level endgame. But perhaps White was counting on a quick draw?!

The resulting ending is very slightly more pleasant for White thanks to his superior pawn formation, but objectively the position is drawish. However, the difference in class between the play of Barden and Taimanov was so great that in the end White even contrived to lose this ending.

24 d3 d4 25 h4 e5 26 fxe5?

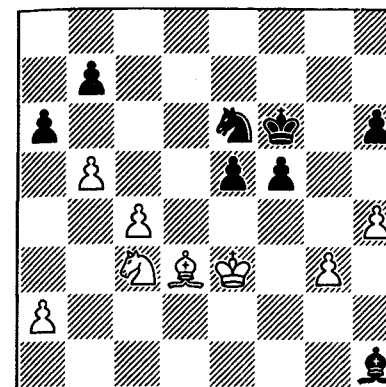
An inexplicable decision. What is the point in undoubling the black pawns? The English player was evidently intending to bring his king to the centre, and on 26 d2 he did not like 26 ... exf4 27 gxf4 f3+. But White could calmly have played 26 e2, and after 26 ... f3 27 c4 e7 28 b4 could then have brought his king into play via the queenside. White would have retained the more pleasant position, whereas now the initiative gradually passes to Black.

26 ... fxe5 27 d2 e7 28 e3 e6 29 d1?!

29 c4+ looks more logical.

29 ... f5 30 c3 f3 31 f2 d5 32 c4 c6 33 b4 d4 34 d1 f6 35 c3 e6 36 b5 h1 (61)

61



37 a4?

White's preceding play was not irreproachable, but this last move is a clear mistake. He should have played 37 bxa6 bxa6 38 d5+ xd5 39 cxd5 with equal chances.

37 ... a5
38 d5+?

Now this is inappropriate. Compared with the note to the previous move, the position is more closed, and the black knight gains a decisive advantage over the white bishop. To transform a slightly better position into a lost one, it has only taken White fifteen moves.

38 ... xd5 39 cxd5 d4! 40 c4

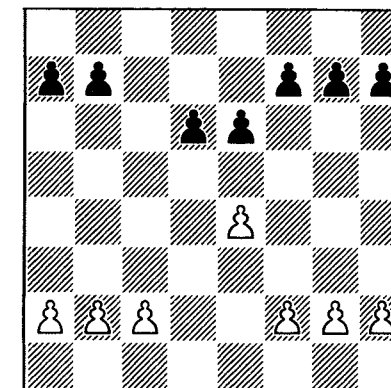
40 b6 db3 41 a6 would have failed to 41 ... c5.

40 ... e7 41 f1 d6 42 g2 b6 43 d3 db3 44 h3 c5+ 45 d2 e4+ White resigns

SCHEVENINGEN VARIATION

The 'pure Scheveningen endgame'

62

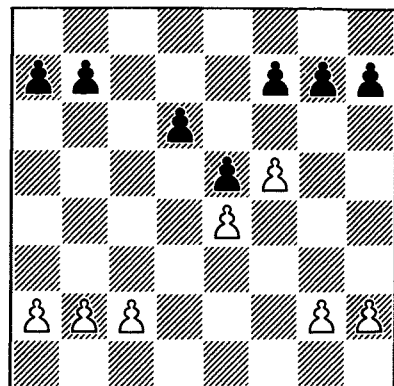


is characterised in particular by Black's 'little centre' d6 + e6 and his undeformed pawn formation on the wings. Endings with this type of structure can arise from various lines of the Sicilian Defence, but we have combined them in one section, since the 'little centre' is typical primarily of the Scheveningen Variation.

Reti, in assessing the Sicilian endgame in favour of Black, evidently had in mind positions of this type. The advantages of the 'little centre' in the endgame are demonstrated by the game Ermenkov-Tal. However, in modern tournament play one rarely encounters a game which begins with the Scheveningen Variation and concludes with a 'pure' Scheveningen endgame. White is perfectly well aware of the difficulties which await him in the endgame, and at an early stage he gives the game a different direction. Therefore the Ermenkov-Tal ending arose from a different variation of the Sicilian Defence.

One of the plans to break up the 'little centre' is the advance of the white f-pawn - f2-f4-f5, which usually forces Black to play ... e5. But endings with pawn configurations of the type

63



are not so favourable for White as in the Boleslavsky Variation, where the white pawn is usually at f2 or f3. The position of the white pawn at f5 weakens the e4 pawn and lends additional strength to the counter ... d5, after which the black pieces become active and the passed e-pawn acquires formidable strength. Examples of this are provided by the game **Petrosian-Smyslov**, 17th USSR Championship, Moscow 1949 (cf. Smyslov's *125 Selected Games* p.52, Pergamon, 1983), and also **Lepyoshkin-Bebchuk** and **Kostro-Moiseyev** from the chapter on the Paulsen Variation.

Things are worse for Black in endings where at an early stage he himself breaks up his 'little centre' with ... e5. On this theme the reader will find the games **Tal-Ftacnik** and **Geller-Tal**.

The game **Keres-Panno** stands apart. In it Black had a 'little centre', but the transition to the endgame was made at such an unfortunate moment that within a few moves Keres' active pieces achieved a bind on the black position.

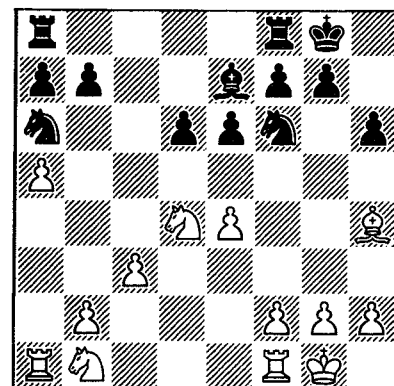
Ermenkov-Tal
Riga 1981

1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 b5+ d7 4 dxd7+

dxd7 5 0-0 d6 6 e2 e6 7 c3 e7 8 d4 0-0 9 g5 h6 10 h4 cxd4 11 dxd4 b6 12 a4 c5 13 a5 a6 14 xa6 xa6 (64)

The variation chosen by White often leads to simplification and a draw, which is probably what Ermenkov was aiming for. It should be mentioned that 9 e5!? or 9 d1!? comes into consideration (instead of 9 g5), although in neither case can White count on a great deal: 9 e5 e8 10 exd6 dxd6 11 d1 cxd4 12 dxd4 e8! (Lechtinsky - Geller, European Team Championship, Moscow 1977), or 9 d1 c8! 10 e5 e8 11 bd2 cxd4 12 cxd4 c7 13 f1 c4 14 xc4 xc4 (Short-Miles, London 1980/81).

64



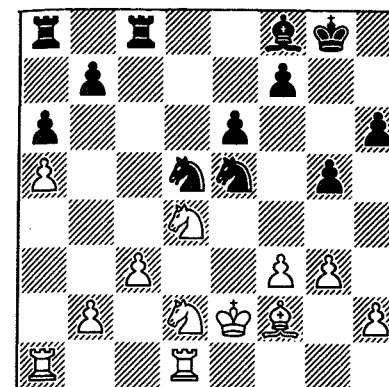
The exchange of queens has led to a roughly equal ending, but, as the tournament bulletin testifies, 'peace negotiations' were rejected by Tal.

15 f3 f8 16 d1 g5! 17 f2 d5! 18 exd5 dxd5

The pawn structure has changed. From a typical 'Scheveningen' endgame, an ending has arisen where each side has a flank pawn majority. The balance has not yet been disturbed, but Black has more preconditions for developing an initiative than White.

19 d2 c5 20 d2b3 a6 21 g3 f8 22 f1 d7 23 e2 e5 24 d2 (65)

65



Both sides have consistently been engaged in improving the placing of their pieces, a task with which Black has coped rather better. However, White's position does not have any serious defects, and Tal is faced with the problem of how to develop his initiative further.

In positions with flank pawn majorities, the standard plan is the advance of the pawn majority and the seizure of the only open file with the rooks. White's pawns on the queenside are blocked and cannot advance any further. At first sight, the advance of the black pawns on the kingside is possible after some preparation such as 24 ... e8, 25 ... f5 and 26 ... f7, but in this case it will become easier for White to breathe on the queenside. Tal takes the bold decision to manage without 24 ... e8, which is not very useful, and plays immediately

24 ... f5!?
25 dcl?

The Bulgarian player takes his formidable opponent at his word, and his position begins gradually to deteriorate through lack of space. He should have accepted the challenge and played 25 dxe6. After

25 ... e8 26 dxf8 Black has the discovered checks 26 ... d4+ and 26 ... c4+, but in each case White is saved by 27 d4!

25 ... f7 26 c2 d8 27 e1 ac8

The black pieces have lined up in battle formation, and the advance of the e-pawn is on the agenda. The manoeuvres of the white pieces are much more difficult to understand.

28 d4 g6 29 d3 e5! 30 g1 h5 31 f1?!

A tactical error in a difficult position.

31 ... xc3!

Tal never misses such a chance. Black obtains two pawns for the exchange with an overwhelming position.

32 bxc3 dxc3+ 33 e1 xd3 34 b3 b4 35 c5 b5+ 36 b4 xb4 37 c5 c3 38 b6 b3 39 f2 c3 40 g2 e6 41 f2 g4 42 h3 gxf3+ 43 xf3 e4 44 e3

The ending is of a technical nature, and the Ex-World Champion accurately realises his advantage.

44 ... b2+ 45 h1 c2 46 eel d2 47 c7 e5 48 xe5 xe5 49 a3 h4 50 gxh4 f4 51 xe2 xe2 52 b3 f3 53 g1 f4 White resigns

Scholl-Polugayevsky
Amsterdam 1970

1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 dxd4 f6 5 d3 d6 6 c4 e6 7 e3 a6 8 b3 a5 9 0-0 b5 10 f4 c7 11 f5 e5 12 de2 b7 13 d5 dxd5 14 dxd5 c4 15 c1 dxd5 16 exd5 c8 17 b3 dxe3 18 xe3 c5 19 xc5 xc5 (66)

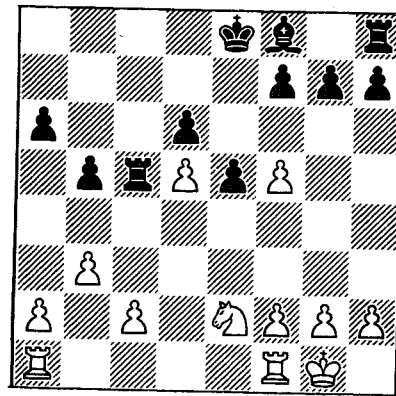
Grandmaster Polugayevsky has an

excellent feeling for the nuances of Sicilian set-ups: the opening part of this game was played by him with great precision. Beginning with the 7th move, each reply of Black's is full of profound meaning. Thus 7 ♙e3 appears to signify the 'Velimirović Attack': 8 ♜e2 , 9 0-0-0 and later g2-g4!. For Black 7 ... a6 is a waiting move, but at the same time an almost essential one; 7 ... ♙e7 would have disclosed his plans too early. 8 ♙b3 also looks a flexible move, since the possibility of castling on either side is retained. But after 8 ... ♞a5! it transpires that, in the event of the 'Velimirović Attack', White is prevented from deploying his pieces according to the following threatening pattern: 8 ♜e2 ♜c7 9 0-0-0 ♞a5 10 ♙d3(!) b5 11 ♙g5! ♙e7 12 a3 ♜b8 13 ♜e1! ♞c4 14 f4! (Sokolov-Tukmakov, 51st USSR Championship, Lvov 1984). But after 9 ♜e2 ♜c7 10 g4 b5 Black would start his counterattack, having saved a tempo on ... ♙e7 , which tells in the variation 11 g5 ♞d7 12 0-0-0 b4 13 ♞a4 ♞xb3+ 14 axb3 ♞c5! 15 ♞xc5 dxc5, when Black forestalls his opponent (Ribli-Dely, Hungary 1968). And so, if White was planning the Velimirović Attack, he should have begun with 8 ♜e2 rather than 8 ♙b3 . While if he were planning to castle kingside, then 7 ♙b3 a6 8 f4! was more advisable, and if 8 ... ♞a5 9 f5!.

White's last opportunity to initiate a sharp skirmish came on the 11th move: 11 ♜f3 ♙b7 12 $\text{♙xe6!?$ fxe6 13 ♙xe6 ♜d7 14 f5 (variation by Kasparov and Nikitin). And, finally, 13 ♙d5(?) was simply bad: White should have waited until his knight was disturbed by ... b4, for example: 13 ♙g3 ♞xb3 14 axb3 b4 15 ♙d5 .

By 14 ... ♞c4! Polugayevsky seized the initiative, and he was able to achieve a favourable ending almost by force after 18 ... ♜c5! .

66



Black's positional advantage in the endgame is undisputed. He has already begun an attack on the opponent's queenside, the black bishop is much stronger than the enemy knight, which finds it difficult to reach e4, its only good square, and White's pawn formation is seriously spoiled. If Black should succeed in quickly completing his development, his advantage will become decisive. Therefore White makes an attempt to open the game on the queenside.

20 c4! bxc4
21 bxc4 ♙e7!

Of course, Polugayevsky declines the pawn sacrifice, for which White would have obtained good compensation after 22 ♜fb1 , and completes the mobilisation of his forces.

22 ♜fc1 ♞d7!

White's activity gradually peters out, and his pawn weaknesses are felt more and more keenly.

23 ♜ab1 ♜hc8 24 ♜b7+ ♙e8 25 ♜a7
♜xc4 26 ♜xc4 ♜xc4 27 ♜xa6

The exchange of pawns has not eased White's position. All the same his pawn formation is 'incurably ill'. The d5 pawn

is doomed.

27 ... ♜c5 28 ♜a8+ ♙d8 29 ♞g3 ♜xd5
30 ♞h5 ♞d7 31 ♞xg7

By great efforts White has maintained the material balance, but positionally his game is lost.

31 ... e4!
32 ♞f1 ♜a5!

The most accurate. With the exchange of rooks, Black becomes complete master of the board.

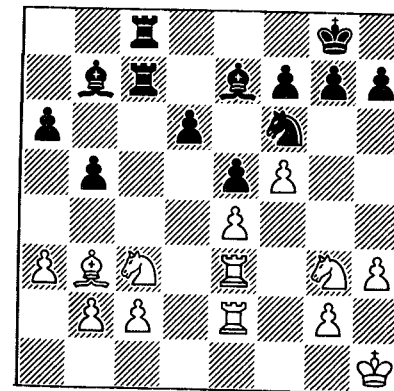
33 ♜xa5 ♙xa5 34 ♞h5 ♙c3 35 h4 d5 36
g4 ♞d6 37 ♞f4 ♙e5 38 ♞e2 ♙a5 39 a4 d4
40 ♞c1 d3 41 ♞b3

White resigns. Black plays 41 ... ♙c3 and then 42 ... e3.

Ljubojević-Portisch
Wijk aan Zee 1972

1 e4 c5 2 ♞f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♞xd4 ♞f6 5
♙c4 e6 6 ♞c3 a6 7 ♙b3 b5 8 0-0 ♙e7 9 f4
0-0 10 f5 e5 11 ♞de2 ♞bd7 12 ♞g3 ♙b7
13 ♙g5 ♜c8 14 ♙xf6 ♞xf6 15 a3 ♜b6+ 16
♞h1 ♜e3 17 ♜f3 ♜g5 18 ♜d3 ♜h4 19
♜e1 ♜c7 20 ♜e2 ♜fc8 21 h3 ♜g5 22 ♜e3
♜xe3 23 ♜fxe3 (67)

67



Ljubojević chose a variation which, according to the latest word of theory, does not promise White any particular advantage. Moreover, on the 10th move White played inaccurately: against 10 f5?! Black had the strong reply 10 ... b4!, with the better chances in Fischer-Smyslov, Candidates Tournament, Yugoslavia 1959, and Janošević-Polugayevsky, Skopje 1971. It is not clear why Portisch avoided this continuation. True, in sharp variations of the Sicilian Defence this latest word can very quickly change.

The Hungarian grandmaster replied with an original and unexpected four-move queen manoeuvre on the kingside. Realising that he had no prospect of an attack, White himself offered the exchange of queens, and the game transposed into a typical Sicilian ending.

23 ... ♜c5

Black has the advantage of the two bishops. A good way of exploiting this advantage is to use wing pawns to outflank the opponent's position. Portisch's last move, apart from reinforcing the d5 square, prepares the advance of his a-pawn.

24 ♜d3 a5
25 ♜dd2 h5!

A continuation of the correct strategy. White is forced to weaken his position on the kingside.

26 h4 ♞f8?

It is hard to say how useful this prophylactic move is for Black. The immediate 26 ... ♙a6 was more energetic.

27 ♞h2! ♙a6 28 ♞d5 ♞xd5 29 exd5
♜c7 30 ♞h3

As a result of Black's delay on move 26, White has succeeded in defending his h4

pawn. The initiative is still with Black, but vigorous action is demanded of him.

30 ... a4! 31 ♖a2 b4 32 ♖e4!

The best move. 32 ♖f2? bxa3 33 bxa3 is clearly in Black's favour.

32 ... bxa3
33 ♖xa4! ♖c4!

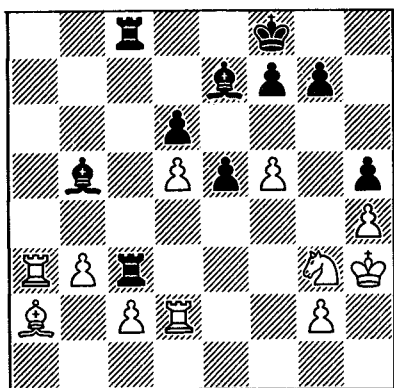
Mating motifs, involving an attack on the h4 pawn by a rook along the fourth rank, have unexpectedly appeared.

34 b3 ♖b5
35 ♖xa3?

The decisive mistake. As shown by Hajtun, White could have defended successfully after 35 ♖a5!, e.g. 35 ... ♖xc2 (otherwise 36 c4) 36 ♖xc2 ♖xc2 37 ♖xb5 g6 38 ♖b8+ ♖g7 39 ♖b7!, when 39 ... ♖f6 40 fxf6 ♖xf6 fails to 41 ♖b1, while 39 ... ♖f8 leads to a repetition of moves.

35 ... ♖c3! (68)

68



This move would appear to have been overlooked by the Yugoslav grandmaster: the majority of his pieces have ended up in a mortal pin. Not surprisingly, the game concludes within five moves.

36 ♖b1 e4! 37 ♖h2 e3 38 ♖d4 ♖f6 39 ♖b4 ♖e5 40 ♖xb5 e2 White resigns

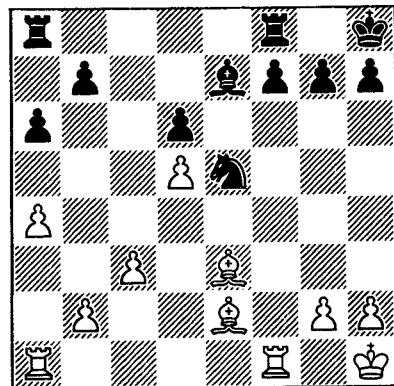
Tal-Ftacnik Tallinn 1981

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 d6 3 d4 ♖f6 4 ♖c3 cxd4 5 ♖xd4 a6 6 a4 e6 7 ♖e2 ♖e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 f4 ♖c6 10 ♖e3 ♖c7 11 ♖e1 ♖xd4 12 ♖xd4 e5 13 ♖e3 exf4 14 ♖xf4 ♖e6 15 ♖g3 ♖d7 16 ♖h6 ♖c5+ 17 ♖h1 ♖e5 18 ♖f4 ♖c5 19 ♖d5 ♖xd5 20 ♖h6 ♖d4 21 exd5 ♖h8 22 c3 ♖e5 23 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 24 ♖e3 (69)

In the opening stage the two players repeated as far as move 19 the game Tal-Ribli, Tilburg 1980, where 19 ♖e3 was played, and from the opening White did not gain any particular advantage.

Here 19 ♖d5!? brought Tal success. Black, however, did not defend in the best way: firstly, 21 ... ♖e5!? came into consideration – the poor position of his king at h8 was to tell within a few moves; secondly, the exchange sacrifice, suggested by Kasparov and Nikitin, does not look at all bad: 20 ♖h6! g6! 21 ♖xf8 ♖xf8 22 exd5 ♖xc2 23 ♖f2 ♖e5, “with fair compensation for the exchange”.

69



The ending reached in the diagram favours White. Here the advantage of the two bishops plays a considerable role. Each side has a pawn majority on the wing, and with play on opposite wings the long-range bishops can develop great

activity.

24 ... ♖ac8
25 a5!

Tal fixes Black's queenside pawns and prepares to bring his rook out at a4.

25 ... f5

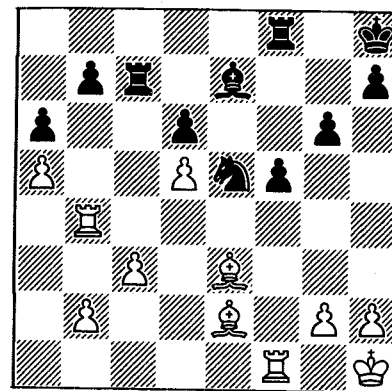
25 ... ♖c4 is parried by 26 ♖c1 followed by ♖a4.

26 ♖a4 g6

A natural move, reinforcing the f5 pawn. However, the pawn move temporarily weakens the Black's kingside, which Tal exploits with great skill.

27 ♖b4 ♖c7 (70)

70



White is at the crossroads. How is he to further develop his initiative? 28 ♖b6 suggests itself, but, as shown by Tal, Black would have held the position after 28 ... ♖d7 29 g4 fxf4 30 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 31 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 32 ♖xg4 ♖g7 33 b4 ♖f7! 34 c4 ♖f5. If White tries to prepare g2-g4 by 28 h3, then the simple 28... h5! is possible. The Ex-World Champion finds another interesting possibility. He plays his dark-square bishop to h6, setting Black difficult problems.

28 ♖h6! ♖f7?

Ftacnik immediately goes astray. 28 ... ♖fc8 was bad because of 29 g4!, but he should have played 28 ... ♖e8 29 ♖d1! (but not 29 g4? ♖f7 30 ♖c1 ♖g5=) 29 ... ♖c4. White has a choice between 30 ♖e1 and 30 g4, but Black's position is defensible (Tal).

29 ♖xa6!

With the help of tactics White wins a pawn.

29 ... bxa6 30 ♖b8+ ♖f8 31 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 32 ♖xf8 ♖c4 33 b4

33 b3? fails to 33 ... ♖g8.

33 ... ♖g8 34 ♖h6 ♖e7 35 h3!

Black has gained some counterplay, and Tal takes measures to suppress it. 35 g4 ♖e2 36 gxf5 ♖f7 would have led to an unclear position.

35 ... ♖f7

On 35 ... ♖e2 Tal was intending to play 36 ♖f4 ♖e3 37 ♖d4! ♖xg2 38 ♖d2!.

36 ♖g5!

More accurate than the immediate 36 ♖f4, on which 36 ... ♖c7 was possible.

36 ... ♖e5 37 ♖f4 ♖d2 38 ♖h4!

In concrete play of this type Tal feels very much at home. Each of White's moves displays enormous energy.

38 ... ♖e1+

38 ... ♖e4 was bad because of 39 ♖xh7+ ♖g8 40 ♖e7! ♖xd5 (40 ... ♖xg5 41 ♖xe5 dxe5 42 b5) 41 c4 ♖d1+ 42 ♖h2 ♖xg5 43 b5, although 39 ♖f4! ♖xd5 40 ♖xh7+ ♖f6 41 c4 was even simpler (Tal).

39 ♖h2 ♖e4 40 ♖xh7+ ♖g8 41 ♖e7

White has won a second pawn, and soon the game too is won.

41 ... ♖d1
 42 ♙h6 ♜xc3
 42 ... ♜xd5 43 c4 was hopeless.
 43 ♜g7+ ♜h8
 44 ♜a7!

Again tactics. The bishop check at g7 is threatened.

44 ... ♜xd5

In the event of 44 ... ♜e4 White would merely have had to prevent ... g5 by playing 45 h4!.

45 ♜xa6 ♜xb4 46 ♜b6 ♜c2 47 ♜b7!

Ftacnik has even managed to restore the material balance, but the white a-pawn cannot be stopped. Therefore **Black resigns**.

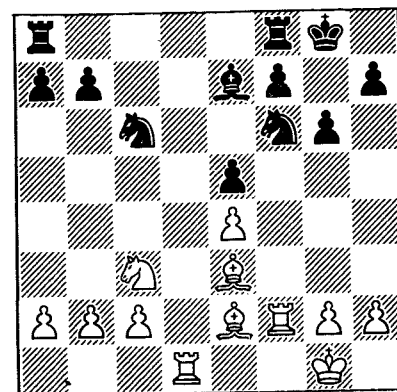
Geller-Tal

50th USSR Championship, Moscow 1983

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♜c3 e6 6 ♙e2 ♜c6 7 ♙e3 ♙e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 f4 e5 10 fxe5 dxe5 11 ♘f5 ♙xf5 12 ♜xf5 ♙xd1+ 13 ♜xd1 g6 14 ♜f2 (71)

A powerful stimulus to the analysis of this ending was given by the game Geller-Andersson, Moscow Interzonal 1982, where Geller scored a spectacular win in the endgame over an acknowledged specialist in this field of chess. There Black played 12 ... ♜c8 (the immediate exchange of queens is now preferred) 13 ♜h1 g6 14 ♜f1 ♙xd1 15 ♜axd1 ♙g7 16 g4! h6 17 ♜d5 ♜xe4? (17... ♜xd5 offered chances of resisting) 18 ♜xe7 ♜xe7 19 ♜d7, and White's advantage of two bishops against two knights in an open position proved decisive. Cf. Geller's *The Application of Chess Theory* p.61 (Pergamon, 1984) for the complete game.

71



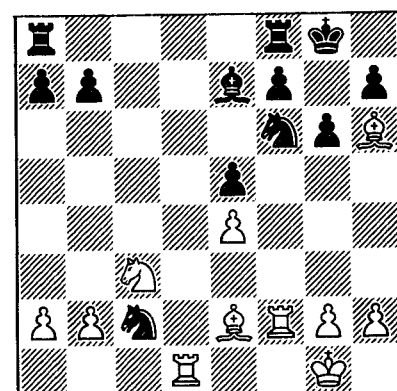
Compared with the Geller-Andersson game, slight changes have taken place. The white rook has retreated to f2, and Black has not played ... ♜ac8, but bases his counterplay on the advance of his knight into the centre.

14 ... ♜d4
 15 ♙h6

Geller-Chekhov, Sochi 1983, went 15 h3 ♜ac8 (15 ... ♙g7 16 ♜xd4!) 16 ♙d3 ♙g7 17 g4 h6 18 ♙g2 ♜d7 19 ♜d5 ♙h4 20 ♜fd2 ♙g5, and Black obtained comfortable play, the game ending in a draw on the 33rd move.

15 ... ♜xc2? (72)

72



Tal offers an interesting exchange

sacrifice. After 16 ♙xf8 ♜xf8 Black would have had reasonable compensation. In the later game Prodanov-Cvetković, Varna 1983, Black played 15 ... ♜xe2+ 16 ♜xe2 ♜fd8 17 ♜f1 ♜g4 18 ♙d2 ♙g7 19 h3 (19 ♜d5 is stronger), and the game ended in a draw on the 40th move.

16 ♙g5!!

Tal had undoubtedly prepared the exchange sacrifice beforehand for the game with Geller, and had analysed the diagram position at home. The backwards move by the bishop, which has only just gone to h6, is difficult to anticipate, and creates a strong impression. For the Ex-World Champion it was clearly an unpleasant surprise.

16 ... ♜d5

16 ... ♙g7 17 ♜df1 ♜g8 18 ♙xe7 ♜xe7 19 ♙c4 was even worse.

17 ♙xe7 ♜xe7 18 ♜d7 ♜c6 19 ♙c4 ♜e3 20 ♜xf7 ♜xf7 21 ♙xf7+ ♙h8 22 ♜d5 ♜xd5 23 ♙xd5 ♜d4 24 ♙xb7 ♜b8 25 b3

White has won a pawn with a good position, and it now becomes purely a matter of technique. The incautious 25 b4? ♜c2 26 b5 ♜a3 would have allowed Black to emerge unscathed.

25 ... ♜e2+ 26 ♙f2 ♜c1 27 ♙d5 ♜xa2 28 ♜xa7 ♜c1 29 ♜a3

Tal's knight performs miracles, forcing the white rook to abandon the seventh rank. But all the same Black's position remains lost.

29 ... ♜d3+ 30 ♙e3 ♜b4 31 ♜a7 ♜c2+

The rook ending is hopeless for Black.

32 ♙d3 ♜d4 33 ♜a3 h5 34 h4 ♙g7 35 ♙c4 g5 36 ♜a5!

Geller sacrifices his b-pawn in order to achieve victory on the opposite flank.

36 ... ♜xb3 37 ♜xe5 gxf4 38 ♙c3 ♜c1

Finally, the black knight is trapped.

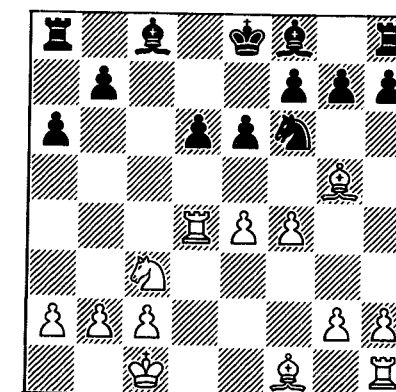
39 ♜xh5 ♜f8 40 ♜xh4 ♜f2 41 ♙g4+ ♙f6 42 ♙d4 ♜d2+ 43 ♙c3 ♜f2 44 ♜g8 Black resigns

Keres-Panno

Göteborg Interzonal 1955

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♜c3 a6 6 ♙g5 e6 7 f4 ♙b6 8 ♙d2 ♜c6 9 0-0-0 ♙xd4 10 ♙xd4 ♜xd4 11 ♜xd4 (73)

73



The two opponents chose one of the sharpest variations of the Sicilian Defence, but on the 8th move Black abruptly deviated. The move 7 ... ♙b6 only makes sense in connection with the capture of the b2 pawn: otherwise it leads to a difficult ending for Black. White is much better developed, and is all the time threatening the central breakthrough e4-e5.

11 ... ♜d7

It is difficult to suggest anything better.

12 ♙e2 h6 13 ♙h4 g5!? 14 fxf5 ♜e5

Panno defends resourcefully, sacrificing a pawn to seize control of the central e5 square. 14 ... ♗e7 was weaker in view of 15 ♖g3. Now 15 gxf6 ♗xf6+ 16 ♖b1 ♗e3 promises White little.

15 ♖a4!

Keres finds an unusual plan. He returns the sacrificed pawn and makes a sharp attack on the opponent's queenside, exploiting the fact that Black's main forces are occupied in the centre and on the kingside.

15 ... ♗e7

15 ... b5 16 ♖b6 ♖b8 17 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 18 a4! was even worse.

16 ♖b6 ♖b8 17 ♖g3 hxf6 18 ♖hd1 f6

Panno defends against 19 ♗xe5 dxe5 20 ♖c4 and prepares the development of his bishop from c8.

19 c4!

Now on 19 ... ♗d7 there follows 20 c5!

19 ... 0-0
20 ♖d2!

Subtle play by Keres. By an energetic series of moves he has achieved a bind over the opponent's queenside and has suppressed any freeing attempts. But in order to finally break down Black's defences, White must find and carry out an active plan. In the carrying out of such a plan by White, it is possible that Black will succeed in creating counterplay. Therefore Keres abruptly changes the rhythm of the play, and makes a calm waiting move, realising perfectly well that for Black to make similar waiting moves, without spoiling his position, is much more difficult.

20 ... f5?

White's tactics prove fully justified. Panno does not wish to be a passive observer, makes an abrupt move which weakens the position of the knight at e5, and loses even more quickly.

21 c5! f4 22 cxd6 ♗xd6 23 ♖xd6 fxf3 24 hxf3 ♖f7

Little would have been changed by 24 ... ♖f7 25 ♖d2 e5 26 ♗c4!

25 ♖b1 ♖c7 26 ♖d8+ ♗g7 27 ♖c1! ♖c6 28 e5!

The pinning of all Black's pieces is tragi-comical. The only piece that can move is his king, and it soon comes under a mating attack.

28 ... ♗g6
29 ♗d3+ ♖f7

An amusing variation would have been 29 ... ♗h5 30 ♖h8+ ♗g4 31 ♖h3 with the irresistible threat of 32 ♖c4+.

30 ♖h8 ♗e7
31 ♗g6 Resigns

THE EXCHANGE SACRIFICE ON c3

One of Black's counterattacking procedures in the Sicilian Defence is the exchange sacrifice on c3. But whereas in the past ... ♖xc3 used to be accompanied by a fierce attack on the white king, at the present time Black often sacrifices the exchange with a favourable endgame in mind.

Thus in the game *Lyublinsky-Boleslavsky*, the exchange sacrifice and transition into an endgame were a means of realising positional pluses accumulated by Black in the middlegame. Another example is provided by the game *Jansa-Polugayevsky*,

European Team Championship, Skara 1980 (cf. Polugayevsky's *Grandmaster Performance* p.8, Pergamon, 1984).

There is even an opening variation based on the exchange sacrifice, and in this chapter it is represented by the game *Damjanović-Stein*. But in the game *Lukin-Suetin* the exchange sacrifice did not justify itself: to be fair, it should be said that at this point Black's position was already difficult.

Lyublinsky-Boleslavsky 17th USSR Championship, Moscow 1949

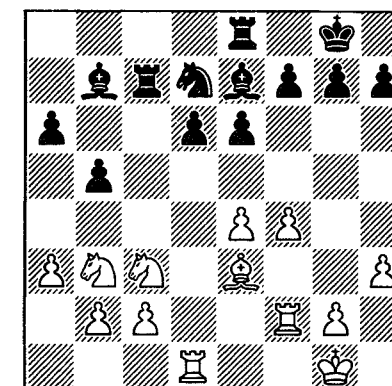
1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 d6 6 ♗g5 e6 7 ♗e2 ♗e7 8 ♖d2 0-0 9 0-0 a6 10 ♖ad1 ♖b6 11 ♗e3 ♖c7 12 f4 ♖a5 13 ♖b3 ♖c4 14 ♗xc4 ♖xc4 15 ♖d4 ♖c7 16 ♖b6 ♖b8 17 h3 ♖d7 18 ♖b4 ♖e8 19 ♖d4 b5 20 ♖f2 ♖c7 21 a3 ♖b8 22 ♖b4 ♗b7 23 ♖a5 ♖bc8 24 ♖xc7 ♖xc7 (74)

Forty years, from the historical viewpoint of chess development, is not such a long time. But how old-fashioned White's handling of the Rauzer Attack in this game appears to the modern expert on opening theory! In those days the Sicilian Defence had already begun to emerge from the openings of second rank, to be transformed in time into the most popular opening of the second half of the 20th century. Not surprisingly, it was not so much the specific theory of variations, but rather the strategic ideas of the opening, which were tested in tournament games in the fifties and sixties of our century.

The slow 7 ♗e2 can be justified only in association with Keres' plan of ♖d3! The combination of 7 ♗e2 and 8 ♖d2 has no inner logic, as demonstrated by the fact that as early as the 9th move Boleslavsky could have gone into a completely level

ending by 9 ... ♖xe4. By choosing 9 ... a6, Black clearly indicated that he was playing for a win.

74



For the modern player a brief glance at the position is sufficient to decide that White stands worse. Black has the advantage of the two bishops and good prospects of active play on the queenside, while the fact that the white f-pawn has advanced two squares creates the preconditions for what is now a standard strategic procedure – the exchange sacrifice on c3.

25 ♖e2 ♖ec8
26 ♖dd2 ♗a8!

All the same White is unable to prevent the exchange sacrifice on c3. Boleslavsky does not hurry to make it, but makes a useful move, and sets the opponent a veiled trap.

27 ♖f2?

A careless move, which leads to defeat, although the game lasts for more than a further fifty moves.

27 ... ♖xc3!
28 bxc3 ♖f6!

White suddenly finds that he is losing two pawns.

29 ♖d3 ♖xe4+ 30 ♗g1 ♖xc3 31 ♖e1

♠e4 32 ♠d4 ♠f6

White's a3 and c2 pawns are isolated and weak, and the loss of one of them is merely a question of time. Therefore Lyublinsky tries immediately to get rid of his a-pawn, hoping to obtain counterplay thanks to the doubling of the black pawns and the opening of the b-file.

33 a4 bxa4 34 ♠a3 ♠c3 35 ♠e2 ♠xe2+ 36 ♠xe2 ♠c4

It becomes clear that White has no counterplay at all, and the game reduces to the prosaic realisation of Black's material advantage. The further play requires little commentary, since Boleslavsky acts methodically and extremely simply.

37 c3 ♠c6 38 ♠a7 ♠e7 39 ♠b2 ♠b5 40 ♠b4 ♠c8! 41 ♠a2 f6! 42 c4 ♠xc4 43 ♠c2 d5 44 ♠xa4 ♠d6

Black proceeds to victory with inexorable consistency.

45 ♠e3 ♠f7 46 ♠f2 ♠e7 47 g4 ♠b8 48 ♠a5 ♠d7 49 f5 e5 50 ♠c5 ♠c7! 51 ♠a1 a5 52 h4 ♠c6 53 ♠e3 h6 54 ♠d2 ♠b5 55 g5 ♠b6+ 56 ♠e3 ♠xe3+ 57 ♠xe3 hxg5 58 hxg5 fxg5

Boleslavsky has exchanged one of his bishops only when it has brought him the win of another pawn. True, White soon regains the g5 pawn, but he is deprived of any counterplay, having exhausted almost all his pawn material.

59 ♠f3 ♠d6 60 ♠g4 e4 61 ♠xg5 ♠e5 62 ♠c3 ♠b2 63 ♠g3 ♠f2 64 ♠xa5 ♠xf5+ 65 ♠g6 ♠f3 66 ♠g4 ♠f4 67 ♠g3 ♠d4 68 ♠aa3 ♠f1 69 ♠xg7

White has almost restored the material balance, but Black's passed pawns cannot be stopped.

69 ... ♠e1 70 ♠g4 ♠c5 71 ♠g5 e3 72

♠e5 ♠d4 73 ♠f6 e2 74 ♠e6 ♠h1 75 ♠ae3 ♠h6+ 76 ♠d7 ♠h4! 77 ♠xe2 ♠xe2 78 ♠xe2 ♠d3 79 ♠e1 d4 White resigns

Damjanović-Stein Tallinn 1969

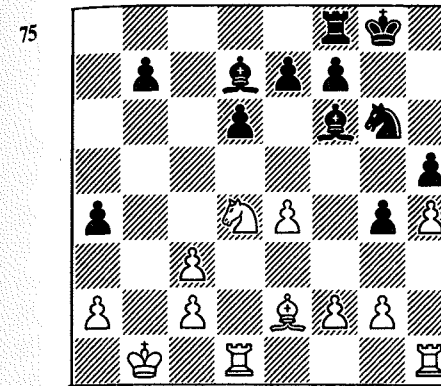
1 e4 c5 2 ♠f3 ♠c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♠xd4 ♠f6 5 ♠c3 d6 6 ♠g5 ♠d7 7 ♠b3 h6 8 ♠h4 ♠c8 9 ♠e2 g5 10 ♠g3 h5! 11 h4 g4 12 ♠f4 ♠e5 13 ♠d4 ♠g6 14 ♠g5 ♠g7 15 0-0 a5 16 ♠b1 0-0 17 ♠e3 a4 18 ♠d4 ♠a5 19 ♠xf6 ♠xc3 20 ♠xc3 ♠xc3 21 bxc3 ♠xf6 (75)

The move 7 ♠b3!? conceals an interesting idea. White prevents the relieving manoeuvre (ascribed to Capablanca) ... ♠xd4 followed by ... ♠c6, and attempts to show that the black bishop at d7 is poorly placed. In the game Spassky-Averbakh (Kislovodsk 1960) after 7 ... e6 8 ♠b5 ♠b8 9 ♠xf6 Black was forced to weaken his kingside. True, it is hard to assert that White's achievements in this game were significant: 9 ... gxf6 10 ♠e2 ♠e7 11 0-0 (11 ♠h5!?) 11 ... a6 12 ♠5d4 0-0.

7 ... h6, as chosen by Stein, could have led to complicated play, favouring White, after 8 ♠xf6! gxf6 9 ♠h5!. The continuation chosen by Damjanović – 8 ♠h4?! – is totally unthematic. By energetic play Stein seized the initiative (10 ... h5!, 15 ... a5!), and after the win of the exchange by 19 ♠xf6, provoked by 18 ... ♠a5!?, he obtained a typical Sicilian endgame with a 'King's Indian' dark-square bishop and excellent play against White's broken queenside.

A few more words about 6 ... ♠d7 against the Rauzer Variation. Since Stein's death (in 1973) few have dared to play it. A strong blow against Black's position was struck by the game Kupreichik-Yudasin (49th USSR Championship, Frunze 1981): 7 ♠d2 ♠c8 8 f4 ♠xd4 9 ♠xd4 ♠a5 10 e5

dxe5 11 fxe5 e6 12 0-0-0 ♠c6 13 ♠b5 ♠xb5 14 exf6 ♠c6 15 h4! ♠g8 16 ♠c4 gxf6 17 ♠he1! fxg5 18 ♠xe6 fxe6, and here 19 ♠f6! would have been very strong.



22 g3 ♠c8
23 ♠b2 ♠e5

Black strengthens his position as though nothing has happened. The position is extremely complicated, and as yet it is difficult to assess it in favour of either side. It is clear that for the exchange Black has good positional compensation.

24 a3 ♠c5 25 ♠he1 ♠f8 26 ♠f1 e6 27 ♠e3 ♠e7 28 ♠a2

White intends to create pressure with his rook along the semi-open b-file. The balance appears to be beginning to swing his way, but Stein finds a latent manoeuvre which secures him counterplay against the c3 pawn.

28 ... ♠g7! 29 ♠b1 ♠c8 30 ♠b5

30 ... ♠h6 was threatened.

30 ... ♠h6
31 ♠e1 ♠d7

The tension increases with every move. One senses that this cannot continue for long, and that soon things must come to a head.

32 ♠ed1 ♠c6 33 ♠b4 ♠f3 34 ♠xd6?!

Damjanović is the first to crack. Stronger was 33 ♠a7!? ♠xc3 34 ♠xc6 bxc6 35 ♠b7+ ♠f6 36 ♠xd6 with a complicated game (suggested by Marić), although we still prefer Black's position.

34 ... ♠xc3 35 ♠c4 ♠xc4 36 ♠xc4?

And this is a blunder, which loses. After 36 ♠xc4 ♠xe4 Black's position is better, but the struggle would still have continued. Now the game concludes within a few moves.

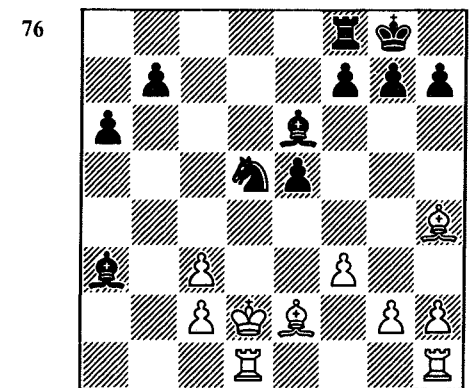
36 ... ♠d2! 37 e5 ♠f3 38 ♠xd2

There is nothing better. In the event of the rook moving, White would have lost a piece after 38 ... ♠xc4 and 39 ... ♠d5.

38 ... ♠xd2 39 ♠d3 ♠e1 White resigns

Lukin-Suetin USSR Olympiad, Moscow 1972

1 e4 c5 2 ♠f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♠xd4 ♠c6 5 ♠c3 a6 6 ♠f4 d6 7 ♠g3 ♠e7 8 ♠d2 ♠xd4 9 ♠xd4 ♠f6 10 ♠e2 e5 11 ♠e3 ♠e6 12 0-0-0 ♠a5 13 a3 ♠c8 14 f3 0-0 15 ♠h4 d5 16 exd5 ♠xc3 17 ♠xc3 ♠xc3 18 bxc3 ♠xa3+ 19 ♠d2 ♠xd5 (76)



Modern theory relates rather 'coolly' to White's 6th move: it is considered that, by playing 6 ♟f4 , White does not achieve anything. However, in practice White is frequently successful. His plan of pressure down the d-file is solid and positionally well-founded. It should be mentioned that 6 ♟f4 is logically associated with queenside castling, and so 8 ♞e2?! ♞c7 9 0-0 ♜f6 , as considered in *ECO*, does indeed not give White anything.

Lukin played simply and consistently: 8 ♞d2! , and it transpired that to defend the d6 pawn was by no means simple. The plan chosen by Suetin of ... e5 and ... d5 proved only half practicable: he was unable to play ... d5 without damage (White carried out at just the right time the important manoeuvre 14 f3! and 15 ♟h4!), and the forcible attempt to seize the initiative by 15 ... d5?! and 16 ... ♞xc3 led to a difficult ending for Black.

20 ♞b1! b5

Now White succeeds in getting rid of his doubled pawns on the queenside. 20 ... ♞c8 was relatively best.

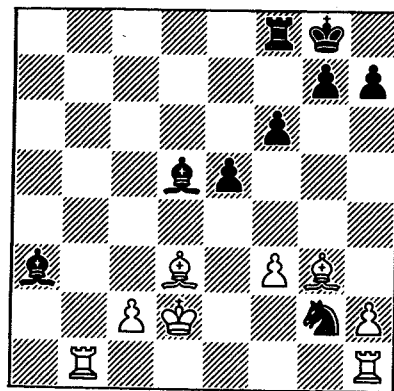
21 c4! ♜f4 22 cxb5 axb5 23 ♞xb5 ♜xg2
24 ♟g3 f6 25 ♟d3 ♟d5

(diagram 77)

One gains the impression that Black has managed to obtain counterplay, but White's next move dispels the illusion.

26 ♞b5! ♞d8

77



It transpires that Black cannot play 26 ... ♞xf3? on account of 27 ♞b3! and 28 ♟c4+ . Now White succeeds in fully coordinating his forces.

27 ♞e2 ♟c6

28 ♞xd5 and 29 ♟c4 was threatened.

28 ♞b6 ♞c8 29 ♞hb1 ♜f7 30 ♞b8 ♞xb8
31 ♞xb8

Exchanges ease White's task.

31 ... h5 32 ♞c8 ♟d7 33 ♞c7 ♞e6 34 ♜f2 ♜f4 35 ♟xf4 exf4 36 ♟f5+ ♜xf5 37 ♞xd7

The play has become greatly simplified. With a passed c-pawn, it is not difficult for White to realise his exchange advantage, and the game concludes within a few moves.

37 ... g5 38 ♞h7 ♟c5+ 39 ♞e2 ♞g6 40 ♞c7 ♟d4 41 c4 ♟e5 42 ♞d7 g4 43 c5 g3 44 ♜f1 h4 45 ♞g2 Black resigns

Ruy Lopez

The Ruy Lopez, one of the most popular openings, is a genuine chess school, which one way or another every class player passes through. In it one can find positions to anyone's taste – from the mind-boggling complications of the Jaenisch Gambit or Marshall Attack and the complicated manoeuvring strategy of the Closed Variation, to the strict endgame set-ups of the Exchange Variation. The battle which develops in the Ruy Lopez is so complicated that many clashes cannot be decided in the middlegame. Therefore the ability to play the 'Spanish endgame' is just as important for a player as a mastery of middlegame techniques.

The complexity of the middlegame problems facing players gives rise to a wide variety of 'Spanish' endings, and so their classification made by the authors is to a certain extent arbitrary.

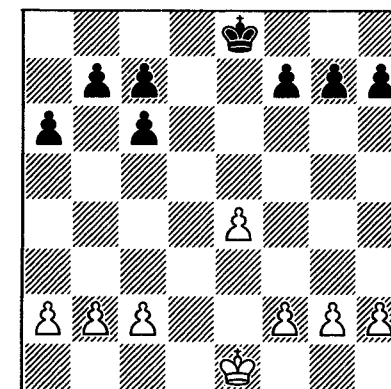
Since the value of a move in the Ruy Lopez is fairly high, and the theory of the Ruy Lopez has been developed perhaps more deeply than in other openings, the situation can often arise where one incorrect move leads to a lost ending. We will endeavour to give such endings at the start of the appropriate section.

EXCHANGE VARIATION

After 1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♟b5 a6 4 ♟xc6 dxc6 a definite pawn formation arises, one which is retained even in the endgame. White has an extra pawn on the

kingside, and as compensation Black has the advantage of the two bishops. In the Exchange Variation White normally aims for further simplification, since the pawn ending reached in the ideal situation

78



is won for him, although not without difficulty. Black's chances in the endgame are associated, firstly, with the possibility of attacking the advanced e4 pawn, which he is able to achieve with the help of his two bishops. Secondly, he has the possibility of advancing his pawn majority on the queenside, which assists the seizure of space and the creation of pawn weaknesses in the opponent's position on that part of the board.

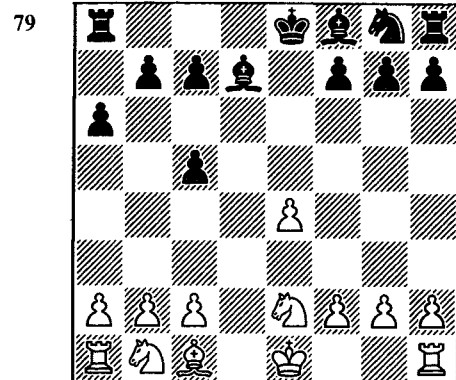
In the Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez the play can by-pass the middlegame and go directly into the endgame, and so, paradoxically, the theory of this endgame is covered in detail in opening guides. The greatest instructional value, in our opinion, is to be gained from a study of the classics,

since in the intervening time the principles of play in this type of position have not undergone any significant change.

Lasker-Steinitz

World Championship, Montreal 1894

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙xc6 dxc6 5 d4 exd4 6 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 7 ♘xd4 c5 8 ♘e2 ♙d7 (79)



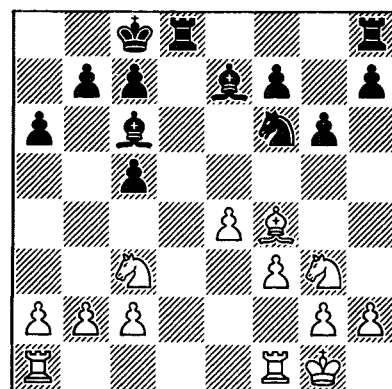
Now 9 b3?, planning to fianchetto the queen's bishop, looks a perfectly logical plan, and in a game from the 1908 Lasker-Tarrasch World Championship Match White gained the advantage after 9 ... ♙c6 10 ♘d2 ♙e7 11 ♙b2 ♙f6 12 ♙xf6. But in the game Verlinsky-Alekhine, St Petersburg 1909, with the positional pawn sacrifice 9 ... c4! 10 bxc4 ♙a4 Black found a concrete way of disclosing the drawbacks to 9 b3, after which the variation disappeared from practice.

9 ♘bc3

This is stronger than 9 b3, but even so Black has no difficulties at all, and even has the prospect of the better game.

9 ... 0-0-0 10 ♙f4 ♙c6 11 0-0 ♘f6 12 f3 ♙e7 13 ♘g3 g6 (80)

80



Both sides have completed the mobilisation of their forces, and it transpires that Black's game deserves preference. White has difficulty in forming an active plan, since his kingside pawns lack mobility. For Black, on the other hand, it is easier to create play on the queenside. Possibly Lasker should have played for equality - 14 ♙g5 with the idea of 15 e5, exploiting the fact that Black cannot reply 14 ... h6 15 ♙h4 g5 because of 16 ♘f5. Instead of this White makes several waiting moves and imperceptibly ends up in a difficult position.

14 ♗fe1? ♘d7!
15 ♘d1

15 ♘d5? would have failed to 15 ... ♙xd5 16 exd5 ♙f6 followed by 17 ... ♘b6, when White loses a pawn.

15 ... ♘b6 16 ♘f1 ♗d7 17 ♙e3 ♗hd8

Black's advantage begins to assume real proportions. The only open file has been seized, all his pieces have formed a united group, and the active sortie 18 ... ♘c4 on the queenside has been prepared, whereas the white pieces lack coordination and are huddled together on the back rank.

18 b3 c4!

It is possible that Alekhine's 9 ... c4 in his game with Verlinsky was inspired by Steinitz's actions in the present game.

19 ♙xb6

Lasker accepts the pawn sacrifice. Passive defence with 19 ♘f2 followed by ♗ed1 was objectively stronger.

19 ... cxb6 20 bxc4 ♙b4! 21 c3 ♙c5+ 22 ♘h1 ♗d3 23 ♗c1 a5?!

For the sacrificed pawn Black has obtained an overwhelming position. White's pieces are pathetically huddled together on the back rank, and Black's two rooks and dark-square bishop control the entire board. One of the principles of the Steinitz Theory states that he who has the advantage is obliged to attack, otherwise his advantage may evaporate. Steinitz's move 23 ... a5 goes against his own theory and allows White something of a respite. Black had available two excellent continuations: 23 ... f5, suggested by Chigorin, and 23 ... ♙a3, recommended by Horowitz. For example: 23 ... f5 24 ♘g3 ♗d2 25 exf5 ♗xa2 26 fxg6 hxg6 with a great advantage, or 23 ... ♙a3 24 ♘f2 (otherwise 24 ... ♙a4) 24 ... ♗d2! 25 ♘xd2 ♗xd2 26 ♘h3 ♙xc1 27 ♗xc1 f6!, and Black is on the verge of winning.

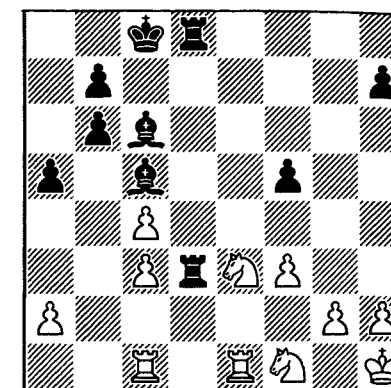
24 ♘de3 f5
25 exf5?

A mistake in return. 25 ♘d5! would have markedly improved things for White.

25 ... gxf5 (81)

The position has opened up still further. Black's light-square bishop has also come into play, and hanging over White is the threat of the rook sacrifice on f3. Bad, for example, is 25 ♘xf5 ♗xf3 26 ♘e7+ ♙xe7 27 gxf3 ♙xf3+ 28 ♘g1 ♙c5+ 29 ♘e3 ♗d2 (Steinitz).

81



26 h3 ♗g8
27 ♘d5

Here too 27 ♘xf5 would have failed to 27 ... ♗xf3.

27 ... ♙xd5?!

Black's play is again too abstract. As shown by Chigorin, 27 ... b5! was much more energetic, with the possible variation 28 ♘e7+ ♙xe7 29 ♗xe7 ♗xf3! 30 gxf3 ♙xf3+ 31 ♘h2 ♗g2+ 32 ♘h1 ♗xa2+ 33 ♘g1 ♗g2+ 34 ♘h1 ♗c2+ 35 ♘g1 ♗xc1, and Black wins.

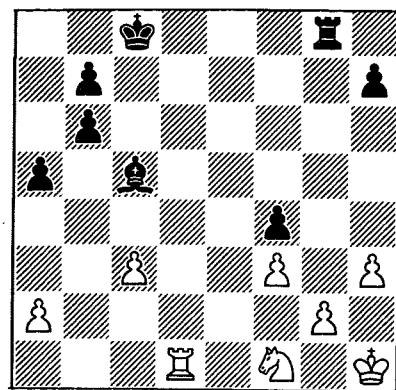
28 cxd5 ♗xd5
29 ♗cd1?

Lasker's final and decisive mistake in this game. White should have urgently prevented the blockade of his kingside by the opponent, i.e. he should not have allowed ... f4. With this aim, 29 f4 followed by 30 g3 would have been suitable, as would Euwe's suggestion of 29 g4, with the possible continuation 29 ... ♗d3 30 ♘g2 h5 31 ♗ed1 ♗xd1 32 ♗xd1 fxg4 33 fxg4 hxg4 34 h4.

29 ... ♗xd1
30 ♗xd1 f4! (82)

White's kingside is paralysed, and his king and knight are shut out of the game.

82



For example, 31 ♖d2 fails to 31 ... ♜d8, while on 31 ♖h2 Black has 31 ... ♜e8 followed by the invasion of the rook, which is good enough to win. 31 ♜e1 also does not help in view of 31 ... ♜d8, when the black rook invades White's position along the d-file.

31 ♖h2 ♜e8 32 a4 ♖c7 33 h4 ♖c6 34 c4 ♜b4!

By the threat of 34 ... b5 Black forced White's last move. Now the exchange of rooks is prepared, and Black will have an 'extra' king in the minor piece ending.

35 ♖h3 ♜e1 36 ♜xe1 ♜xe1 37 ♖g4 ♖c5 38 ♖xf4 ♖xc4 39 ♖e4

White would have lost immediately after 39 h5 b5 40 axb5 a4 41 ♖e3+ ♖d3.

39 ... ♜xh4 40 g3 ♜d8 41 ♖e3+ ♖b4 42 ♖d3 ♖xa4

White could have resigned at this point. The last few moves were made through inertia.

43 ♖c2 ♖b5 44 f4 ♖c5 45 f5 ♖d6 46 g4 b5 47 ♖d1 ♖e5 48 ♖c3 b4 49 ♖a4 ♖d4 50 ♖b2 b5 51 ♖b3 ♜e7 52 g5 a4+ 53 ♖xa4 bxa4+ 54 ♖xa4 ♖e5 55 ♖b3 ♖xf5 White resigns

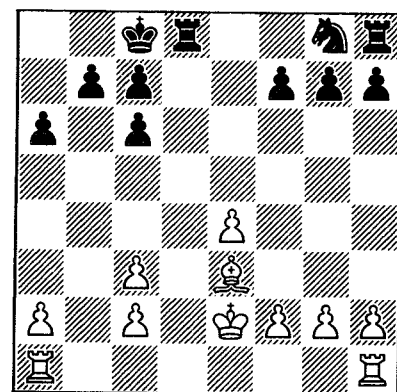
Lasker-Janowski

World Championship, Paris 1909

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♜b5 a6 4 ♜xc6 dxc6 5 d4 exd4 6 ♖xd4 ♜g4 7 ♖c3 ♖xd4 8 ♖xd4 0-0-0 9 ♜e3 ♜b4 10 ♖e2 ♜xe2 11 ♜xe2 ♜xc3 12 bxc3 (83)

In the opening, instead of the approved continuation 6 ... ♖xd4 and 7 ... c5, Black preferred the less common plan of 6 ... ♜g4. Janowski achieved a quite reasonable position, but his decision to exchange his bishops for the enemy knights looks debatable. Instead of 10 ... ♜xe2, 10 ... ♖f6 was preferable.

83



In the diagram position both sides have defects in their pawn formations. The plans for the two sides are clear enough: White must try to exploit his pawn majority on the kingside, and Black his on the queenside. In his time Nimzowitsch studied the strengths and weaknesses of doubled pawns: "The weak aspects of doubled pawns are no more in evidence than the limp of ... a sitting person. It is only in movement that the defects are seen". Nimzowitsch saw the strength of doubled pawns as being in their great resilience, greater than for an undeformed pawn chain: "Why this should be is difficult to explain; perhaps some kind of higher

justice operates here, whereby dynamic weakness is compensated by static strength ...", wrote Nimzowitsch in his *My System*.

On the queenside the doubled pawns must come into conflict, and on the basis of Nimzowitsch's conclusions the situation here is very much in White's favour. Therefore a general assessment of the position can be made comparatively easily: the advantage is with White.

12 ... ♖f6 13 f3 ♖d7 14 ♜ad1 ♖e5 15 ♜d4!

Lasker prevents the enemy knight from going to c4.

15 ... b6?

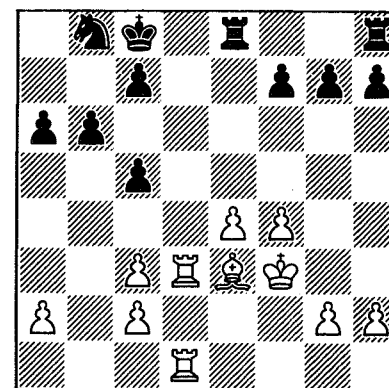
Too slow. Janowski is aiming by 16 ... c5 to drive the white rook off the fourth rank and to secure c4 for his knight, but he fails to achieve this. 15 ... b5! was correct.

16 f4! ♖d7?!

16 ... ♜xd4 17 cxd4 ♖c4 was perhaps preferable, occupying an active position with the knight at the cost of undoubling the white pawns.

17 ♜hd1 c5 18 ♜4d3 ♖b8 19 ♖f3 ♜de8! (84)

84



Black prepares to counter the advance of White's kingside pawns, and concedes the d-file, which for the moment Lasker is not able to exploit.

20 f5!

This move, which subsequently became Lasker's favourite stratagem in similar positions, was received rather severely by his contemporaries. In his *Die Moderne Schachpartie* Tarrasch wrote: "A very unexpected and hardly correct continuation. White concedes the e5 square to his opponent and makes his e-pawn backward. What compensation he gains for this positional sacrifice – and this move cannot be regarded otherwise – it is hard to say".

20 ... f6

Tarrasch attaches a question mark to Black's last move and makes the following comment: "With this move Black merely strengthens the opponent's attack. In general one should not move pawns (without necessity or advantage) which are in a minority, since this simply makes it easier for the opponent to create a passed pawn. By continuing ... ♖c6, ... ♜e7 and ... ♜he8, Black could have achieved a quite satisfactory game, for example: 20 ... ♖c6 21 ♜f4 ♜e7 22 g4 ♜he8 23 ♜e3 ♖e5+, and White would never be able to advance his e-pawn, which, on the contrary, would be a constant target for attack".

One can perhaps agree with Tarrasch, that 20 ... ♖c6 would have offered better chances of a successful defence than 20 ... f6, but in the variation given by the author of *Die Moderne Schachpartie* things are by no means so wonderful for Black, and, moreover, 23 ♜e1 looks stronger than 23 ♜e3. After 24 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 25 ♖f4 the rook ending is unpleasant for Black, and only a thorough analysis can reveal

how great his drawing chances are.

21 g4! ♖e7 22 ♙f4 ♜he8 23 ♖e3 ♛c6 24 g5 ♛a5?

Black consistently carries out his plan, transfers his knight to c4, and ... loses the game. The knight is excellently placed at c4, but it is a long way from the decisive field of battle which has developed on the kingside. Better chances of saving the game were offered by the transition into a rook ending by 24 ... ♛e5+, or by 24 ... fxg5 followed by 25 ... ♛e5+.

25 h4 ♛c4 26 ♖e2 ♜f7 27 ♜g1 ♛d7 28 h5

The advance of White's kingside pawns is aimed at creating two passed pawns in the centre after h5-h6.

28 ... ♛d6 29 h6 fxg5 30 ♜xg5 g6

Now White wins a pawn, but 30 ... gxh6 31 ♜h5 would have been equally bad for Black.

31 fxg6 hxg6 32 ♜xg6 ♜ef8 33 ♜g7!

Lasker proceeds to victory in the quickest way.

33 ... ♜xg7 34 hxg7 ♜g8 35 ♜g2 ♛e8 36 ♙e5 ♙e6 37 ♙f4 ♙f7 38 ♙f5 Black resigns

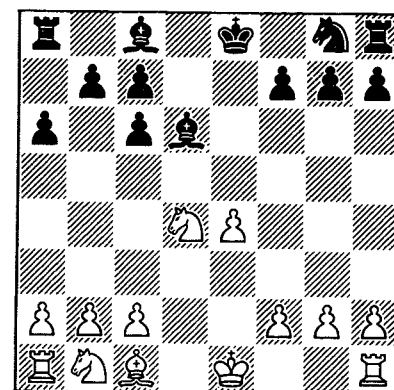
Lasker-Capablanca
St Petersburg 1914

1 e4 e5 2 ♛f3 ♛c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙xc6 dxc6 5 d4 exd4 6 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 7 ♛xd4 ♙d6 (85)

In the Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez Black usually chooses the plan involving queenside castling. Here Capablanca plans to take his king over to the kingside, so that it can take part in the defence (it is on this part of the board that

White is normally active).

85



8 ♛c3 ♛e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 f4

Lasker immediately sets about advancing his pawn mass. It is curious to hear Capablanca's opinion of this: "This move I considered weak at the time, and I do still. It leaves the e-pawn weak, unless it advances to e5, and it also makes it possible for Black to pin the knight by ... ♙c5". It is difficult to say which of the two great players was right. Most probably both were. The move 10 f4 has its pluses and minuses. It should be mentioned that the immediate 10 ... ♙c5 would have seriously weakened the c7 pawn (for example, 11 ♙e3 ♛d8 12 ♛ce2, planning c2-c3, f4-f5 and ♙f4), and with his 11th move Lasker altogether rules out ... ♙c5.

10 ... ♖e8 11 ♛b3 f6 12 f5!?

Lasker introduces a plan which was new at that time. White voluntarily makes a weakness out of his extra pawn on the kingside. In return he restricts the opponent's minor pieces, and obtains a spatial advantage and a knight outpost at e6.

12 ... ♙b6
13 ♙f4 ♙b7?!

This move deserves perhaps to be criticised. Black slightly improves his

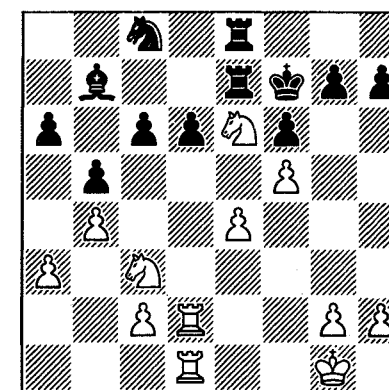
queenside pawn formation, but allows an enemy knight in at e6. As pointed out by Capablanca, it would have been better to play 13 ... ♙xf4 14 ♜xf4 c5 15 ♛d1 ♙b7 16 ♜f2 ♜ac8!. Here is the Cuban player's comment on the position after Black's 16th move: "Then White will have great difficulty in drawing the game, since there is no good way to stop Black from playing ... ♛c6 followed by ... ♛e5, threatening ... ♛c4. And should White attempt to meet this manoeuvre by withdrawing the knight at b3, then the black knight can go to d4, and the white pawn at e4 will be the object of the attack". This is perhaps too severe a verdict on White's position. Later it was established that, by playing 17 ♛c1 ♛c6 18 ♛le2, with the idea of meeting 18 ... ♛e5 with 19 ♛f4, White would have retained quite good prospects.

14 ♙xd6 cxd6 15 ♛d4 ♜ad8 16 ♛e6 ♛d7 17 ♜ad1 ♛c8

On 17 ... c5 White could simply have continued 18 g4, when it is not easy for Black to free himself.

18 ♜f2 b5 19 ♜fd2 ♛de7 20 b4 ♙f7 21 a3 (86)

86



21 ... ♙a8?!

"Once more changing my plan and this

time without any good reason. Had I now played 21 ... ♜xe6 22 fxe6+ ♜xe6, as I intended to do when I went back with the knight to c8, I doubt very much if White would have been able to win the game. At least it would have been extremely difficult" (Capablanca).

22 ♙f2 ♜a7 23 g4 h6 24 ♛d3 a5 25 h4 axb4 26 axb4 ♜ae7?!

Black is inconsistent. After the opening of the a-file, the exchange sacrifice no longer has any point. It would have been better to keep the rook on the a-file, although Black's position was already fairly difficult.

27 ♙f3

The immediate transfer of the rook to g3 came into consideration.

27 ... ♜g8
28 ♙f4 g6

It would have been better to play 28 ... g5+ immediately, although it is doubtful whether the game could have been saved.

29 ♜g3!

White takes his rooks across to the kingside and confidently proceeds to victory.

29 ... g5+

Otherwise White himself would have advanced his g-pawn.

30 ♙f3 ♛b6 31 hxg5 hxg5 32 ♜h3!

Of course, Lasker is not tempted by the d6 pawn. But after the rook move this capture is threatened, since on 33 ... ♛c4 there follows 34 ♜h7+.

32 ... ♛d7
33 ♙g3!

The last precise move. White moves his

king out of range of the enemy bishop, and the e4-e5 breakthrough is now on the agenda.

33 ... ♖e8 34 ♖dh1 ♖b7 35 e5!

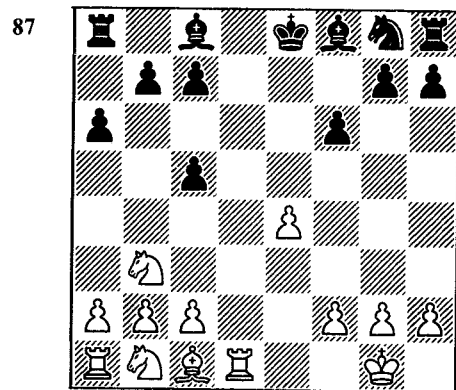
The decisive move, forcing a rapid conclusion.

35 ... dxe5 36 ♖e4 ♖d5 37 ♖6c5 ♖c8 38 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 39 ♖h7 ♖f8 40 ♖a1 ♖d8 41 ♖a8+ ♖c8 42 ♖c5 Black resigns

Fischer-Portisch

Havana Olympiad 1966

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♖b5 a6 4 ♖xc6 dxc6 5 0-0 f6 6 d4 exd4 7 ♖xd4 c5 8 ♖b3 ♖xd1 9 ♖xd1 (87)



87

Nowadays this position is the prelude to a whole series of lengthy variations, beginning with 9 ... ♖d6, making it more of an opening position than an endgame one. At the time when the present game was played, it was thought that Black had easy equality with

9 ... ♖d6

And that is what the Hungarian grandmaster played. But now came the stunning

10 ♖a5!!

after which the variation with 9 ... ♖d6 was shelved. The subsequent play is highly interesting.

10 ... b5

All the same Black cannot get by without this move.

11 c4!

The c5 pawn, before being attacked, must first be fixed.

11 ... ♖e7

12 ♖e3 f5!

There is no other way of gaining any counterplay.

13 ♖c3 f4

14 e5!

Fischer plays strongly and energetically.

14 ... ♖xe5

14 ... fxe3 15 exd6 exf2+ 16 ♖xf2 0-0+ 17 ♖g1 cxd6 18 ♖xd6 would have been even worse.

15 ♖xc5 ♖xc3 16 bxc3 ♖g6 17 ♖c6 ♖e6

One gains the impression that Black has relatively safely escaped from his difficulties, but Fischer's next two moves show that the opposite is true.

18 cxb5 axb5

19 ♖a7!

Nevertheless Portisch cannot avoid loss of material.

19 ... ♖b8 20 ♖db1 ♖f7 21 ♖xb5 ♖hd8

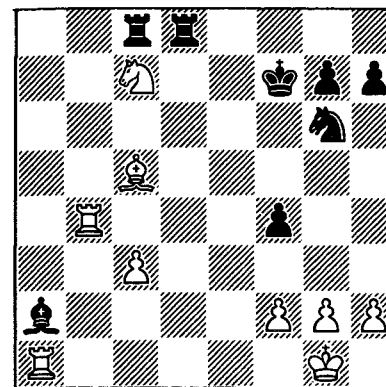
White has won a pawn, but Black has managed to complete his development and gain some activity. A lively tactical skirmish now commences.

22 ♖b4! ♖xa2

23 ♖xc7 ♖bc8 (88)

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♖b5 a6 4 ♖xc6 dxc6 5 0-0 ♖d6 6 d4 exd4 7 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 8 ♖xd4 ♖d7 (89)

88



24 h4!

The exchange of blows continues.

24 ... ♖d2

25 ♖b6 f3?

The decisive mistake. 25 ... h5 was the only way to continue the struggle.

26 ♖e3!

Fischer immediately exploits the changed situation. Such backwards moves by pieces are very difficult to take into account in one's calculations, and it is quite probable that the bishop move was overlooked by Portisch.

26 ... ♖e2 27 ♖b5 ♖a8 28 h5 ♖e5 29 ♖f4+ ♖e7 30 ♖d1

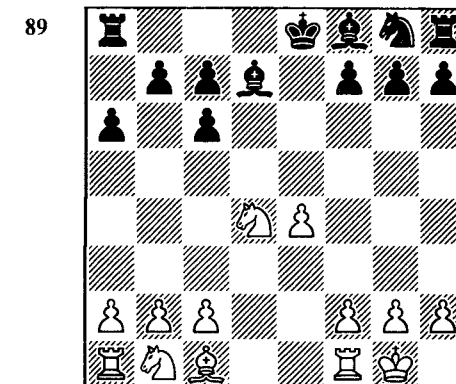
Weaving a mating net around the black king.

30 ... ♖c8 31 ♖e4 ♖f6 32 ♖d6+ ♖f5 33 ♖f4+ ♖g5 34 ♖xf3+

Black resigns. A possible finish was 34 ... ♖h5 35 ♖f5+ ♖h4 36 ♖d4+ ♖g4 37 g3+ ♖h3 38 ♖h5 mate.

Kagan-Keres

Petropolis Interzonal 1973



89

Black's fifth move is dictated by a desire to avoid the simplification after 5 ... f6 6 d4 ♖g4 or 6 ... exd4 7 ♖xd4 c5. However, all the same White takes play into an ending where, compared with the Lasker-Steinitz game, he is a tempo ahead.

9 ♖e3

The play develops quietly, Black completes his development, and the extra tempo does not bring White any particular advantage. In the event of 9 b3 Black would no longer have sacrificed a pawn by 9 ... c5 and 10 ... c4 (as in the aforementioned Verlinsky-Alekhine game), but could have replied 9 ... g6!? 10 ♖b2 ♖g7, with fair prospects.

9 ... 0-0-0 10 ♖d2 ♖e7 11 ♖2f3 f6 12 h3 c5 13 ♖e2 ♖c6 14 ♖ad1 ♖e8!?

Black tries to breathe life into the position and to avoid the simplification after 14 ... ♖d6 15 ♖f4.

15 ♖c3 ♖d6 16 ♖fe1 ♖e6 17 a3 b6 18 ♖d5?!

This knight move into the centre, with the primitive threat of 19 ♖xb6+, allows

Keres to change the character of the play and to make it more interesting by the exchange of his light-square bishop.

18 ... ♗xd5 19 exd5 ♖e7 20 c3?!

A timid move, weakening a number of squares in White's position on the queen-side. If White wanted to advance his c-pawn, it would have been better to move it two squares, defending the d5 pawn.

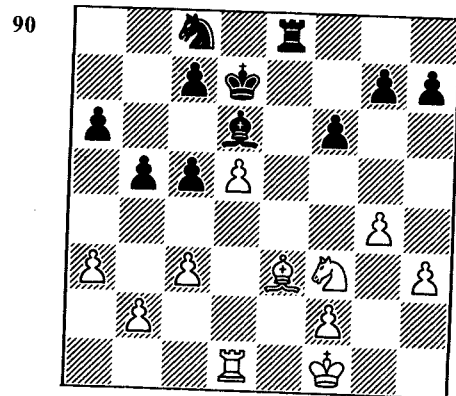
20 ... ♖f5 21 ♗c1 ♖d7 22 ♖f1 ♗xe1+ 23 ♗xe1 b5!

The drawbacks to White's 20th move begin to tell. The d5 pawn gradually becomes isolated.

24 ♗d1 ♗e8

In the opinion of Keres, 24 ... h5 or 24 ... c4 was more energetic.

25 g4 ♖e7
26 ♗e3 ♖c8 (90)



27 b4

The uncertainty of the situation and Black's mounting activity begin to frighten White, and he decides to force matters.

27 ... c4
28 a4

A pawn sacrifice to take the play along

concrete lines.

28 ... bxa4
29 ♖d2?

"Perhaps the decisive mistake. 29 ♗a1 ♖e7 30 ♗xa4 ♖xd5 31 ♗d4! was essential, after which it is not easy for Black to demonstrate his advantage. 31 ... ♗e5 is very strongly met by 32 ♗a5, while in the event of 31 ... ♗a8 32 ♖d2 ♖b6 White is by no means obliged to go in for the variation 33 ♗xb6 cxb6 34 b5 a5 35 ♖xc4 ♗c5 or 34 ♖xc4 b5, but can calmly continue 33 ♗a2. In this case after 33 ... ♖c6 34 ♗xb6 cxb6 35 ♖xc4 ♗c7 the ending favours Black, but it is not clear whether he has any winning chances" (Keres).

29 ... ♖b6 30 ♗xb6 cxb6 31 ♖xc4 b5 32 ♖a5

White could hardly contemplate going into the rook ending by 32 ♖xd6.

32 ... ♗e4 33 ♗d3 ♗e5 34 f3?!

"In view of the mutual time trouble, White should have tried his last chance - 34 d6! This pawn cannot be taken, of course (34 ... ♗xd6 35 ♖b7 ♗e6 36 ♖c5+), and after 34 ... a3 35 ♖b7 the unpleasant check at c5 is again threatened, e.g. 35 ... a2 36 ♖c5+ ♖c6 37 ♗d1.

Nevertheless, Black still had a way to win: 34 ... a3 35 ♖b7 ♗c4! 36 ♖c5+ ♗xc5 37 bxc5 a2 38 c6+ ♖d8! (but not 38 ... ♖xc6 39 ♗d1) 39 ♗d1 ♗xc3 40 d7 ♗d4! 41 c7+ (or 41 ♗c1 ♖c7!) 41 ... ♖xc7 42 d8=♖+ ♖xd8 43 ♗xd4+ ♖c7 44 ♗d1 b4" (Keres).

34 ... ♗f4
35 ♖e2

Now the black rook has moved away from a possible attack by the white knight from c5, and 35 d6 loses its point.

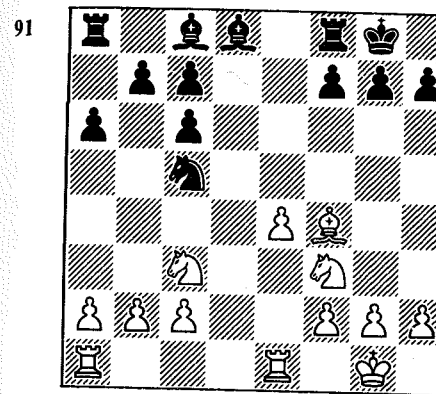
35 ... a3 36 ♖d2 a2 37 ♖b3 a5! 38 d6 axb4 39 ♖c5+ ♖c6 White lost on time.

Positions with an Exchange Variation formation, but with a white pawn at e5, occupy a special place. Such a pawn formation can arise in the so-called 'Rio de Janeiro Variation' or in lines of the variation 1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♗b5 a6 4 ♗a4 ♖f6 5 d4.

Bondarevsky-Smyslov

Moscow Championship 1946

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♗b5 a6 4 ♗a4 ♖f6 5 0-0 ♗e7 6 ♗xc6 dxc6 7 ♗e1 ♖d7 8 d4 exd4 9 ♖xd4 0-0 10 ♗f4 ♖c5 11 ♖xd8 ♗xd8 12 ♖c3 (91)



Nowadays positions of this type rarely occur. If White does exchange on c6 on the sixth move, he prefers to keep the position closed, by playing 7 d3, and after suitable preparation to attack the e5 pawn with f2-f4. In the resulting situation Black has no problems at all, and Smyslov emphasises this with an excellent blow at the centre, which has now become a standard stratagem.

12 ... f5!
13 e5?

A positional mistake, after which it is only White who will have problems. As shown by Smyslov, he should have aimed for simplification by playing 13 ♗g5, when the possible variation 13 ... ♗xg5 14 ♖xg5 h6 15 b4 ♖xe4 16 ♖gxe4 fxe4 17 ♖xe4 ♗f5 leads to approximate equality.

13 ... ♖e6
14 ♗d2 g5!

The key piece in Black's position is his knight at e6. White must aim to exchange it, which can be done only by playing one of his own knights to f4 or d4. Smyslov forestalls such a manoeuvre by placing his pawns at g5 and c5.

15 ♖e2 c5!
16 ♗c3 b5!

White already has a difficult, and perhaps even strategically lost position. Its main drawback is the lack of a sensible plan. Following the recognised procedure, Black sets about realising his advantage of the two bishops: the way for the bishops must be paved by the pawns. Smyslov mounts a pawn offensive over the entire board, cramping the opponent's position from the flanks; he threatens 17 ... g4 18 ♖d2 b4, winning a piece. All Bondarevsky can do is passively parry Black's threats and hope for a mistake by his opponent.

17 b3 ♗b7 18 ♖g3 g4 19 ♖d2 ♗e7 20 ♖h5 ♖f7!

A typical Smyslov move. All the black pieces are coordinating with one another and working very hard. The king must not be an exception.

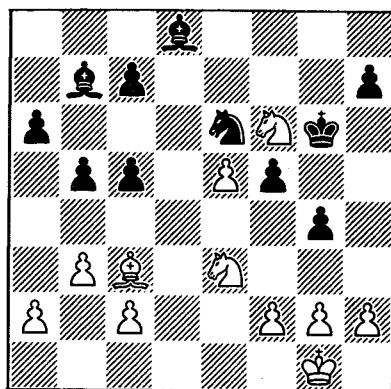
21 ♖f1 ♖g6 22 ♖f6 ♗ad8 23 ♗ad1 ♗xd1 24 ♗xd1 ♗d8 25 ♗xd8 ♗xd8

Black has happily exchanged the rooks. With the simplification of the position,

White's defence has become more difficult. 26 ... ♖f4 is threatened, with an attack on the g2 pawn and the e2 square. Black can also play ... ♖d4, winning a pawn. Bondarevsky tries to parry both threats, but goes from the frying pan into the fire.

26 ♖e3 (92)

92



26 ... ♔f4!

An unexpected blow. It turns out that a piece is lost after both 27 ♖exg4 h5 and 27 ♖ed5 c6. All that remains is the retreat to the back rank.

27 ♖d1 ♔xf6!
28 exf6 ♔e4

The first material gain. The game is decided.

29 ♖b2 ♔b4!

There is no reason to hurry. 30 c3? fails to 30 ... ♔c2, winning a piece.

30 f3 gxf3 31 ♖f2 ♔xc2 32 gxf3 ♔b1 33 ♖e4 ♔xa2 34 ♖d2 a5

The bishop can be freed at any moment by ... a4.

35 ♖f2 ♖d4 36 ♔xd4 cxd4 37 ♖e2 ♖xf6

Black is now three pawns up! The game concluded:

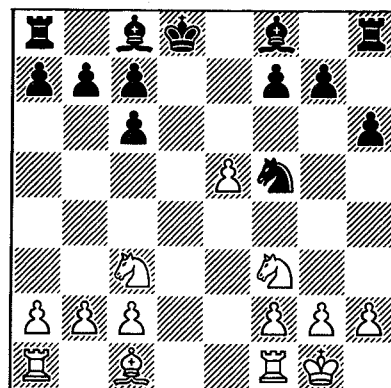
38 ♔d3 ♔e5 39 ♔c2 a4 40 bxa4 c5 41 a5 c4 42 a6 d3+ White resigns

Psakhis-Romanishin

Zonal Tournament, Yerevan 1982

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♔b5 ♖f6 4 0-0 ♖xe4 5 d4 ♖d6 6 ♔xc6 dxc6 7 dxe5 ♖f5 8 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 9 ♖c3 h6 (93)

93



In this, the so-called 'Brazilian' Variation of the Ruy Lopez, the diagram position has frequently occurred. White usually used to continue 10 b3, but Black maintained approximate equality after 10 ... ♔e6. Psakhis employs a new move

10 ♖e2!

and gains the advantage. As yet it is too early to say that the variation is completely incorrect for Black.

10 ... g5

One of the links in Black's plan in such positions.

11 h3 ♔g7
12 ♔d1+!

An important tactical nuance. Now 12 ... ♔e8 is unfavourable for Black in view of 13 g4 ♖e7 14 ♖g3 ♖g6 15 ♖h5 ♔xe5

16 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 17 ♔e1 f6 18 f4!, with a great advantage for White.

12 ... ♔d7 13 g4 ♖e7 14 ♖g3 ♖g6 15 ♖h5 ♖xe5

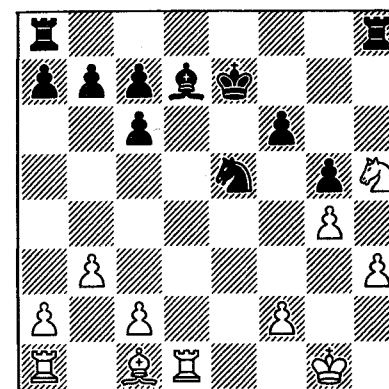
15 ... ♔xe5 16 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 17 f4! is bad for Black.

16 ♖xg5! ♔xg5
17 ♖xg7 f6

Again forced. 17 ... ♔xh3 is bad in view of 18 ♔xg5+ ♔c8 19 ♔f6 ♖xg4 20 ♔xd7! ♖xf6 (20 ... ♖xd7? 21 ♔d1+ ♔c8 22 ♔d8 mate) 21 ♔xf7 ♖h7 22 ♔d1.

18 ♖h5 ♔e7
19 ♔b3! (94)

94



Black's position is difficult. White is threatening 20 ♔b2 with mounting pressure in the centre. If 19 ... ♔e8, then 20 f4! is unpleasant, e.g. 20 ... gxf4 21 ♖xf4 ♖g6 22 ♔a3+ ♖f7 23 ♖h5, although this was probably Black's best chance. Passive defence of this type is not to Romanishin's taste, and he decides to sacrifice the exchange in the hope of counterplay.

19 ... ♔xh5 20 gxf4 ♔xh3 21 f4! gxf4 22 ♔xf4

The bishop at f4 occupies an ideal position, controlling the squares e5 and

c7, and also supporting the advance of the passed h-pawn.

22 ... ♔h8
23 h6 ♔e6

It is sufficient for White to exchange rooks or bishop for knight, and the position will be reduced to an easy technical win. But here the exchange on e5 is unfavourable for Psakhis, since he would lose the h6 pawn.

24 ♖f2! ♖g4+
25 ♖e2 ♔d5

25 ... ♖xh6 26 ♔h1 ♖f7 27 ♔xh8 ♖xh8 28 ♔xc7 is hopeless for Black.

26 c4 ♔e4 27 ♔d4 ♔f5 28 ♔f1 ♖f7 29 ♖d2!

White has no reason to hurry. He calmly strengthens his position.

29 ... ♔e6
30 ♖c3 ♖xh6

Romanishin was evidently tired of watching White's manoeuvres to improve his position.

31 ♔h1 ♖g6 32 ♔xh6+ ♔xh6 33 ♔xh6 ♖xh6 34 ♔d8

34 ♔e4 and 35 ♔e7 was more accurate.

34 ... ♔b5
35 ♔e8 Resigns

OPEN VARIATION

This variation, one of the most problematic in the Ruy Lopez, provoked heated arguments as soon as it was introduced into tournament play.

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♔b5 a6 4 ♔a4 ♖f6 5 0-0 ♖xe4.

"I consider this move to be the best, and a perfectly sufficient defence to the Ruy Lopez" (Tarrasch).

"The text move leads to a defence, which I like least of all – so little, that I cannot recall a single example from my own experience where I played this" (Capablanca).

Which of these two great players from the past was closer to the truth? Probably they were both right in their own way. Tarrasch had in mind the specifically tactical nature of the variation, while Capablanca, who preferred clear positions, assessed the variation mainly from the point of view of the endgame. Experience has shown that White's chances in endings arising from this variation lie in forcing an exchange on d4, after which he can exploit his kingside pawn majority and the opponent's weaknesses on the c-file. A textbook example of the resulting heavy piece ending is provided by a game in which Capablanca had White against a consulting team headed by Salwe (Lodz 1913):

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♘f6 5 0-0 ♘xe4 6 d4 b5 7 ♙b3 d5 8 dxe5 ♙e6 9 c3 ♙e7 10 ♘bd2 ♘c5 11 ♙c2 ♙g4 12 h3 ♙h5 13 ♙e1 ♙g6 14 ♘d4 ♘xd4 15 cxd4 ♘e6 16 ♘b3 ♙g5 17 g3 ♙xc1 18 ♙xc1 0-0 19 f4 ♙xc2 20 ♙xc2 g6 21 ♘c5 ♙e8 22 ♙d3 ♘xc5 23 ♙xc5 ♙d7 24 g4 c6 25 ♙ec1 ♙ac8 26 ♙c3 ♙e6 27 ♘h2 ♘h8 28 ♙a3 ♙b7 29 ♙g3 f5 30 ♙f3 ♙d7 31 ♘g3 ♙f8 32 ♙a3 ♙a8 33 ♙c3 ♙c8 34 ♙c2 ♘g8 35 ♘f3 f×g4+ 36 h×g4 ♙f7 37 ♘e3 ♙f8 38 ♙f1 ♙d7 39 ♙g2 ♙e7 40 ♙fc1 ♙ef6 41 ♙f1 ♘h8 42 ♙c2 ♙e8 43 ♙h2 ♙e7 44 ♙f3 ♙e6 45 ♘f2 a5 46 f5 g×f5 47 g×f5 ♙g5 48 ♙f4 ♙xf5 49 ♙xf5 ♙d2+ 50 ♘f1 ♙g6 51 ♙f8+ ♙g8 52 ♙f6+ ♙g7 53 ♙g3 1-0

But if Black can advance ... d4 in the middlegame and seize the d-file, his queenside pawn majority will give him good

prospects in the endgame. Apart from the plan of advancing ... d4, Black also has other possibilities. In particular, the reader should note the plan of exchanging the light-square bishops followed by the seizure of the light squares. Another good idea for Black is to play his knight to e6, from where it defends the weak c5 square and exerts pressure on d4.

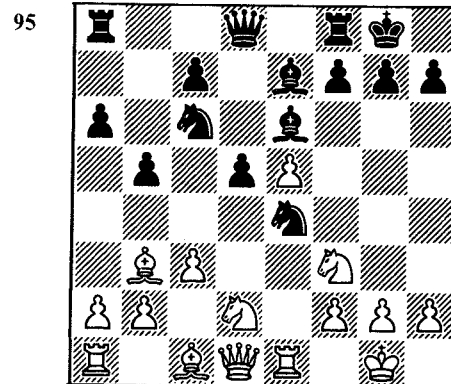
Nowadays there is no question of the Open Variation being incorrect. It is employed in events of all standards, including matches for the World Championship.

Lasker-Tarrasch St Petersburg 1914

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♘f6 5 0-0 ♘xe4 6 d4 b5 7 ♙b3 d5 8 dxe5 ♙e6 9 c3 ♙e7

Tarrasch used to prefer this to 9 ... ♙c5, since he thought that c5 should be retained for the withdrawal of the knight from e4.

10 ♘bd2 0-0
11 ♙e1 (95)



It is well known that Lasker did not attach much importance to opening subtle-

ties, but in this particular game he plays 'according to theory' – the theory of his time, of course. The simple-minded move 11 ♙e1 has the correct idea: to defend the e5 pawn, then play ♘d4, and either force the favourable exchange ... ♘xd4, cxd4, or make the winning advance f2-f4-f5! However, this plan is unrealisable. Black is better developed, White's queenside pieces being still on their initial squares, and it is not surprising that the classical advocate of the Open Variation immediately makes a breakthrough in the centre and forces the World Champion onto the defensive.

At the present time it has been well established that 11 ♙c2! is White's only try for an advantage. On Tarrasch's recommendation of 11 ... f5 there can follow, for example, 12 ♘b3 ♙d7 13 ♘fd4! ♘xd4 14 ♘xd4 c5 15 ♘xe6 ♙xe6 16 f3 ♘g5 17 a4 ♙ad8 18 axb5 axb5 19 ♙e2! c4 20 ♙e3, with the better game for White (Belyavsky-Tarjan, Bogotá 1979).

11 ... ♘c5
12 ♙c2 d4!

Tarrasch improves Black's play in comparison with the game Alekhine-Nimzowitsch, played in the same tournament. After 12 ... ♙g4?! 12 ♘b3! ♘e4 14 ♙f4 f5 15 exf6 ♘xf6 16 ♙d3 Alekhine gained an obvious advantage.

13 cxd4 ♘xd4
14 ♘xd4 ♙xd4

We think that the following dialogue, which took place a little later, in the final of the St Petersburg tournament, gives quite a good impression of the opening:

Tarrasch: "Why did you choose the Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez against Capablanca? You should have played sharply, for a win."

Lasker: "I had no choice. Your defence,

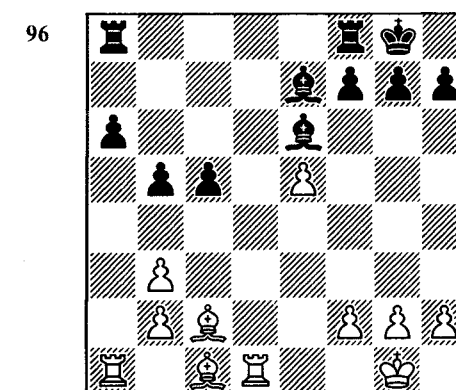
which you employed against Bernstein and against me, I have absolutely no way of countering."

15 ♘b3

Other continuations also leave Black with the advantage:

15 ♙e2 ♙ad8 16 ♘f3 ♙c4 17 ♙xc4 ♙xc4 18 ♙e3 ♘e6 19 ♙e4 ♙d5 20 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 (Johner-Euwe, Zurich 1934), or 15 ♙h5 ♘d3 16 ♘e4 g6 (Solmanis-Keres, Riga 1944).

15 ... ♘xb3 16 axb3 ♙xd1 17 ♙xd1 c5 (96)



White's doubled pawns on the queenside present a good target for the enemy bishops. Black has the better chances.

18 ♙d2

Perhaps White should have preferred 18 ♙e3, preventing further simplification of the position after 18 ... ♙fd8.

18 ... ♙fd8 19 ♙a5 ♙xd1+ 20 ♙xd1 f6! 21 ♙c3 f×e5 22 ♙xe5 ♙d8 23 ♙xd8+ ♙xd8

Black's positional advantage becomes ever more apparent.

24 f4 ♘f7 25 ♘f2 ♙f6 26 ♙d6?!

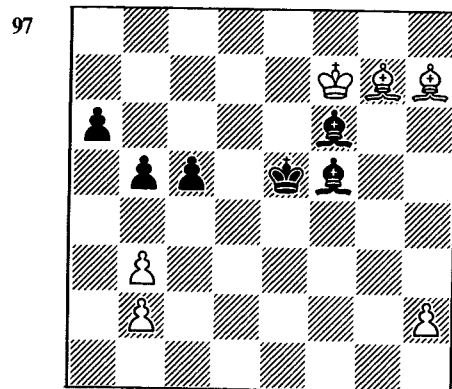
Lasker prefers to keep both bishops on,

but now the b2 pawn becomes very weak. Since this continuation should have lost, better chances of a successful defence would have been offered by the exchange on f6. However, it is easy to say all this when one knows the further course of the game, but to decide during the game which position holds the better saving chances is always a very difficult problem.

26 ... ♔d4+ 27 ♖f3 ♔d5+ 28 ♖g4 ♖e6 29 ♔f8 ♖f7 30 ♔d6 ♔xg2 31 ♔xh7 ♖e6 32 ♔f8 ♖d5 33 ♖g5

White's only counterplay lies in eliminating the g7 pawn.

33 ... ♔f6+! 34 ♖g6 ♔e4+ 35 f5 ♖e5 36 ♔xg7 ♔xf5+ 37 ♖f7 (97)



A famous position. Black faces a choice: should he go into the bishop ending or the pawn ending? As Tarrasch showed, Black would have won easily by 37 ... ♔e6+, 38 ... ♔xg7 and 39 ... ♔xb3, but instead he played

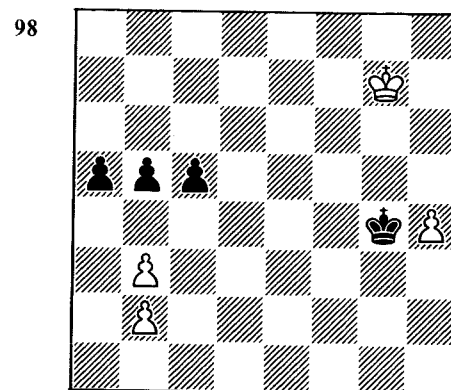
37 ... ♔xg7?
38 ♔xf5!

Not 38 ♔xg7 ♔xh7 39 ♔xh7 ♖f6, when black pins the enemy king to the edge of the board and creates a passed pawn on the queenside.

38 ... ♔xf5

Black also had no win after either 38 ... ♔h8 39 ♔c8 a5 40 ♔a6, or 38 ... ♔f6 39 ♔c8 a5 40 ♔d7, as shown by Boris Vainstein in his book about Lasker, where he gives a detailed analysis of the bishop ending.

39 ♔xg7 a5
40 h4! ♖g4 (98)



41 ♖g6!

A brilliant, study-like move. Tarrasch had reckoned only on 41 ♖f6 c4 42 bxc4 bxc4 43 ♖e5 c3 44 bxc3 a4 45 ♖d4 a3, and wins.

41 ... ♔xh4 42 ♖f5 ♖g3 43 ♖e4 ♖f2 44 ♖d5 ♖e3 45 ♖xc5 ♖d3 46 ♖xb5 ♖c2 47 ♖xa5 ♖xb3 Draw agreed

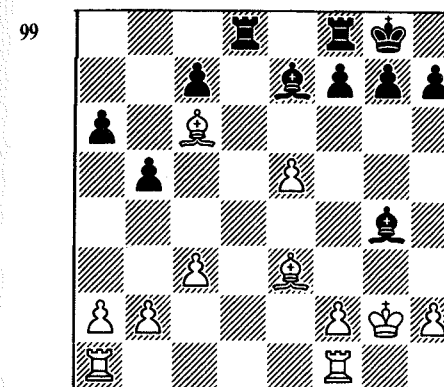
Alekhine-Teichmann
Berlin 1921

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♔b5 a6 4 ♔a4 ♖f6 5 0-0 ♖xe4 6 d4 b5 7 ♔b3 d5 8 dxe5 ♔e6 9 c3 ♔e7 10 ♔e3 0-0 11 ♖bd2 ♔g4 12 ♖xe4 dxe4 13 ♖d5 ♖xd5 14 ♔xd5 exf3 15 ♔xc6 fxe2 16 ♔xg2 ♔ad8 (99)

The variation with 11 ... ♔g4 has gone

out of use, precisely because of White's excellent reply 13 ♖d5!. Black is forced to go into the ending, since after 13 ... exf3 14 ♖xc6 fxe2 15 ♖xg2 he risks coming under a strong attack.

An unsuccessful attempt to demonstrate the acceptability of this position was made in the game Kasparov-Yusupov (47th USSR Championship, Minsk 1979): 15 ... ♖d7 16 ♔h6! gxh6 17 f3 h5 18 ♔ad1 ♖f5 19 fxe4 ♖xe5 20 ♔de1 ♖c5+ 21 ♔h1 ♔ad8? 22 ♔f5 ♖d6 23 ♔d5 ♖g6 24 ♔xe7, and White soon won.



In the resulting ending White has an enduring advantage, in view of Black's queenside pawn weaknesses.

17 a4!

Alekhine begins an immediate attack on the queenside.

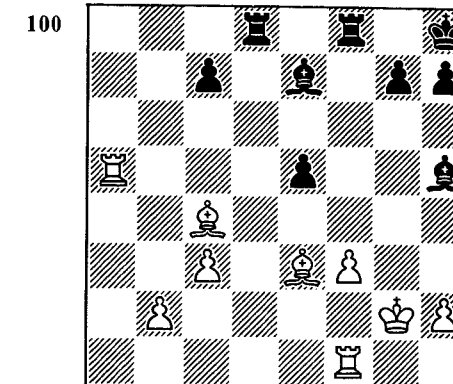
17 ... f6!

Teichmann rises to the occasion. Counterplay on the kingside is Black's best chance in this situation.

18 axb5

Of course, not 18 exf6? ♖xf6 19 axb5 axb5 20 ♔xb5 ♖g6.

18 ... axb5 19 ♔xb5 fxe5 20 ♔c4+! ♔h8 21 f3 ♔h5 22 ♔a5 (100)



Neither side can be criticised in the preceding play. The impression is that Alekhine has gained a persistent initiative, and that all Black can do is to defend himself. However, the position contains latent tactical motifs, which Teichmann skilfully exploits.

22 ... ♔d1!
23 ♔d5!

A worthy reply. 23 ♖xe5 ♖xf1 24 ♖xf1 ♖xf3+ 25 ♔f2 ♔h4 26 ♖xh5 ♖xf2+ 27 ♖g1 ♖f4 would have led to a draw.

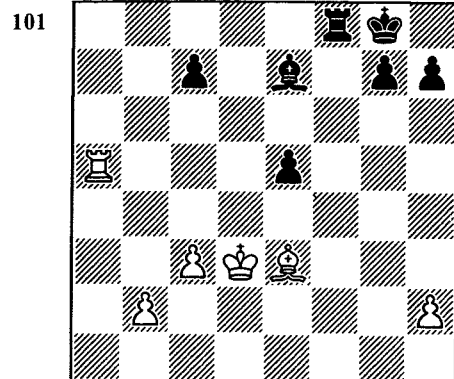
23 ... ♖xf1 24 ♖xf1 ♔xf3 25 ♔xf3 ♖xf3+ 26 ♖e2 ♖f8

After a mass of exchanges the board has become almost deserted, and the game seems to be approaching a draw. Here many players, without thinking, would have played 27 ♖xe5, and after 27 ... ♔d6 the game would have concluded peaceably. Alekhine prefers to try a different way, which he planned back on move 22.

27 ♖d3 ♔g8?! (101)

"If Black had recognised in time his opponent's intentions, and the dangers to which he is exposed, it is probable that he would immediately have rid himself of

the embarrassing pawn by 27 ... e4+!, which would have afforded him some drawing chances" (Alekhine).



28 e4! b8?

Teichmann loses his way. Better was 28 ... f1 29 d5! (but not 29 a7? e1! with the threat of 30... xe3+) 29 ... f7 30 a7 e1!? 31 f2 (31 c5 d1+ 32 c6 xc5 33 xc5 e4) 31... d1+!, with good drawing chances.

29 b4 f7 30 b5 e6 31 c4 d7 32 a7 d6 33 d5

Of course, White is not satisfied with 33 c5 xc5! 34 xc5 xb5.

33 ... e4

Teichmann very belatedly decides to get rid of this 'harmful' pawn.

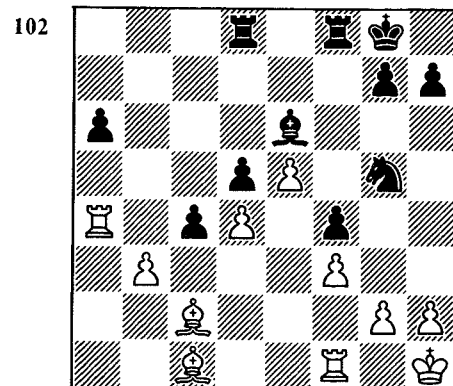
34 b6! f8

As shown by Alekhine, after 34 ... xh2 White would have won by 35 c5 c8 36 c6 cxb6 37 xg7!.

35 c5 f5+
36 c4 Resigns

Haag-Estrin
Correspondence 1979

1 e4 e5 2 f3 c6 3 b5 a6 4 a4 f6 5 0-0 xe4 6 d4 b5 7 b3 d5 8 dx5 e6 9 c3 c5 10 bd2 0-0 11 c2 f5 12 b3 b6 13 fd4 xd4 14 xd4 xd4 15 xd4 c5 16 d1 f4 17 f3 g5 18 a4 bxa4 19 xa4 c4 20 b3 b6+ 21 h1 ad8 22 d4 xd4 23 cxd4 (102)



The sharp variations associated with 15 cxd4 f4 16 f3 g3 17 hxg3 fxg3 18 d3 f5 19 xxf5 xf5 20 xf5 xh4 21 h3 xd4+ 22 h1 xe5, in which the theory extends beyond move 30, have long since gone out of fashion. White now prefers Bogoljubow's old move 15 xd4. The best known game on this theme is Averbakh-Szabo, Candidates Tournament, Zürich 1953, in which 18 ... b4 was played. ECO promises White a big advantage after 19 cxb4 cxb4 (Bronstein recommends 19 ... c4) 20 d4. (Averbakh played 19 h4, and the game ended in a draw.) Therefore Estrin's attempt to rehabilitate the variation with 18... bxa4 is of interest. Everything depends on the assessment of the endgame shown in the diagram.

23 ... d7
24 b4

24 xa6 b5 would merely have helped Black.

24 ... cxb3 25 xb3 b5 26 d1 e6

The position has clarified. White has the two bishops and the more mobile pawn formation. Black has isolated pawns at a6 and d5, but his pieces are on good, sound squares, and it is not easy for White to get at the opponent's pawn weaknesses.

27 a3 f7 28 a2 c7 29 b2 c4 30 b1

The impression might be gained that Black has seized the initiative, but this is merely an illusion. The white pieces have harmoniously regrouped, and are ready to attack. The rook at b2 is threatening to invade at b6, the bishops are aimed at d6 and f5, and active support can also be given by the h-pawn. Black is forced onto the defensive.

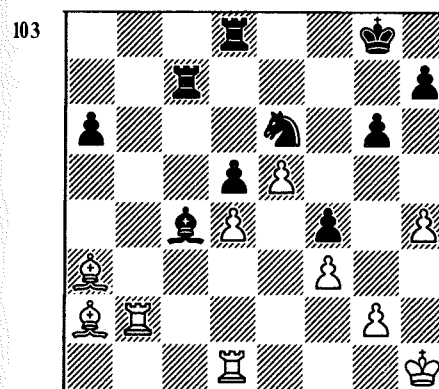
30 ... b5
31 h4

31 ... xd4 was threatened.

31 ... g6

Black defends against the threat of 32 f5, but weakens his kingside. However, this weakening can be exploited only by a subtle, original manoeuvre.

32 a2! c4 (103)



This all seems to have occurred already.

33 b6!

But this is a surprise. Despite the tight covering, the white rook breaks into the enemy position, and draws the remaining pieces after it.

33 ... f7

33 ... xa2 34 xe6 was clearly bad.

34 b1

Intending h4-h5.

34 ... dd7?

A mistake in a difficult position. Black prepares 35 ... b7, but does not have time for it in view of the opponent's concrete threats.

35 h5! gxh5

The intended 35 ... b7 did not work on account of 36 hxg6+ hxg6 37 xg6+.

36 f5

White wins the exchange, which decides the game.

36 ... e7 37 xe7 xe7 38 xe6+ xe6 39 xe6 xe6 40 h2 Black resigns

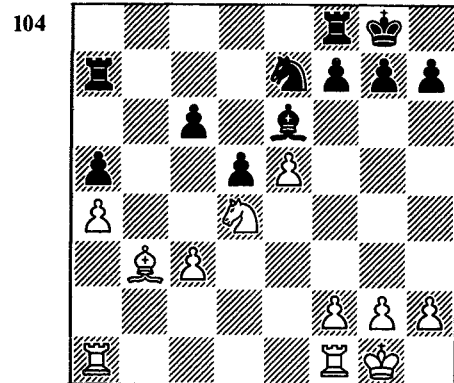
Haag's play creates a strong impression. It is Black's turn to come up with something.

Lobron-Yusupov
Sarajevo 1984

1 e4 e5 2 f3 c6 3 b5 a6 4 a4 f6 5 0-0 xe4 6 d4 b5 7 b3 d5 8 dx5 e6 9 e3 c5 10 d3 0-0 11 bd2 xe3 12 xe3 xd2 13 xd2 e7 14 c3 a5 15 a4 b4 16 c5 d7 17 d4 c6 18 c3 bxc3 19 bxc3 a7 20 xa7 xa7 (104)

In the Open Variation the most difficult

piece for Black to find a square for is normally his queen. If the queens can be exchanged, without White establishing firm control over the squares c5 and d4, then in the endgame Black will not experience any particular difficulties. In his annotations to this game, Yusupov showed that on 14 ♖e3 he was intending 14 ... ♜f5 15 ♖c5 ♖e7 16 ♖c6 ♜fd8 17 ♜fd1 ♖d7, relieving the pressure on the queenside, and that after 20 ♜xe6 fxe6 21 ♖d6 Black had a good reply in 21 ... ♜f7! followed by the driving away of the white queen.



The resulting ending favours Black. White is unable to prevent the freeing advance of the black c-pawn.

21 ♙c2 c5
22 ♜xe6?!

White plays directly for control of the b-file, but as a result the placing of Black's central pawns is significantly improved, his rook obtains good play along the semi-open f-file, and an outlet for his king to the centre is opened. 22 ♜b5 should have been preferred, with a roughly equal game, whereas now Black's position is preferable.

22 ... fxe6
23 ♜ab1?!

The natural move, but not the best. It would have been stronger to occupy the b-file with the other rook, leaving the rook at a1 for the defence of the a4 pawn (Yusupov).

23 ... ♜f4!
24 ♜b8+?!

A further inaccuracy. The rook check merely improves the position of the black king.

24 ... ♜f7 25 ♜e1 g6 26 ♜e3 d4!

Black has deployed his pieces well, whereas White's lack coordination. With all his useful moves already made, Yusupov begins an energetic exploitation of his trumps in the centre and on the queenside.

27 ♜h3 ♙g7
28 ♜b5

On 28 cxd4 Black could have continued 28 ... c4!? followed by ... ♜d5.

28 ... ♜d5!
29 g3?

This loses quickly. Black now builds up a decisive attack on the kingside, exploiting the fact that the rook at h3 is cut off from its main forces. However, White's position was already barely defensible. On 29 cxd4 there would have followed, of course, 29 ... c4!

29 ... ♜f3 30 cxd4 ♜af7 31 ♜xc5 ♜xf2 32 ♙d3 ♜d2 33 g4 ♜d1+ White resigns

CLOSED VARIATION

Endings arising from the Closed Variation (where White advances d4-d5) are characterised primarily by the fixed central pawn formation. White has a spatial advantage in the centre, and the chances

of the two sides depend largely on the situation on the flanks.

In the opening, to relieve the pressure on the e5 pawn, Black has to play ... b5. In the endgame the position of this pawn can assist the seizure of space by ... a5-a4 and ... b4, or the creation of the pawn formation a6/b5/c4. On the other hand, the pawn at b5 can be undermined by a2-a4, and the a5 and b4 squares may become excellent posts for the white pieces. Apart from play on the queenside, Black also has the possibility of undermining White's central pawn wedge with ... f5 and the seizure of space on the kingside, as illustrated by the game **Boleslavsky-Keres**.

In set-ups with ... cxd4, the c-file is initially controlled by Black, but he can by no means always exploit it. There are no unprotected squares in White's position and often, relying on his spatial advantage, he wins the battle for the file. There should be no need to emphasize that the control of the c-file in an endgame of this type is a great and sometimes decisive advantage.

The Closed Variation is characterised by a complicated battle, both in the middlegame and in the endgame. But statistics show that White is successful more often than Black.

Boleslavsky-Keres

Match-Tournament for the Title of Absolute USSR Champion, Leningrad/Moscow 1941

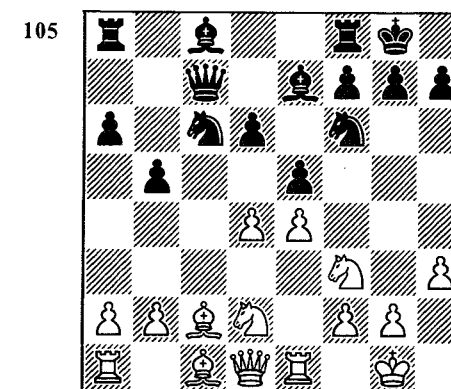
1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♙e7 6 ♜e1 b5 7 ♙b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ♜a5 10 ♙c2 c5 11 d4 ♖c7 12 ♜bd2 cxd4

In those instances when Keres employed the Chigorin Variation, in the overwhelming majority of games he sooner or later made the exchange ... cxd4. It is probable that the positions arising were most in

accordance with the active style of this great player.

Generally speaking, the exchange ... cxd4 is a highly committal decision. (Chigorin himself never played this, preferring to manoeuvre behind his pawns.) By opening the c-file, Black at the same time exposes his weak squares along this file, a factor which can tell if White should win the battle for the open file. A great number of games have been won by White following the routine pattern: d4-d5, ♜b3-a5, ♜c1, ♜c6, b2-b4, a2-a4 etc. Therefore after ... cxd4, cxd4 Black can have only one motto: "activity, and once more activity!"

13 cxd4 ♜c6 (105)



This move, which was successfully employed by Flohr against I. Rabinovich in a training tournament (Moscow/Leningrad 1939), was at the time considered the strongest. The move is indeed not bad. Firstly, the knight comes into play; secondly, the knight at d2 is diverted from the dangerous route ♜f1-e3-f5 or ♜f1-g3-f5 (h5), since on 14 ♜f1 Black can confidently take the d-pawn - this has been known for a long time (both 14 ... exd4, Teichmann-Alekhine, Berlin 1913, and 14 ... ♜xd4, Lasker-Tarrasch, World Championship 1908, are good); thirdly,

Black aims to take the initiative on the queenside, e.g. 14 d5 ♖b4 15 ♙b1 a5 16 ♜f1 ♜a6! (I. Rabinovich-Flohr). Can one ask more of a single move?!

Boleslavsky chooses what is probably the best reply to 13 ... ♜c6.

14 ♜b3 ♜d8?!

In those years Black was with difficulty seeking the correct path, and his searches were by no means always successful. It is not surprising that even such a connoisseur of the Ruy Lopez as Keres did not immediately find the correct set-up. The move made by him is certainly thematic. Black's rook sets up an 'X-ray' along the d-file, and he plans ... d5, after which the queen at d1 will feel uncomfortable. Keres was no doubt also aware that White did not achieve anything by the radical prevention of ... d5 (by 15 d5, as Boleslavsky in fact played).

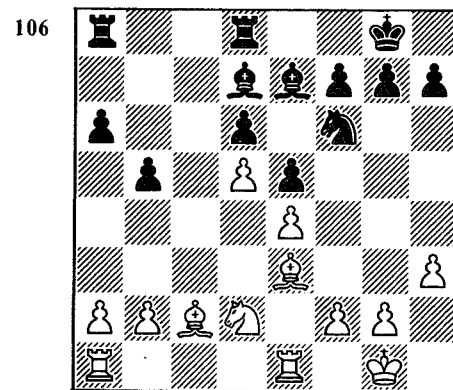
The move 14 ... ♜d8 was called into question by Smyslov, and this occurred just three rounds after the present game: 15 ♙d2! (establishing control over the very important a5 square; now d4-d5 will be very strong) 15 ... ♙b8 16 d5! ♜a7 17 ♜a5 ♙d7 18 ♙d3 ♜c8 19 b4!, with an obvious advantage to White (Smyslov-Keres). In subsequent years Keres frequently returned to this variation, but his attempts at gaining counterplay in the centre normally ended in failure: 14 ... ♙b7 15 ♙g5 h6 16 ♙h4 ♜h5 17 d5! ♜d8 18 ♙xe7 ♙xe7 19 ♜fd4! ± (Bronstein-Keres, Candidates Tournament, Amsterdam 1956), or 14 ... ♙b7 15 d5! ♜a5 16 ♜xa5 ♙xa5 17 a4! ± (Larsen-Keres, Zürich 1959).

It would seem that after 13 ... ♜c6 Black can no longer break through in the centre. This conclusion was most probably reached by Keres, who after 14 ♜b3 played 14 ... a5! against Gligorić at Hastings 1964/65 (cf. the following game).

15 d5 ♜a5 16 ♜xa5 ♙xa5 17 ♙e3 ♙d7 18 ♙d2

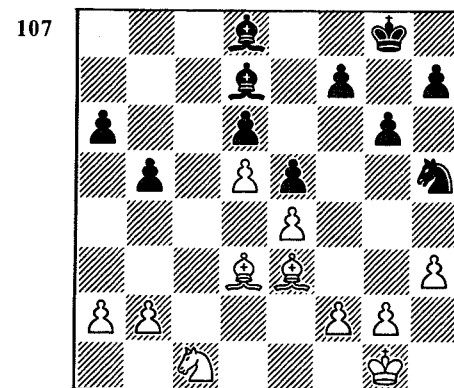
"Boleslavsky, realising that his opening advantage has evaporated, evidently has no objection to a draw", writes Botvinnik in the tournament book.

18 ... ♙xd2
19 ♜xd2 (106)



The resulting ending can be considered roughly equal.

19 ... ♜dc8 20 ♙d3 ♜h5 21 ♜ac1 g6 22 ♜b3 ♙d8 23 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 24 ♜c1 ♜xc1+ 25 ♜xc1 (107)



Play has gone into a minor piece ending, in which Black now has a slight initiative, thanks to the better placing of his pieces

and the possibility of advancing his kingside pawns.

25 ... f5 26 f3 ♙f7 27 ♜e2 ♜f6 28 ♙f1 h5 29 b4!

Boleslavsky takes the opportunity to block the queenside, thus restricting the opponent's active possibilities. Now Black can develop his initiative only on the other side of the board.

29 ... f4 30 ♙f2 g5 31 ♜c3 ♜e8 32 a3 ♜c7 33 ♙b6 ♙e8 34 ♙e2 ♙c8 35 ♙f2 ♜a8 36 a4?

White is inconsistent. Now the position on the queenside is opened to Black's advantage. White should have stuck to waiting tactics, since the threat of the black knight penetrating to c4 did not exist: exchanging his bishop for this knight would have given him the advantage.

36 ... bxa4 37 ♜xa4 ♙d7 38 ♜c3 a5!

Excellently played. Now there will be no pawns left on the queenside, and the black pieces can penetrate via it into White's position.

39 bxa5 ♙xa5 40 ♜b5 ♙e7 41 ♜a3 ♙b6!

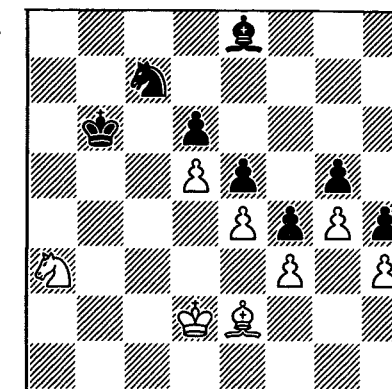
The exchange of dark-square bishops facilitates the passage of the black king via the queenside.

42 ♜c4 ♙xf2 43 ♙xf2 ♙e8 44 ♙f1 ♜c7 45 ♜a5 ♙d7 46 ♙e2 ♜e8 47 ♜c4 ♙d8 48 ♜a3 ♜c7 49 ♙d3 ♙e8 50 ♙e2 ♙c8 51 g4

While Black has been regrouping his pieces on the queenside, White has seized the opportunity to completely block the kingside. Now there is no point in Black playing 51 ... fxg3+, since after 52 ♙xg3 White has time to play 53 h4.

51 ... h4 52 ♙e1 ♙b7 53 ♙d2 ♙b6 (108)

108



54 ♙c3?

A mistake, which leads to a lost position. White could have achieved a draw by 54 ♜c4+ ♙c5 55 ♜a5, when the threat of 56 ♜b7+ leaves Black with nothing better than to accept a repetition of moves.

54 ... ♙c5 55 ♙d3 ♙d7 56 ♙c2 ♙b5!

56 ... ♜b5+? would have been a blunder, since after 57 ♜xb5 ♙xb5 58 ♙d3! ♙xd3 59 ♙xd3 the pawn ending is drawn. Now White is forced to go into the knight ending, since 57 ♜xb5? ♜xb5+ is quite out of the question for him.

57 ♙d3 ♙xd3 58 ♙xd3 ♙b4 59 ♜c2+

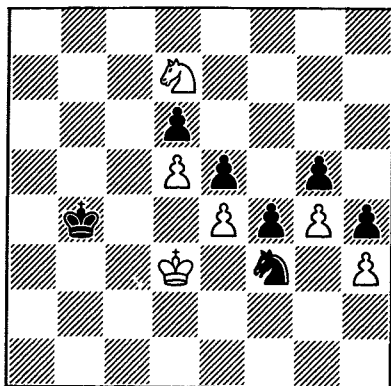
59 ♜c4 ♜b5 60 ♜b6 ♜d4 would have led to positions similar to those in the game.

59 ... ♙b3 60 ♜e1 ♜a6 61 ♙d2 ♙c4 62 ♜d3 ♜c7 63 ♙c2 ♜b5 64 ♜b2+!

Boleslavsky chooses the best practical chance. He does not try to cling to the f3 pawn, but aims to activate his pieces. Passive play – 64 ♜e1? would have inevitably led to zugzwang.

64 ... ♙c5 65 ♜a4+ ♙b4 66 ♜b6 ♜d4+ 67 ♙d3 ♜xf3 68 ♜d7 (109)

109



68 ... ♖d4?!

A mistake, probably caused by the fatigue of such a tense encounter. There was an easy win by 68 ... ♖g1! 69 ♜xe5 dxe5 70 d6 f3 71 ♜e3 f2 72 ♜xf2 ♜xh3+ 73 ♜f3 ♜f4 and 74 ... ♜e6.

The move played does not throw away the win, but makes it much more difficult.

69 ♜f6 ♜b3 70 ♜e2 ♜c5 71 ♜f3 ♜b3 72 ♜e2 ♜c5 73 ♜f3 ♜c3!

Black makes for g1 with his king, in doing so sacrificing his d-pawn. There is no other way for him to strengthen his position.

74 ♜e8

After 74 ♜h7 ♜d2 75 ♜xg5 ♜d3 White would have lost immediately.

74 ... ♜d2

75 ♜xd6 ♜e1

White is threatened with a mating attack: 76 ... ♜f1, 77 ... ♜d3 and 78 ... ♜e1.

76 ♜c4 ♜f1 77 ♜d2+ ♜g1 78 ♜c4 ♜d7?

A second mistake by Keres. As shown by Botvinnik, Black should have been able to win by 78... ♜b3 79 ♜e2 ♜d4+ 80

♜d3 f3 81 d6 f2 82 ♜e3 (82 ♜d2 ♜b3) 82 ... ♜e6 83 ♜c4 ♜f4 84 d7 ♜g2.

79 ♜d6 ♜c5 80 ♜c4 ♜d7? 81 ♜d6 ♜h2?

A third and final mistake, leading to defeat. 81 ... ♜c5 would have repeated the position for the third time.

82 ♜f7 ♜xh3 83 ♜xg5+ ♜h2 84 d6 h3 85 ♜xh3

The knight would also have gone to h3 after other replies by Black.

85 ... ♜xh3 86 g5 ♜c5 87 g6 ♜e6 88 d7 ♜g5+ 89 ♜e2 ♜g3 90 d8=♚ Black resigns

"A most interesting game, splendidly played by Keres up to a certain point. Boleslavsky's clever play in the final stage also deserves credit" – Botvinnik.

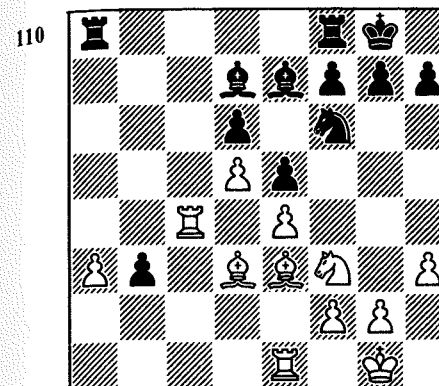
Gligorić-Keres
Hastings 1964/65

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♜b5 a6 4 ♜a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♜e7 6 ♜e1 b5 7 ♜b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ♜a5 10 ♜c2 c5 11 d4 ♜c7 12 ♜bd2 cxd4 13 cxd4 ♜c6 14 ♜b3 a5 15 ♜e3 a4 16 ♜bd2 ♜e6 17 a3 ♜a5 18 ♜c1 ♜b8 19 ♜d3 b4 20 d5 ♜d7 21 ♜c4 ♜xc4 22 ♜xc4 bxa3 23 bxa3 ♜b3 24 ♜xb3 axb3 (110)

The move 14 ... a5 has been known for a long time, since the 1940s, and at present it is considered Black's main plan. Of course, now there are two points for Black to maintain, at b5 and e5, but this is the usual price for active play with the pawns!

In the opening Keres employed the new move 16 ... ♜e6!? On encountering a surprise, Gligorić did not manage to set his opponent any serious problems, and the game went into a roughly equal ending with a slight initiative for Black.

18 ♜c1 proved to be a superfluous move. Nowadays White plays either 18 ♜g5 followed by 19 f4, or else 18 ♜d3 immediately.



25 ♜b4

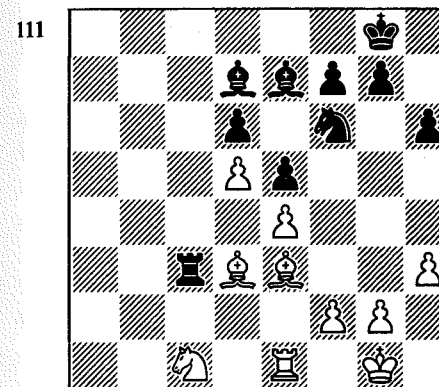
♜xa3

26 ♜d2

♜c8

The attempt to hold the extra pawn by 26 ... ♜a4 27 ♜c4 ♜a2 fails after 28 ♜b1.

27 ♜xb3 ♜xb3 28 ♜xb3 ♜c3 29 ♜c1 h6! (111)



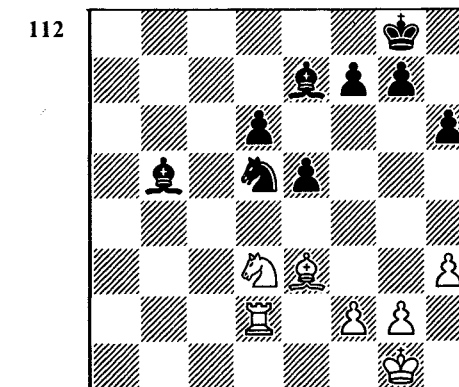
"The position has become greatly simplified, all the pawns are on one wing, and, despite the slightly more active placing of the black pieces, a draw can soon be expected. And it was clear to me that after, for example, 30 ♜d2 the chances

would soon be equal. At the same time I noticed the possibility of an interesting and unexpected combination, if White should decide on the obvious 30 ♜e2, in order to provoke further simplification by 31 ♜c2. This meant that I had to make a useful waiting move, and see whether or not White would play 30 ♜e2?" – Keres.

30 ♜e2? ♜xd3!

Gligorić duly falls into Black's well-camouflaged trap. Now White faces a difficult defence.

31 ♜xd3 ♜b5 32 ♜d2 ♜xe4 33 ♜d1 ♜c3 34 ♜d2 ♜xd5 (112)



As a result of his forcing tactical operation, Black has two pawns for the exchange and two strong bishops.

35 ♜b2?!

Clearly dismayed by the unexpected change of scene, Gligorić fails to find the strongest continuation. As shown by Keres, White had the strong tactical continuation 35 ♜b4!, based on the variation 35 ... ♜xb4 36 ♜b2 d5 37 ♜d2, while after 35 ... ♜xe3 36 fxe3 the white knight occupies the important outpost at d5.

35 ... ♜xe3 36 fxe3 f5 37 ♜d5 ♜c6 38 ♜a5 ♜f7 39 ♜a6 ♜d5?!

In time trouble Keres commits an inaccuracy. It would have been better to play 39 ... ♖e4 immediately, when the bishop would have reached d3 without loss of time, in the event of the white knight going via a4 to b6.

40 ♖a4 ♙c4 41 ♖a7 ♙e6 42 ♖b6

Now on 42 ... ♙d3?! Black has to reckon with 43 ♖d5! ♙g5 44 h4! ♙xh4 45 ♖c7+ ♙d7 46 ♖d5+ (Keres).

42 ... ♙b3! 43 ♖b7 ♙c2 44 ♖c8

After 44 ♖d5 ♙g5 45 ♖c7+ Black has the simple reply 45 ... ♙d7.

44 ... ♙f8!

This modest move is much stronger than the 'active' 44 ... ♙g5?, since after 45 ♙f2 Black cannot parry both threats – 45 ♙xg7 and 45 ♖b6.

45 ♖b6?!

Glorigić unexpectedly sounds the retreat, and allows the opponent to realise his advantage with relative ease. "White should have played 45 ♙f2, awaiting developments. In my brief analysis I had not managed to find a successful regrouping of my forces. Therefore in the event of 45 ♙f2 I was intending to continue 45 ... ♙e4 46 ♖a7 f4, but the pawn exchange 47 exf4 exf4 would undoubtedly have been a significant achievement by White" (Keres).

45 ... ♙e4 46 ♖c7 ♙e7 47 ♖c8?!

It would have been better to aim for passive defence with 47 ♖c4.

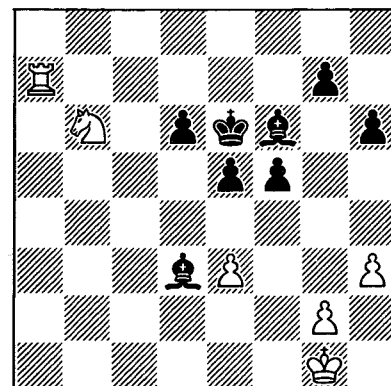
47 ... ♙f6
48 ♖a7 ♙d3!

Black has managed to consolidate his position, parry the opponent's threats, and prepare ... e4.

49 ♖b6? (113)

A mistake in a lost position. By 49 ♙f2 White could have prolonged his resistance. Now comes a pretty finish.

113



49 ... f4!
50 ♙f2

50 exf4 e4! is hopeless.

50 ... ♙h4+ 51 ♙f3 e4+! 52 ♙xf4 (52 ♙g4 ♙f2) 52 ... g5+ White resigns

Smyslov-Euwe

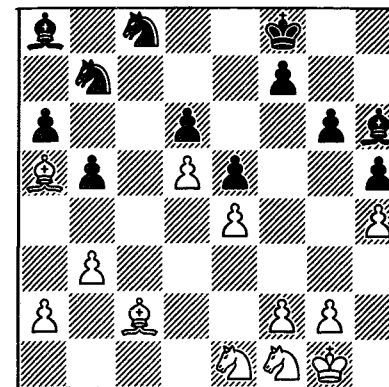
World Championship Match-Tournament
The Hague/Moscow 1948

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♖f6
5 0-0 ♙e7 6 ♖e1 b5 7 ♙b3 d6 8 c3 ♖a5 9
♙c2 c5 10 d4 ♖c7 11 ♖bd2 ♙b7 12 ♖f1
cxd4 13 cxd4 ♖c8 14 ♖e2 0-0 15 ♖g3 ♖fe8
16 b3 ♙f8 17 ♙b2 g6 18 ♖d2 ♙g7 19 ♖c1
♖d7 20 ♖ee1 ♖c6 21 ♙b1 ♖b6 22 d5 ♖e7
23 ♙c3 ♙a8 24 h4 h5 25 ♙a5 ♖b8 26 ♖f1
♖xc1 27 ♖xc1 ♖c8 28 ♖e1 ♖c5 29 ♖g5
♙f8 30 ♖e3 ♖g8 31 ♖h3 ♙h6 32 ♖c3
♖e7 33 ♙c2 ♖b7 34 ♖xc8+ ♖xc8 35
♖xc8+ ♖xc8 (114)

In the opening and middlegame the two players have manoeuvred quietly, making occasional slight errors. In particular, there was no real point in White playing 24 h4, and instead of 24 ... h5

such as 42 gxf5 and 43 ♖g3.

114



Black would have done better to continue 24 ... ♖f6. And instead of 32 ... ♖e7, Black should have considered 32 ... ♙b7 followed by 33 ... ♖f6. The resulting ending is preferable for White in view of his more active pieces and slight spatial advantage, but on the whole Black has no reason to complain.

36 ♙c3 ♖c5 37 ♙b4 ♙e7 38 f3 ♙d7?

Euwe chooses an incorrect set-up of his forces. He should have reinforced his knight at c5 by ... ♖b6-d7, and then brought his light-square bishop into play via b7 to c8. Instead he prepares kingside activity with ... f5, but this plan encounters an energetic rejoinder.

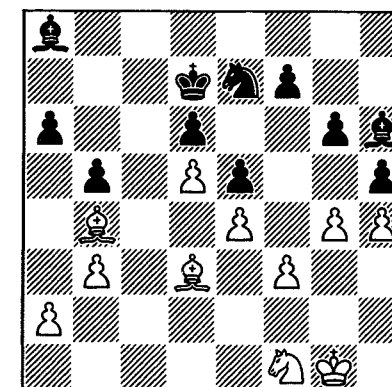
39 ♖d3! ♖xd3
40 ♙xd3 ♖e7

In this situation the transfer of the knight to c5 is difficult to achieve, since in reply to 40 ... ♖b6 White can play 41 ♙a5.

41 g4! (115)

Of course. Smyslov does not allow the opponent to carry out the freeing advance, and threatens to set up a complete bind of Black's kingside by 42 g5. In addition, Black has to reckon with possibilities

115



41 ... hxf4?

"A mistake, thanks to which the idle f3 pawn becomes active and allows White the possibility of a breakthrough on the kingside.

41 ... ♙f4! was essential, when if 42 gxf5 gxf5 the black knight obtains the g6 square, and via it access to f4. But if White plays 42 g5, then the kingside is completely blocked, and Black should be able to draw without difficulty. On the other hand, White cannot defer for long a clarification of the position on the kingside, since Black has the potential threat of ... hxf4 followed by ... f5, with quite favourable complications.

After the text move White eliminates all Black's counterchances on the kingside and opens splendid diagonals for his bishops, after which Black, with his inactive pieces, finds it very difficult to defend" (Keres).

42 fxf4 ♙c1

On 42 ... f5 there would have followed 43 g5 ♙g7 44 ♖e3, while 42 ... f6 would have been strongly met by 43 g5! fxf5 44 ♙d2. Here too 42 ... ♙f4 should have been played, in order to answer 43 g5 with 43 ... ♖g8 and 44 ... f6.

43 g5

Otherwise 43 ... f5 would have followed.

43 ... ♖b7
44 ♖f2 ♜c8?

Euwe sticks to passive waiting tactics, which in the given situation cannot save Black, since White can constantly strengthen his position and increase his advantage decisively. The best chance was 44 ... ♜g8 followed by ... f6.

45 ♜e3 ♜e7
46 ♖a5 ♖a3?!

Here 46 ... f6 is less good, since after 47 gxf6+ ♖xf6 48 ♖f1 it is difficult for Black to coordinate his forces, but this would have been the best way out. It would seem that, immediately the endgame was reached, Euwe decided on waiting tactics, and that he intended to stick to them to the end. For such play one requires a very accurate assessment of the opponent's attacking resources. There have frequently been instances in chess history where passive defence could have led to a draw, but where the steady strengthening of the opponent's position began to frighten the weaker side, and he succumbed to unfounded activity, leading to defeat. In his notes to the fifth game of the Lasker-Schlechter match, Vienna 1910, Znosko-Borovsky wrote:

"However, it has to be acknowledged that in such positions passive defence can sometimes be very good: the opponent's advantage is so insignificant that he is obliged to force matters in order to achieve anything. But such defence must be maintained very tenaciously, and the player must be very attentive, since the opponent may imperceptibly, move by move, increase his advantage significantly. And this method is good only when there are very few pieces and the advantage is very

slight. But then the question arises: why voluntarily condemn oneself to such passive play?"

There is no denying Euwe's consistency, but in his assessment of the position he is wrong.

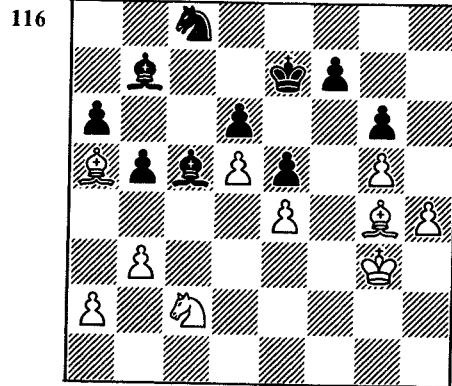
47 ♖g3 ♖c5
48 ♖d2 ♜f8

In the event of 48 ... ♜b6 then, as shown by Keres, 49 h5 gxh5 50 ♜f5+ ♜d7 51 ♖e2 was very strong.

49 ♜c2 ♜e7?!

49 ... ♜e7 and 50 ... ♖c8 was more thematic.

50 ♖e2 ♜a7 51 ♖a5 ♜c8 52 ♖g4! (116)



This is the result of Black's waiting tactics: his pieces are stalemated inside his own territory. His knight cannot move because of 53 b4, nor his dark-square bishop on account of ♜b4-c6, and king moves merely prolong the resistance – 52 ... ♜e8 53 ♖c7 ♜e7 54 ♖g2, and 54 ... ♜e8 fails to 55 b4.

52 ... f6

This move has to be made in the most unfavourable circumstances.

53 ♖e6 ♜xg5

54 hxg5 ♜b6

On 54 ... ♜e8 there would have followed 55 ♖c7, when Black cannot avoid zugzwang.

55 b4 ♜c4 56 bxc5 ♜xa5 57 cxd6+ ♜xd6 58 ♖f7

White wins a pawn, and shortly the game.

58 ... ♜c4 59 ♖xg6 a5 60 ♖g4 b4 61 ♖f5 ♜e7 62 ♖e6 ♜d6 63 ♜e3!

The most energetic solution.

63 ... ♜xe4

63 ... a4 64 ♜f5+ ♜xf5 65 exf5 is hopeless.

64 ♖f5 ♜d6+ 65 ♖xe5 ♜f7+ 66 ♖f4 ♜d8 67 ♜f5+ ♜f8 68 g6 ♜xe6+ 69 dxe6 a4 70 ♖e5 Black resigns

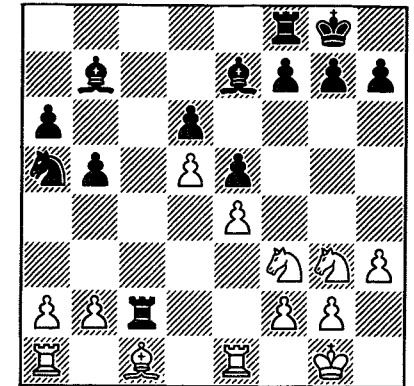
"Close attention should be paid to the ending of this game, which was lost by Black without any obvious mistakes from an almost equal starting position. It is a clear demonstration of the dangers entailed, even in simple positions, by extremely passive play. Smyslov made splendid use of the opportunities afforded him, and won the endgame convincingly without allowing the opponent any counterchances" (Keres).

Aseyev-Sturua

USSR Young Masters Championship
Lvov 1985

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♖b5 a6 4 ♖a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♖e7 6 ♖e1 b5 7 ♖b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ♜a5 10 ♖c2 c5 11 d4 ♖c7 12 ♜bd2 cxd4 13 cxd4 ♖b7 14 d5 ♖ac8 15 ♖d3 ♜d7 16 ♜f1 ♜c5 17 ♜g3 ♜xd3 18 ♖xd3 ♖c2 19 ♖xc2 ♖xc2 (117)

117



The Panov Counterattack, 12 ... cxd4 and 13 ... ♖b7, is not especially favoured by opening theory. White is not obliged to go in for the sharp variations – 14 ♜f1 ♖ac8 followed by ... d5, but can simply block the centre with 14 d5, after which the bishop's position at b7 can be justified only by the undermining of White's centre with the double-edged ... f5. However, there has recently been a slight revival of interest in this variation on the part of Black. For example, in Ljubojević-Pinter, European Club Championship, Belgrade 1984, after 15 ♖b1 ♜h5 16 ♜f1 ♜f4! 17 ♜g3 (17 b3? ♖xc1!) 17 ... ♖d8 18 ♖xf4 (18 b3 ♖c3) 18 ... exf4 19 ♜h5 ♜c4 20 ♖e2 ♜e5 21 ♖c2 ♖a5 Black achieved a perfectly good game.

15 ♖d3 is considered stronger. Black's 16th move had already occurred in a game Yudovich-Nezhmetdinov, USSR Championship Semi-Final, Gorky 1954, where after 17 ♖b1 ♜c4 18 b3 ♜b6 19 ♜e3 g6 20 ♜g4 ♜bd7 Black had a somewhat passive, but sound position. Aseyev chose the more active 17 ♜g3!, allowing Black to exchange knight for bishop. Sturua's 18 ... ♖c2? was possibly already the decisive mistake. He should have played 18 ... ♜c4, although even then White's position is clearly better.

It would seem that in this variation Black must take his chance in the sharp play resulting from 16 ... f5. The game Spassky-Mnatsakanian, USSR Championship Semi-Final, Rostov-on-Don 1960, continued 17 exf5 ♗xd5 18 ♖g5 (18 ♖g3 ♜b7 19 ♗e4 ♖f6 20 ♗xd5 ♜xd5, Unzicker-Honfi, Baden Baden 1981, is not dangerous for Black) 18 ... ♗xg5 19 ♗xg5 ♖f6 20 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 21 ♗xb5 with advantage to White, but 19 ... ♗b7 (instead of 19 ... ♖f6) came into consideration.

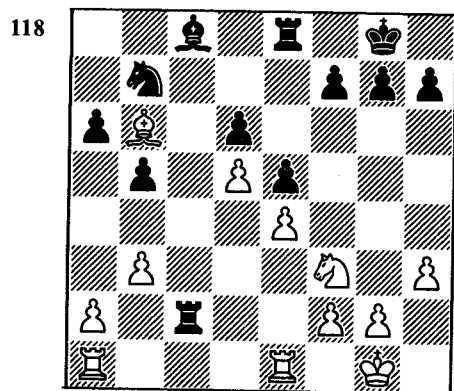
20 ♖f5 ♗e8
21 b3!

Black's minor pieces on the queenside have no prospects.

21 ... ♗c8 22 ♖xe7+ ♗xe7 23 ♗e3 ♖b7 24 ♗b6!

Very unpleasant for Black. White does not allow the enemy knight to escape via d8, and he prevents Black from doubling rooks on the c-file.

24 ... ♗e8 (118)



25 ♗ec1!

Aseyev wrests the c-file from his opponent, disregarding the loss of his e-pawn, since he correctly assumes that Black will be unable to untangle his knot of minor

pieces on the queenside.

25 ... ♗e2 26 ♗c7 ♗xe4 27 ♖g5 ♗f4 28 g3 ♗f6 29 b4!

White can permit himself this move, which conclusively shuts the knight at b7 out of the game. Black has no counterplay, and is bound to lose material.

29 ... ♗g6 30 ♖f3 e4 31 ♖h4 ♗g5 32 ♖g2!

The last accurate move. 32 ♗ac1 ♗xh3 33 ♗xb7 ♗xd5 would have left Black with some hopes.

32 ... ♗xd5 33 ♗ac1 ♗e6 34 ♖f4! ♗d2 35 ♖xe6

Black resigns. After 35 ... fxe6 36 ♗xb7 White doubles rooks on the seventh rank.

OTHER VARIATIONS

The endings examined earlier were classified more or less clearly by their type of pawn formation. In this concluding section we give endings arising from various lines of the Ruy Lopez, where the placing of the pieces plays at least an equal, and possibly a more important role, than the features of the pawn formation.

A well known middlegame stratagem is playing for the isolation of some piece or other (usually a minor piece). When play reaches an endgame, the side who has succeeded in isolating an enemy piece will gain a great, and sometimes decisive advantage. The untimely development of his bishop at g4 can often end dismally for Black. The bishop is usually driven back to g6 and shut out of play. On this theme we give the games **Capablanca-Bogoljubow** and **Ivkov-Hort**.

Fierce skirmishes in the centre often

lead to the pawns being completely eliminated from it, and it is then coordination of the pieces which becomes of primary importance in the endgame. Black's better development allows him to feel secure in endgames of this type, as illustrated by the games **König-Smyslov** and **Schmid-Smyslov**.

In the Closed Variation White, in striving to occupy the d5 square, often exchanges his d-pawn, sometimes combining this exchange with the flank attack a2-a4. Black usually has difficulty in defending the d5 square, and – in the event of the exchange axb5 axb5 – in defending his weak b- and c-pawns, as occurred in the game **Tal-Portisch**. The exchange dxe5 is less promising for White when Black has the possibility of defending the d5 square with ... c6. Black's chances in the resulting complicated endgame are demonstrated by the game **Keres-Portisch**.

The exchange dxe5 and the transition into an endgame may be a good way of exploiting mistakes made by Black in the opening. This is what happened in the game **Tseshkovsky-Romanishin**. On the other hand, excessively direct play for simplification, without taking account of the features of the position, led White to disaster in the game **Grushevsky-Geller**.

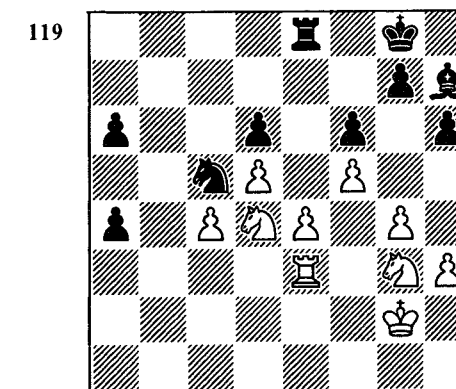
Black's endgame difficulties, caused by the untimely conceding of the centre in the opening, are illustrated by the classic game **Lasker-Bogoljubow**.

We conclude with two games played with the Steinitz Defence, which is nowadays not very popular. Black's deformed pawn formation is reflected in the games **Kludt-Keres** and **Simagin-Keres**.

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♗b5 a6 4 ♗a4 ♖f6 5 0-0 ♗e7 6 ♗e1 b5 7 ♗b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 d4 exd4 10 cxd4 ♗g4 11 ♗e3 ♖a5 12 ♗c2 ♖c4 13 ♗c1 c5 14 b3 ♖a5 15 ♗b2 ♖c6 16 d5 ♖b4 17 ♖bd2 ♖xc2 18 ♜xc2 ♗e8 19 ♜d3 h6 20 ♖f1 ♖d7 21 h3 ♗h5 22 ♖3d2 ♗f6 23 ♗xf6 ♜xf6 24 a4 c4 25 bxc4 ♖c5 26 ♜e3 bxa4 27 f4 ♜e7 28 g4 ♗g6 29 f5 ♗h7 30 ♖g3 ♜e5 31 ♖g2 ♗ab8 32 ♗ab1 f6 33 ♖f3 ♗b2+ 34 ♗xb2 ♜xb2+ 35 ♗e2 ♜b3 36 ♖d4 ♜xe3 37 ♗xe3 (119)

The opening played here is currently experiencing a revival. Instead of 15 ♗b2, Fischer's move 15 d5! is considered more promising. Black solved his opening problems quite satisfactorily, but made a serious mistake on his 21st move. Capturing the knight at f3 would have secured him a good game.

Capablanca exploited his opponent's error in masterly fashion. He carried out the plan of a pawn offensive on the kingside, and for a long time shut the black bishop out of the game. However, he was obliged to concede the important e5 square. Bogoljubow managed to obtain counterplay and obtained a strong passed pawn on the queenside.



The tension of the struggle has not been reduced by the exchange of queens. Much now depends on whether White can combat

Capablanca-Bogoljubow
London 1922

the enemy passed pawn, while retaining the advantage on the kingside and in the centre.

37 ... ♖b8 38 ♜c3 ♜f7 39 ♜f3 ♖b2 40 ♜ge2 ♜g8 41 ♜e6!

Capablanca occupies this strategically important point, for which he is prepared to sacrifice his e4 pawn. The variation 41 ... ♜xe4 42 ♜xe4 ♜xe2+ 43 ♜d3 ♖h2 44 ♜d4 h5 45 c5 is favourable for White.

41 ... ♜b3
42 c5 dxc5

42 ... a3 would have lost to 43 cxd6 a2 44 ♜c7+ ♜e8 45 ♜e7 mate.

43 ♜xc5 ♜d2+
44 ♜f2 ♜e7?

A mistake, which leads to defeat. Black would have retained drawing chances after 44 ... ♜b1! 45 ♜xa4 ♜xc3 46 ♜xb2 ♜xe4+ 47 ♜e3 ♜d6.

45 ♜e1 ♜b1
46 ♜d3!

This is the point. White has gained a decisive tempo for the advance of his d-pawn, thanks to the position of the black king at e7.

46 ... a3 47 d6+ ♜d8 48 ♜d4! ♖b6 49 ♜de6+ ♜xe6

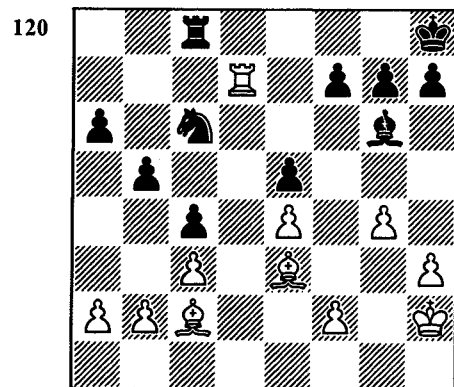
After standing idle for nearly thirty moves, the black bishop is exchanged, giving White two connected passed pawns on the sixth, supported by rook and knight. This essentially concludes the game.

50 fxe6 ♖b8 51 e7+ ♜e8 52 ♜xa6 Black resigns

Ivkov-Hort
Varna Olympiad 1962

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♜b5 a6 4 ♜a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♜e7 6 ♜e1 b5 7 ♜b3 d6 8 c3 ♜g4 9 d3 0-0 10 ♜bd2 d5 11 h3 ♜h5 12 g4 dxe4 13 dxe4 ♜g6 14 ♖e2 ♖d7 15 ♜h4 ♜fd8 16 ♜c2 ♜e8 17 ♜df3 ♜xh4 18 ♜xh4 ♜d6 19 ♜h2 ♜e7 20 ♜f5 c5 21 ♜g1 ♜h8 22 ♜e3 ♜ac8 23 ♜ad1 ♖e6 24 ♜xd6 ♜xd6 25 ♜xd6 ♖xd6 26 ♜d1 ♖c6 27 ♖d3 c4 28 ♖d7 ♖xd7 29 ♜xd7 ♜c6 (120)

In the opening Black prematurely brought his bishop out to g4. White advanced his d-pawn one square, beginning a plan aimed at restricting the enemy light-square bishop. On the eleventh move Black could have exchanged on f3, but the variation 11 ... ♜xf3 12 ♖xf3 d4 13 ♜d5! could not have satisfied him. Subsequently Ivkov skilfully increased the pressure on the kingside. Black was unable to free himself tactically: 15 ... ♜xe4 16 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 17 ♖xe4 ♜xh4 would have lost to 18 ♜d5, and on the next move the capture on e4 was not possible, because of the h7 pawn being undefended. White gave the impression of preparing an attack on the kingside, against which Hort took defensive measures. But on his 27th move Ivkov made an abrupt change of plan with the exchange 24 ♜xd6!, seized the d-file and transposed into an endgame.



In the ending White has a decisive

positional advantage: he is effectively a piece up.

30 g5!

In the first instance the black bishop must be prevented from freeing itself.

30 ... ♜h5

30 ... f6 31 gxf6 gxf6 32 ♜h6 ♜g8 33 ♜d6 would have been bad for Black.

31 ♜g3 ♜g8
32 f3!

White blocks the last diagonal of the enemy bishop, after which he will commence play on the queenside.

32 ... ♜f8

On 32 ... f6 White would have played in analogy with the note to Black's 30th move.

33 ♖b7 ♜e8
34 a4!

This pawn thrust on the queenside shatters Black's position.

34 ... ♖b8 35 ♜c7 ♜d8 36 ♜a7 b4 37 a5 b3 38 ♜d1 Black resigns

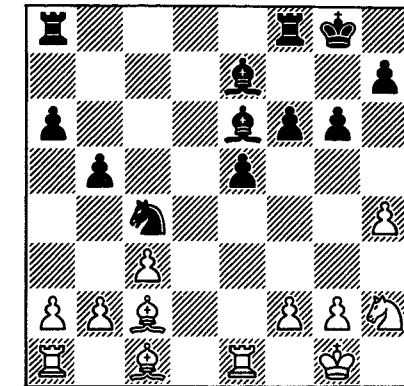
This game is a textbook example on the theme: "Shutting Black's light-square bishop out of play in the Ruy Lopez".

König-Smyslov

Radio Match Great Britain v. USSR 1946

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♜b5 a6 4 ♜a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♜e7 6 ♜e1 b5 7 ♜b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ♜d7 10 d4 ♜f6 11 d5 ♜a5 12 ♜c2 ♜b6 13 ♜bd2 c6 14 dxc6 ♖c7 15 ♜f1 ♖xc6 16 ♜e3 ♜e6 17 ♜g4 ♜e7 18 ♜e3 g6 19 ♜h2 f6 20 h4 d5 21 exd5 ♜xd5 22 ♜xd5 ♖xd5 23 ♖e2 ♖c4 24 ♖xc4 ♜xc4 (121)

121



In the opening White rather prematurely removed the tension in the centre with 11 d5 (modern theory gives preference to 11 a4). Black consistently opened up the game with 13 ... c6 and 20 ... d5, and gained the better prospects in the endgame. 17 ♜g4? was a loss of time on White's part – it would have been better to play 17 ♜h2 immediately.

25 ♜f1 ♜ac8 26 ♜b3 ♜f7 27 g3 ♜fd8 28 ♜e3 ♜d2 29 ♜xe6+ ♜xe6 30 ♜d1 ♜f3+ 31 ♜f1 e4

Black has established his knight in enemy territory, and his advantage begins to assume real proportions.

32 ♜e2 h5!

White's kingside pawns are fixed on dark squares. Given the opportunity, Black is ready to create a passed pawn on the h-file by ... g5.

33 ♜g2 ♜xd1
34 ♜xd1 b4!

Smyslov secures for his pieces the important central square d4.

35 cxb4 ♜d8+!

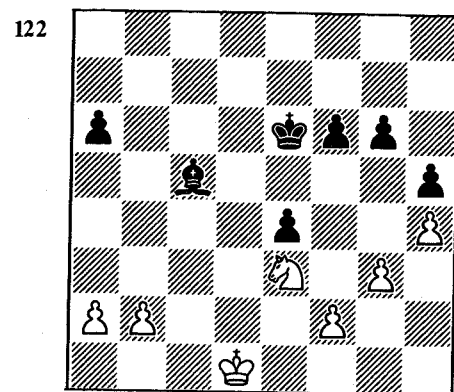
A useful interposition. The white king is driven further away from its own side of

the board, since 36 ♖e2 is bad in view of 36 ... ♜g1+! 37 ♖e3 ♜f5.

36 ♖c2 ♜xb4
37 ♖e3 ♜d4+!

Smyslov forces the transition into a favourable minor piece ending. When there is play on both wings, a bishop is traditionally stronger than a knight. In addition, all White's kingside pawns are fixed on dark squares.

38 ♙xd4 ♞xd4 39 ♞d1 ♙c5 40 ♖e3 ♞xd1 41 ♜xd1 (122)



41 ... ♙g5!

Black has chosen accurately the timing of this breakthrough. Had White's king been at e2, he would have had the important defensive move ♜g2. But now he must either agree to the isolation of his h4 pawn, or allow the opponent an outside passed pawn on the kingside. The English player prefers the first option.

42 ♖e2 gxf4 43 gxf4 f5 44 ♜g2 ♖e5 45 a3

In his book of selected games, Smyslov gives the following logical analysis of this position: "White is in an unusual form of zugzwang. Any move will worsen his position. Black has at his disposal a

strong threat – to advance his f-pawn to f3, when he will win the h4 pawn without difficulty. To defend against this threat, White must always have the reply f2-f3, and so his king must remain where it is. His knight also has no good move, since 45 ♖e3 can be met by 45 ... f4 46 ♖c4+ ♜d4, while on 45 ♖e1 Black can manoeuvre with his bishop along the a3-f8 diagonal, stopping at e7 when White plays ♜g2 – this restricts the knight.

It remains to try pawn moves. White wants to advance his f-pawn only in reply to Black's ... f4. If, for example, 45 f4+ immediately, then 45 ... ♖e6 46 ♖e3 ♖e7 47 ♜g2 ♙f6 48 b3 ♙d4; now the pawn ending arising after 49 ♖e3 ♙xe3 50 ♖xe3 ♜d5 is lost for White.

White runs out of moves in curious fashion after 45 b3 ♙e7 46 a4 ♙c5, here 46 ♖e3 failing to 46 ... f4+ 47 ♜xf4 ♙c5+. Therefore with the text move he hopes to deprive Black of the c5 square, by preparing 46 b4, and plans to meet 45 ... a5 with 46 b4 axb4 47 axb4 ♙xb4 48 f3 with some drawing chances, since h-pawn plus dark-square bishop do not win."

45 ... ♙d6
46 b4

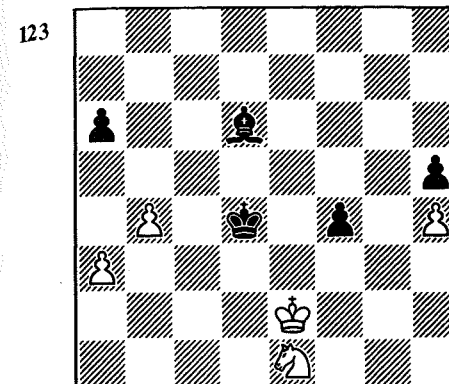
White would also have failed to exchange the opponent's queenside pawn with 46 ♖e3. Black would have continued 46 ... ♙e7 47 ♜g2 a5! 48 b4 a4.

46 ... f4

Now, when Black's king has access to the white pawns on the queenside, he can move his f-pawn.

47 f3 ♙d4 48 fxe4 ♖xe4 49 ♖e1 ♙d4 (123)

The decisive king manoeuvre. White cannot go in pursuit with his king, since



after 50 ♖d2 ♖c4 51 ♖c2 ♙c7 52 ♜f3 ♙b6 53 ♜g5 ♙e3 54 ♜f3 ♙f2 he ends up in zugzwang (Smyslov).

50 ♖f3 ♖c4
51 ♖e4

The pawn ending after 51 ♜g2 ♖b3 52 ♜xf4 ♙xf4 53 ♖xf4 ♖xa3 is lost for White.

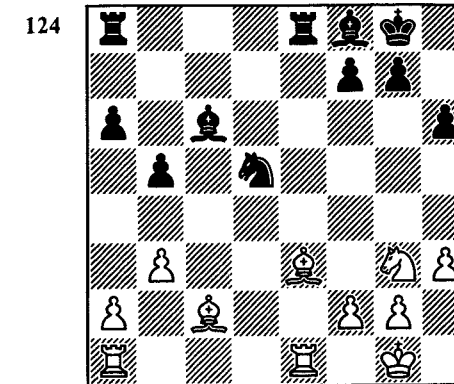
51 ... ♖b3 52 ♜d3 ♖xa3 53 ♖c5 ♖xb4

White resigns. After 54 ♜xa6+ ♖b5 he loses his knight.

Schmid-Smyslov Monaco 1969

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♙e7 6 ♞e1 b5 7 ♙b3 0-0 8 c3 d6 9 h3 h6 10 d4 ♞e8 11 ♜bd2 ♙f8 12 ♜f1 ♙d7 13 ♜g3 ♜a5 14 ♙c2 c5 15 b3 ♜c6 16 ♙e3 cxd4 17 cxd4 exd4 18 ♜xd4 d5 19 exd5 ♜b4 20 ♜c6 ♜xc6 21 dxc6 ♙xc6 22 ♞d4 ♞d5 23 ♞xd5 ♜xd5 (124)

The opening stage has gone well for Black. With the disappearance of the central pawns, all his difficulties have disappeared, and his minor pieces are even slightly the more active.



24 ♙e4 ♜b4
25 ♙xc6 ♜xc6
26 ♜f5?

The numerous exchanges have lulled White's vigilance, and he makes an imperceptible but serious mistake, after which he can no longer escape from Smyslov's iron grip. 26 a4 was correct, after which White can maintain approximate equality. In endings without any central pawns the play is of an open nature, and so the value of every move is markedly increased.

26 ... ♜b4!
27 ♜d4

As was shown by Smyslov, after 27 ♞ec1 ♞ac8 28 a4 ♜c2 29 ♞a2 ♜xe3 30 ♞xc8 ♞xc8 31 ♜xe3 ♞c1+ 32 ♖h2 ♞b1 Black wins the b3 pawn.

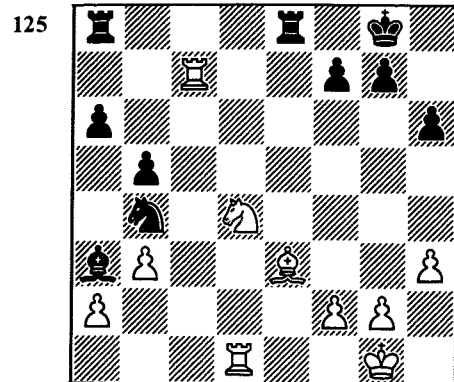
27 ... ♙c5 28 ♞ed1 ♜d5 29 ♞ac1

29 ♞d3? would have lost to 29 ... ♜xe3 30 fxe3 ♞xe3!.

29 ... ♙a3!
30 ♞c6 ♜b4!

Of course, not 30 ... ♜xe3 31 fxe3 ♞xe3? 32 ♜c2.

31 ♞c7 (125)



31 ... ♖ad8!

"Black strengthens his position. Now on 32 ♖d2 there follows 32 ... ♜d5, and if 33 ♜c6, then 33 ... ♖d6 34 ♖a7 ♜xe3 35 ♖xd6 ♜xd6 36 ♖xe3 ♖xe3 with the mating threat 37 ... ♜g3. Then in the event of 37 ♖a8+ ♜h7 38 ♜f2 ♜c5 39 ♜f1 ♖c3 40 ♖xa6 ♖c1+ 41 ♜e2 ♖c2+ 42 ♜f3 f5 Black has a great positional advantage" (Smyslov).

32 ♖f1 ♜xa2

Black has won a pawn with a good position. On 33 ♖a1 there follows 33 ... ♜d6.

33 ♜c2 ♜b2!

It was essential to prevent 34 ♖a1.

34 ♖c6 a5 35 ♖c5 ♖c8 36 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 37 ♜d4 ♜xd4 38 ♜xd4 ♜c1!

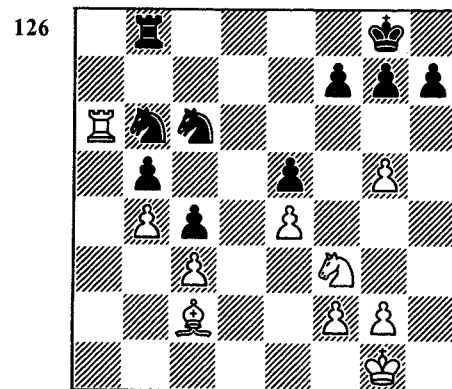
White resigns. Against the threats of 39 ... ♜e2+ and 39 ... ♜xb3 he has no defence.

Tal-Portisch

Candidates Match, Bled 1965

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♜b5 a6 4 ♜a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♜e7 6 ♖e1 b5 7 ♜b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3

♜d7 10 d4 ♜f6 11 a4 ♜a5 12 ♜c2 ♜b6 13 axb5 axb5 14 ♜bd2 c5 15 dxc5 dxc5 16 ♜h2 c4 17 ♜g4 ♜xg4 18 hxg4 ♜g5 19 ♜f3 ♜xc1 20 ♖xc1 ♖c7 21 ♖e3 ♜d7 22 ♖ed1 ♜c6 23 b3 ♜a5 24 b4 ♜c6 25 g5 ♖xa1 26 ♖xa1 ♖b6 27 ♖xb6 ♜xb6 28 ♖a6 ♖b8 (126)



In the opening, in Tal's opinion, Black did not play the best moves. Instead of 16 ... c4 he should have considered 16 ... ♜e7 17 ♜g4 f6. And the exchange of dark-square bishops did not improve Black's position: his dark-square complex on the queenside became more vulnerable. On Black's 20th move Tal gave the following comment: "I think that here or later Black should have played ... ♜b3, aiming for counterplay even at the cost of a pawn". With the energetic pawn thrusts 23 b3! and 25 g5! White gained a spatial advantage and restricted the enemy knights, and the transition into the endgame merely consolidated his advantage.

29 ♜d2

White intends to transfer his knight to a3 and to win the b5 pawn.

29 ... ♜d8!

30 ♜f3!

"I saw that the planned 30 ♜b1 would

lead to a draw - 30 ... ♜e6 31 ♜a3 ♜c7 32 ♖a7 ♖a8! 33 ♖xc7 ♖xa3 34 ♖c6 g6 35 ♖xb6 ♖xc3 36 ♜d1 ♖c1 37 ♖d6 c3. I was obliged to retrace my steps" (Tal).

30 ... ♜c6
31 ♜h2

The knight heads along another 'Spanish' route.

31 ... ♜f8 32 ♜g4 ♜e7 33 ♜e3 ♜d6

Portisch parries the threat of 34 ♖xb6.

34 ♜d5!

34 ♜f5+ ♜c7 35 ♜xg7 ♖g8 did not promise White any particular advantage. Using tactics, Tal finds a way to strengthen his position.

34 ... ♜xd5?

But Portisch fails to withstand the pressure of a difficult defence, and decides on a desperate piece sacrifice. 34 ... ♜d7 would have been very unpleasantly met by 35 ♜d1, but, as shown by Tal, he should have played 34 ... ♜a8, with a difficult but defensible position.

35 exd5 ♜xd5
36 f3 ♜xb4

36 ... ♖c8 37 ♜e4+ ♜d6 38 ♖b6 was no better for Black.

37 cxb4 ♜d4
38 ♖a7!

The most decisive way of realising the advantage.

38 ... ♜c3 39 ♜xh7 ♜xb4 40 ♖xf7 ♜c3 41 ♖xg7 b4 42 ♖c7 b3 43 g6 b2

On 43 ... ♖h8 Tal had prepared 44 g7 ♖xh7 45 ♖xc4+.

44 g7 b1=♖+ 45 ♜xb1 ♖xb1+ 46 ♜f2 ♖b8 47 ♜e3 Black resigns

Keres-Portisch
Moscow 1967

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♜b5 a6 4 ♜a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♜e7 6 ♖e1 b5 7 ♜b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 h6

In those recent years the Smyslov Variation was exceptionally popular. It suddenly became fashionable (before this 'everyone' had been playing the Keres Variation 9 ... ♜a5 10 ♜c2 c5 11 d4 ♜d7), probably on account of Spassky's successful employment of it in his Candidates Quarter-Final Match with Keres in Riga in the Spring of 1965.

In playing 9 ... h6, Black has the centre in view! In this way he prepares the regrouping ... ♖e8 and ... ♜f8, maintaining his pawn at e5, and in some cases he threatens the e4 pawn, thus restricting the manoeuvrability of the white pieces. Today the Smyslov Variation is experiencing a crisis. This is partly a matter of 'fashion', but there are also objective reasons.

Grandmaster Igor Zaitsev has shown that ... h6 is not at all necessary, and that Black can begin his regrouping immediately: 9 ... ♜b7 10 d4 ♖e8, when 11 ♜g5 is an empty threat in view of 11 ... ♖f8. The Zaitsev Variation has already been strongly in fashion for some five years.

It is true that in the Smyslov Variation Black has the possibility of developing his bishop not only at b7, but also at d7, but is this advantage worth a whole tempo?

10 d4 ♖e8 11 ♜bd2 ♜f8 12 a3

One of Keres' favourite plans in the Smyslov Variation was to set up a bind on Black's queenside. For example, just a year after the introduction of 9 ... h6, the game Keres-Blatny (Varna Olympiad 1962) went 12 ♜c2 ♜d7 13 ♜b3!? a5 14 dxe5 dxe5?! (14 ... ♜xe5 is better) 15 ♜e3!, and

Black's weakness at c5 was keenly felt.

To carry out the plan of a pawn attack on Black's queenside, the transfer of the knight to f1 must for the moment be delayed; also, Keres plans to keep his bishop on the a2-g8 diagonal, with pressure on f7. These are the aims of 12 a3.

However, as many years of tournament practice have shown (and the game in question played a far from minor role), White's plan is not dangerous. Black can oppose the diversion on the queenside with active counterplay in the centre. And so nowadays White simply plays 12 f1, when events can develop roughly as follows:

(a) 12... d7 13 g3 a5 14 c2 c5 15 b3 cxd4 16 cxd4 c6 17 b2 g6 18 d2 g7 19 Rad1 Bb6 20 f1, Fischer-Spassky, Havana Olympiad 1966, or

(b) 12... b7 13 g3 a5 14 c2 c4 15 b3 b6 16 a4! c5 17 d5 c4! 18 b4 c8 19 e3 d7 20 a5, Fischer-Gligorić, Rovinj/Zagreb 1970 – in both cases with advantage to White.

12 ... d7
13 a2 a5!

Keres carries out his plan, but it is neutralised by Portisch's brilliant reaction. 13 c2 was better, when Averbakh-Matanović (Yerevan 1965) went 13... Bb8 14 b4 a5 15 b2 g6 16 b3! a4 17 b2 d2 g7 18 f1 Bb6 19 g3 e7 20 d3 e8 21 c1 a7 22 c4!, with a big advantage to White.

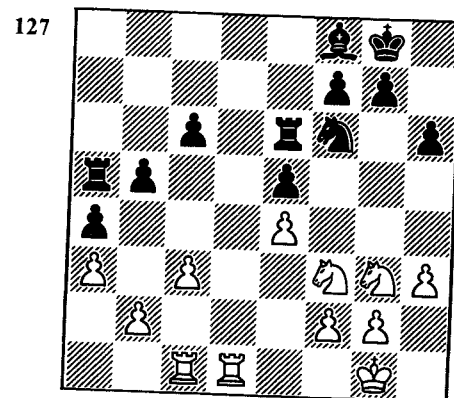
Portisch's 13... a5 begins a profound plan of counterplay on the queenside. Black's aim – to exploit the weakness of the light squares – can be achieved only in the endgame. And so, in playing... a5-a4 and then... e6, Portisch is planning to go into an ending!

14 f1

Keres did not achieve anything in a

game from his Candidates Match with Spassky (Riga 1965) after 14 Bb3 e7 15 f1 a4 16 c2 g6 17 e3 g7 18 d5 xd5 19 xd5 Bc8.

14... a4 15 g3 a5 16 e3 c6! 17 c1 e6! 18 xe6 xe6 19 dxe5 dxe5 20 Bxd8 Bxd8 21 b6 Ba8 22 xa5 Bxa5 23 ed1 (127)



A complicated ending. White controls the only open file, but a careful study of the position shows that Black's position is the more promising, since White will have no invasion squares on the d-file, whereas after the exchange of rooks his queenside pawns may become an excellent target for the black bishop.

23... e8 24 d3 Baa8 25 f1 Bb8!

With his last move Portisch further neutralises the effect of a possible c3-c4, on which there follows... b4!

26 e1 g6
27 c2

The white knights rush about the board in search of strong points, but are simply unable to find any.

27 ... h5
28 f3

An important point. The f3 square has

been occupied by a pawn. This means that there is no longer any threat to the e5 pawn, and Black can exchange rooks.

28... ed8! 29 cdl Bxd3 30 Bxd3 c5 31 e2 c4!

Showing a subtle understanding of the position. Black paralyses White's queenside, after which he exchanges the second pair of rooks. There was no point in maintaining the pawn tension on the queenside, since the... b4 break was not in the spirit of the position.

32 d1 Bb7 33 b4 d7 34 e1 Bxd1+ 35 Bxd1 c5

First of all White must be deprived of counterplay associated with attacking the b5 pawn by a6-c7. The c7 square will be guarded by the bishop, and the black king prepares to advance to g5 via g7 and h6.

36 c6 d7
37 f4

Keres does not wish to wait for Black to set up a bind, and he tries to enliven the game on the kingside, which leads to the creation of weaknesses for both sides.

37 ... f6
38 fxe5

38 f5 gxf5 39 exf5 h4 was hardly any better for White.

38 ... fxe5

Now there is a weak white pawn at e4, and a black one at e5.

39 g3 f7 40 e2 e6 41 f1 f8

The bishop is transferred to h6 to attack White's queenside pawns, and the defence of the b5 pawn is taken on by the king itself.

42 e3

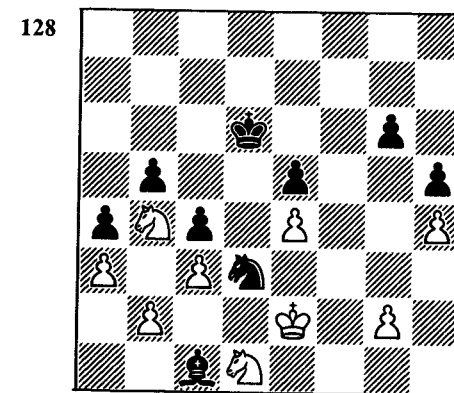
Not 42 a7? d6 43 xb5+ c6 44 a7+ b6 45 c8 b7, when the white knight is trapped.

42... d6 43 b4 c5 44 f3 h6 45 h4! d3

The end appears to be close. White cannot take the knight: 46 Bxd3? cxd3 47 g3 c5, and Black's king breaks through to the queenside pawns after he first exchanges on e3.

46 d1 c1
47 e2! (128)

A brilliant defence.



It transpires that after 47... Bxb2 48 Bxb2 d2 e3 49 d2 xa3 50 c2 a pretty positional draw arises. White plays his king between c2 and b1, and as soon as the black king goes to c5 he gives check at a6. On the kingside too there is no way of breaking through: on... g5 there follows g2-g3. And the pawn ending after the exchange on b4 is also drawn, despite Black's two extra pawns! Black is forced to retreat, and the battle flares up with renewed strength.

47 ... c5

Attacking the e4 pawn.

48 ♖f3 g5!

Forcing White to open the kingside, since 49 g3 fails to 49 ... g4+.

49 hxg5 ♙xg5
50 ♖a2

Now after ... ♖d3 and ... ♙c1 White can no longer construct a fortress, and so Keres defends the c1 square.

50 ... ♙e6 51 ♖f2 ♙f6 52 ♖d1 ♖d3 53 g3 ♙g6 54 ♙g2

Not 54 ♙e2 ♖c1+.

54 ... ♙d2 55 ♙f3 ♙g5 56 ♙e2 ♙e1 57 ♙f3 ♙d2

Do not hurry!

58 ♙e2 ♙e1
59 ♙f3 ♙f6!

Now Black pushes back the white king and breaks through to the e4 pawn. The game enters its decisive phase.

60 ♙g2 ♙g6 61 ♙f3 ♙g5 62 ♙g2 h4!

Securing the f4 square.

63 gxf4+ ♙f4!

Portisch has accurately calculated that he can stop the h-pawn, whereas the loss of the e4 pawn will be fatal for White.

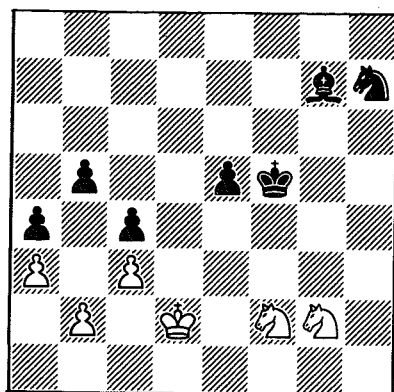
64 h5 ♙xe4 65 h6 ♖f4+ 66 ♙f1 ♙h4 67 ♖b4 ♙f6 68 ♙e1 ♙f3! 69 h7 ♙g7 70 ♖c2 ♖d5

It is time to pick up the h7 pawn.

71 ♙d2 ♖f6 72 ♖e1+ ♙e4 73 ♖f2+ ♙f5 74 ♖g2 ♖xh7 (129)

Finally, Black has won a pawn. White's queenside pawns are weak, and his second weakness is the existence of Black's passed e-pawn. Although the distance between these weaknesses is not great, Black's advantage is sufficient for a win.

129



75 ♖e3+ ♙e6
76 ♖e4 ♙h6!

It is essential to simplify the position. The knight ending is won.

77 ♙e2 ♙xe3 78 ♙xe3 ♖f6 79 ♖g5+ ♙d5 80 ♙f3 ♖h5

Heading for the b2 pawn.

81 ♖e4 ♖f4 82 ♖f6+ ♙c6 83 ♙e4 ♖d3 84 ♖g4 ♙d6 85 ♖h6 ♖xb2 86 ♖f7+ ♙c5 87 ♖xe5 ♖d1 88 ♖d7+ ♙d6

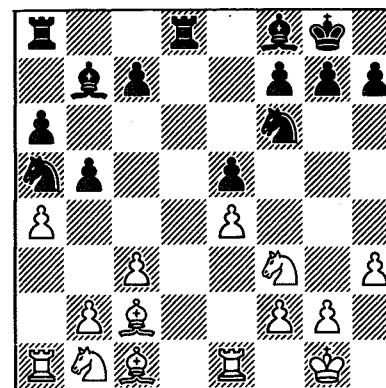
White resigns. A most interesting battle between two outstanding players, in which both attack and defence were of a very high standard.

Tseshkovsky-Romanishin
USSR Championship 1st League
Tashkent 1980

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♖f6 5 0-0 ♙e7 6 ♙e1 b5 7 ♙b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ♙b7 10 d4 ♙e8 11 a4 ♖a5 12 ♙c2 ♙f8 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 ♙xd8 ♙exd8 (130)

In the popular Zaitsev Variation, instead of the usual 11 ... h6 Romanishin played 11 ... ♖a5?. Tseshkovsky's reply was simple and convincing, taking play into a promising ending for White.

130



15 ♖bd2 ♖d7?

This leads to serious difficulties. It was preferable to defend the e-pawn with 15 ... ♖c6, although even then White has the better chances after 16 b4.

16 b4 ♖c4

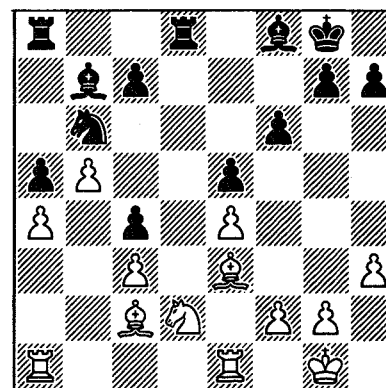
Sadly necessary: on 16 ... ♖c6 White has the highly unpleasant 17 ♙b3 h6 18 ♙d5.

17 ♖xc4 bxc4
18 ♙e3

The position has clarified. White has a serious advantage in view of the chronic weakness of the c4 pawn.

18 ... a5 19 b5 f6 20 ♖d2 ♖b6 (131)

131



Black would appear to have defended successfully. It does not seem possible to win the c4 pawn, and there are no other serious defects in Black's position. But where strategy is powerless, tactics often come to the rescue.

21 ♖xc4!

Black is let down by the position of his king at g8.

21 ... ♖xc4 22 ♙b3 ♙xe4 23 ♙xc4+ ♙d5 24 ♙xd5+ ♙xd5 25 ♙ed1 ♙ad8 26 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 27 ♙f1

The weak c4 pawn has disappeared, but other defects in Black's position have been revealed. The a5 pawn is hopelessly weak, and White's queenside pawn majority allows him easily to gain space and to create a passed pawn. The majority of White's pawns are on light squares, and Black's on dark squares. With dark-square bishops on the board, this heralds a lost bishop ending for Black.

27 ... ♙f7 28 ♙e2 ♙e6 29 c4 ♙d8 30 c5

The most energetic. 30 ♙d1 was also good.

30 ... ♙e7 31 ♙c1 ♙d5 32 c6 ♙d6 33 ♙d1+!

This drives the king back, since 33 ... ♙c4 loses to 34 b6.

33 ... ♙e6 34 ♙c5 f5 35 g4!

With great difficulty Black has managed to defend on the queenside, but against this blow on the other side of the board he is powerless.

35 ... g6 36 gxf5+ gxf5 37 ♙xd6!

After the opening of the g-file, White no longer needs to keep the bishops on. Tseshkovsky demonstrates a concrete approach to the position, and takes play

into a rook ending.

37 ... ♖xd6 38 ♖g1 ♖d4 39 ♖g7 ♖xa4
40 ♖xc7

White has created a pair of far-advanced connected passed pawns, which players usually call "self-propelled", since they can advance to the queening square without the help of their king, if they are supported from in front by the rook.

40 ... ♖b4
41 ♖b7 Resigns

So that the reader should not gain the deceptive impression that, in the Chigorin Variation of the Ruy Lopez, White always gains the better game by the exchange in the centre followed by the exchange of queens, we give an example where this exchange was inappropriate.

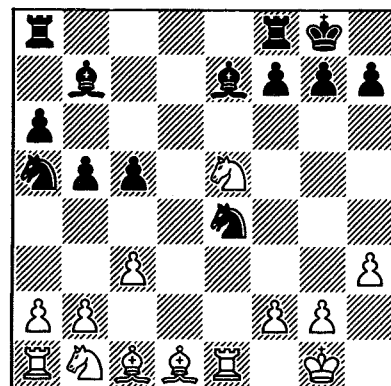
Grushevsky-Geller Moscow 1963

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♖b5 a6 4 ♖a4 ♖f6
5 0-0 ♖e7 6 ♖e1 b5 7 ♖b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3
♖a5 10 ♖c2 c5 11 d4 ♖b7 12 dxe5 dxe5 13
♖xe5 ♖xd1 14 ♖xd1 ♖xe4 (132)

Instead of the usual 12 ... ♖c7, Black chose the comparatively rare 11 ... ♖b7. White's simplest reply would have been 12 ♖bd2, when Black, according to opening theory, is unable to exploit the fact that he has not yet developed his queen at c7.

It is difficult to imagine what Grushevsky was guided by, when he exchanged on e5. Perhaps he thought that in this way he would easily gain a draw with one of the strongest grandmasters in the world at that time?

132



At any event, Black already stands better. All White's pieces, with the exception of the knight at e5, are grouped together on the back rank. Therefore he should have played 15 ♖d2!, with good chances of equalising. Instead after

15 ♖f3? ♖ad8!

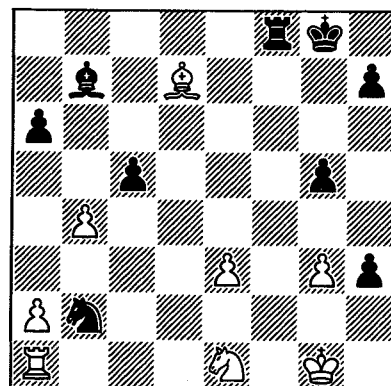
White's position began to deteriorate.

16 ♖f4 f5! 17 ♖a3 ♖h4! 18 g3 ♖f6
19 ♖g4

19 ... g5 was threatened.

19 ... fxe4 20 ♖xe4 gxf3 21 ♖c7 ♖de8
22 ♖f5 b4! 23 ♖c2 ♖c4 24 ♖d7 ♖xe1 + 25
♖xe1 ♖xb2 26 cxb4 ♖d4 27 ♖f4 g5! 28
♖e3 ♖xe3 29 fxe3 (133)

133



The attack, which Black has conducted without pausing for breath, is worthily concluded by a fine combination.

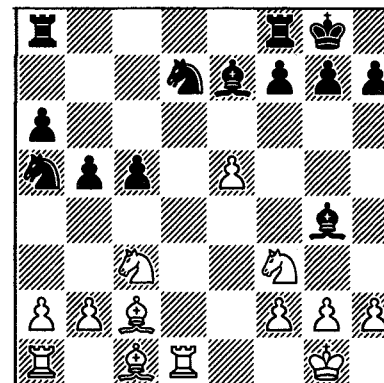
29 ... ♖f1+!
White resigns

Lasker-Bogoljubow Mährisch-Ostrau 1923

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♖b5 a6 4 ♖a4 ♖f6
5 0-0 ♖e7 6 ♖e1 b5 7 ♖b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 d4
exd4 10 cxd4 ♖g4 11 ♖c3 ♖a5 12 ♖c2 c5
13 dxc5 dxc5 14 e5 ♖xd1 15 ♖xd1 ♖d7
(134)

Black's opening play was not the best. 9 ... exd4?! was dubious, after which the white knight gained the excellent square c3. Nowadays Black automatically plays 9 ... ♖g4. Instead of 11 ... ♖a5?! he should have preferred 11 ... ♖xf3 or Tartakower's move 11 ... ♖e8, in each case with slightly the better game for White. Lasker's reaction - 13 dxc5! and 14 e5 - was concrete and very strong. Bogoljubow was unable to avoid the endgame, since on 14 ... ♖d7 there would have followed 15 ♖d5! with a strong initiative.

134



In the resulting ending White continues

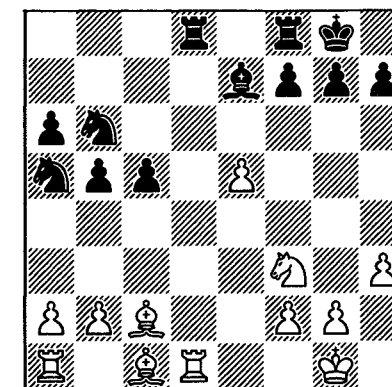
the tactical operation begun with 13 dxc5, and soon gains the advantage of the two bishops.

16 h3 ♖e6

Of course, not 16 ... ♖xf3? 17 ♖xd7.

17 ♖d5 ♖xd5 18 ♖xd5 ♖b6 19 ♖d1
♖ad8 (135)

135



Bogoljubow's last natural move provides the spur for further tactical actions by Lasker.

20 ♖g5!

Excellently played. In return for the two bishops, White gains other positional advantages.

20 ... f6

Practically forced. 20 ... ♖xg5 21 ♖xg5 h6 22 ♖h7+ and 23 ♖xd8 would have been bad, as would 20 ... ♖xd1+ 21 ♖xd1 ♖xg5 22 ♖xg5 h6 23 ♖f3, when White's control of the d-file gives him a decisive advantage.

21 exf6 ♖xf6
22 ♖xf6 gxf6

Black cannot avoid the spoiling of his kingside pawns, since 22 ... ♖xd1+ 23 ♖xd1 ♖xf6 24 ♖d8+! leads to the loss of a pawn.

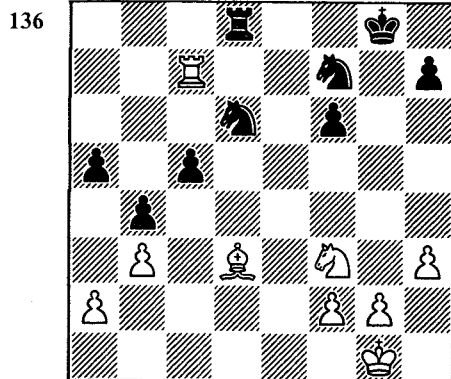
23 ♖ac1 ♜bc4 24 b3 ♜d6 25 ♖d5 ♜ab7
26 ♖cd1

White has doubled rooks on the d-file, and is in control both in the centre and on the kingside.

26 ... b4 27 ♙d3 ♖a8 28 ♖e1 a5 29 ♖e7
♖f7 30 ♖xf7 ♜xf7?

Black must aim at any price for counterplay on the queenside, and for the sake of this he should have sacrificed his h-pawn. As shown by Tartakower, after 30 ... ♜xf7! 31 ♙xh7 a4 32 ♙c2 ♜e6! 33 ♖d2 axb3 34 axb3 ♖a1+ 35 ♜h2 ♜a5 Black would have retained hopes of saving the game. But now Lasker forces his opponent totally onto the defensive.

31 ♖d7! ♜bd6
32 ♖c7 ♖d8 (136)



33 ♙a6!

The final subtlety. The immediate 33 ♖xc5? did not work because of 33 ... ♜b7 34 ♖c7 ♖xd3 35 ♖xb7 ♖d1+ 36 ♜h2 ♖a1, but now Black loses a pawn with an inferior position.

33 ... ♖a8
34 ♙e2 ♖c8

Here 34 ... a4 is no longer so strong, since the white knight acquires the d4

square after the elimination of the black c-pawn.

35 ♖a7 ♜e5 36 ♜xe5 fxe5 37 ♙g4 ♖c6
38 ♙d7 ♖b6 39 ♖xa5

Lasker has won a pawn only at a point when Black is unable to avert the loss of a second pawn.

39 ... ♜e4

39 ... ♜b7 40 ♖a8+ ♜f7 41 ♖b8 is hopeless for Black.

40 ♙f5 ♜c3
41 ♖xc5

Black's further resistance is pointless. The game concluded:

41 ... ♖b5 42 ♖c8+ ♜g7 43 ♖c7+ ♜f6
44 ♙xh7 ♖d5 45 ♖c4 ♜xa2 46 f4 exf4 47 ♖xf4+ ♜g7 48 ♙c2 ♖d2 49 ♖f2 ♖d4 50 ♙f5 ♜c3 51 ♙e6 ♜g6 52 ♜h2 ♜g5 53 ♖f5+ ♜g6 54 ♖c5 ♜f6 55 ♙c4 ♜g7 56 ♖c7+ ♜f6 57 ♖b7 ♜a2 58 ♜g3 Black resigns

Klundert-Keres
Bamberg 1968

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 d6 5
♙xc6+ bxc6 6 d4 ♙g4

Throughout his entire brilliant career, Keres' chief weapon in reply to 1 e4 was the Ruy Lopez. There is probably not a single variation of the Ruy Lopez which did not occur at least once in the games of this wonderful virtuoso. But there were two variations which he played more often than the others: the Chigorin Defence and the Steinitz Defence Deferred. And Keres almost always had his own way of interpreting these old variations. Thus in the position after White's 6th move, he employed not only the 'theoretical' 6 ... f6 (one recalls the splendid game Walther-

Keres, Zürich 1959), but also 6 ... exd4!?, and the move in the present game. Apart from Keres, another player who played 6 ... ♙g4 with fair success was Nezhmetdinov. Nowadays this move occurs rarely, and, as is often the case, the reason is unclear. Evidently modern-day players are not attracted by the prospect of going into an endgame with a broken queenside, although, as we will now see, Black has quite considerable compensation – two powerful bishops and the half-open b-file.

The chief virtue of 6 ... ♙g4 is that it poses concrete problems. White does not now have time to play quietly. If he delays taking the committing decision ("to take or not to take on e5?!"), then after 7 ♙e3?! ♖b8! (an important subtlety) 8 b3 f6! 9 ♖d3 ♜e7 10 ♜c3 ♜g6 11 0-0-0 ♙e7 12 ♖c4 ♖b7 Black has an excellent position – Mnatsakanian-Nezhmetdinov, Moscow 1959.

And so:

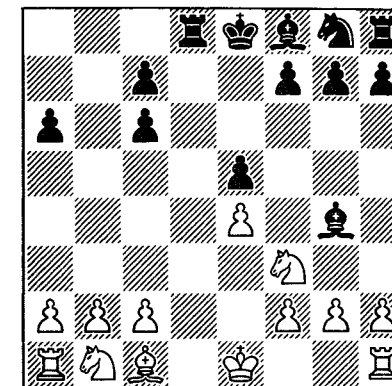
7 dxe5 dxe5
8 ♖xd8+

The attempt to avoid the exchange of queens does not give White anything. In the middlegame Black's active pieces promise him good play, for example: 8 ♜bd2 f6! 9 ♖e2 ♜e7 10 ♜b3 ♜g6 11 ♖c4 ♖d6 12 ♙d2 ♙e6=, Matulović-Nezhmetdinov, Sochi 1964, or 10 h3 ♙e6 11 ♜c4 ♖b8! 12 0-0 ♜g6, with the better game for Black, Jiminez-Keres, Moscow 1963.

8 ... ♖xd8 (137)

In the resulting ending, accurate play is demanded of both sides. White cannot take liberties and simply rely on his superior pawn formation on the queenside. The present game is a splendid example of the exploitation of Black's trumps. Keres'

137



play is a textbook example, in which all Black's moves have a single aim – that of developing his initiative.

9 ♜bd2

Probably the strongest here is 9 ♙e3, when Matanović recommends 9 ... f6!? followed by ... ♙e6, hindering the transference of White's queen's knight to the blockading squares c5 and a5. The game Cherepkov-Leonidov (Voronezh 1962) took an interesting course: 9 ♙e3 f6 10 ♜bd2 ♙d6 11 ♜b3 (11 ♜c4!?) 11 ... ♖b8 12 0-0-0 ♖b4!? 13 ♙c5 ♖xb3 14 ♙xd6 ♖xf3 15 gxf3 ♙xf3 16 ♙xc7 ♙xh1 17 ♖xh1 ♜d7. The ending is slightly more favourable for White, but that is all.

Weaker is 9 ... ♙d6?! 10 ♜bd2 ♜e7 11 ♜c4 f6 12 ♜fd2 followed by the transfer of the knight to a5, when White has the advantage (Cosulich-Unzicker, Bern 1971).

9 ... f6
10 ♜c4 ♙e6!

The knight move to a5 is ruled out.

11 ♜e3 ♙c5!

This is stronger than 11 ... ♖b8, which, however, is not bad, e.g. 12 b3 ♜h6 13 ♙d2 ♜f7 14 ♙a5 ♖b5 15 ♙c3 ♙a3 with sufficient counterplay, Zagorevsky-Leonidov,

Voronezh 1962.

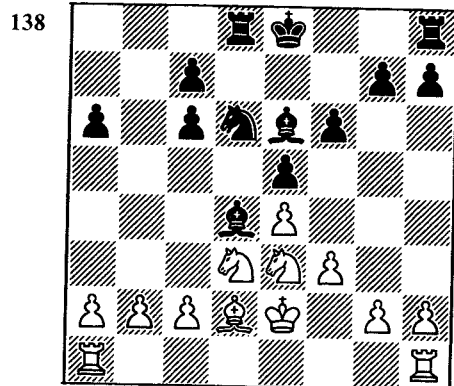
12 ♖d2 ♜e7
13 ♜e2

After 13 0-0 Black would most probably have played 13 ... ♜c8, as in the game.

13 ... ♜c8!

Keres finds himself the best post for his knight.

14 ♜e1 ♖d4 15 ♜d3 ♜d6 16 f3 (138)



White has practically completed the mobilisation of his forces, while Black has still to castle. Many players in Keres' place would have done just this, but then White would have succeeded in setting up a solid defensive line by 17 c3, 18 b3, and if necessary 19 ♜b2. Keres finds another possibility, which allows Black to maintain his initiative.

16 ... a5!
17 c3

Of course, not 17 ♖xa5?? because of 17 ... ♖xe3 and 18 ... ♜c4+.

17 ... ♖b6 18 b3 a4! 19 c4

Now the black pieces acquire an 'eternal' post at d4, but it is difficult to suggest anything better for White.

19 ... ♖d4 20 ♖ab1 f5! 21 exf5 ♜xf5 22 ♜c2 0-0

Only now does Keres permit his king to castle. All Black's preceding play has been devoted to maintaining the initiative.

23 g4

White tries to clarify the position and makes further concessions, but even after other continuations his position would have been unpleasant.

23 ... ♜d6 24 ♜xd4 exd4 25 ♖bf1

Klundert is intending to take his king to c2 and achieve comparative coordination of his pieces, but this meets with an energetic reply by Keres.

25 ... ♖b8!

The prelude to a tactical overture.

26 ♜c5 axb3!
27 axb3 ♖xb3!!

The finale.

28 ♜xb3

28 ♜xe6 ♖e8 is equally hopeless.

28 ... ♖xc4+ 29 ♜f2 ♖xb3! 30 ♖b4 c5!
31 ♖a3 c4 32 ♖e1 c3 33 ♖e7 ♖d5
White resigns

Simagin-Keres
Moscow 1963

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♖b5 a6 4 ♖a4 ♜f6
5 0-0 d6 6 ♖xc6+ bxc6 7 d4 exd4 8 ♜xd4
♖e7 9 e5 c5 10 ♜d3 dxe5 11 ♜xd8+ ♖xd8
12 ♜xe5 ♖e7 (139)

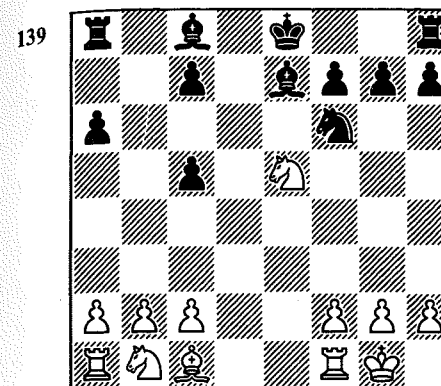
This variation with its compromised queenside pawn structure is not especially popular with modern players. However, Keres used to uphold this position with

Keres tries to take the game along these lines, but he chooses an inaccurate move order, and overlooks a tactical blow.

16 ♜g6! fxe6 17 ♖xe6 ♜f7 18 ♖ae1
♖fe8 19 ♖xf6 ♖xf6

19 ... gxf6 20 ♜d5 is hopeless.

20 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 21 ♖xe8 ♜xe8 22 ♜d1
(141)

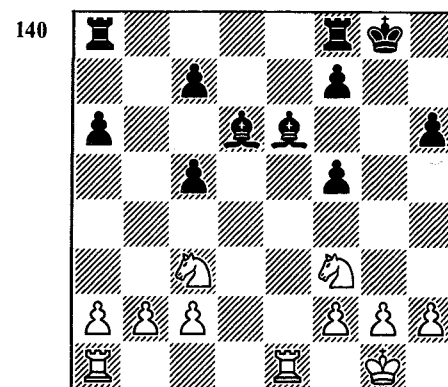


some success. His game with Simagin was a first and unsuccessful try: 12 ... ♖e7? leads to a difficult position.

Subsequently Keres improved Black's play: 12 ... ♖e6! 13 ♖e1 ♜d7 14 ♜d3 0-0 with equal chances, Sakharov-Keres, 33rd USSR Championship, Tallinn 1965.

13 ♖e1 ♖e6 14 ♜c3 0-0 15 ♖g5 h6?

White was intending to play 16 ♜c6. Since there is no satisfactory defence against this move, Black should perhaps have played 15 ... ♖d6 16 ♖xf6 gxf6 17 ♜f3 f5 (140), when a picturesque position is reached, in which Black's two strong bishops battle against two enemy knights, but he has a whole army of six pawn 'invalids'.



As a result of Black's inaccuracy on move 15, the game has gone into a technical knight against bishop ending, where Black's pawn formation is hopelessly ruined and he has not the slightest gleam of counterplay. The next few moves by both sides are natural and obvious.

22 ... ♜d7 23 ♜f1 ♜c6 24 ♜e2 ♖e5 25
h3 ♜d5 26 ♜e3+ ♜e4 27 c3 h5 28 ♜c4
♖f4 29 g3 ♖g5 30 f3+ ♜d5 31 ♜d3 ♖e7
32 ♜e3+ ♜e6 33 ♜e4

33 ♜c4 was premature on account of 33 ... h4 followed by 34 ... ♜e5.

33 ... g5 34 ♜c4 g6 35 g4 hxg4 36 fxe4
♖f6 37 a3 ♖e7 38 a4 ♖f6 39 ♜d2 ♖e7 40
♜f3 ♖f6 41 ♜d2 ♜d6 42 ♜c4+ ♜e6 43
♜a5

White delays taking positive action, in order to disorientate the opponent and

tire him out. In some cases ♖b7 is now a threat.

43 ... ♖d6 44 ♖d3 ♖d5 45 ♖c4 c6?!

It is hard to criticise Keres for this move, but nevertheless White has achieved his aim with little bloodshed. 45 ... ♙e7 was preferable, forcing the opponent to work for victory. After 46 ♖e3+ ♖e5 47 ♖c4 ♖e4 (47 ... c6 48 ♖d3 ♖f4 49 ♖c4 ♖g3 50 ♖e4) 48 ♖d5 ♙d6 49 a5 with the idea of 50 b4 White would have had every chance of winning, but Black would have

gained some counterplay. Now the game is decided by technique alone.

46 ♖b6+ ♖d6 47 a5 ♙d8 48 ♖c4 ♙c7 49 ♖a4 ♙xa5 50 ♖xc5 ♙b6 51 ♖xa6 ♙e3 52 ♖b4

The extra pawn assures White of an easy win.

52 ... ♙c1 53 b3 ♙f4 54 ♖c2 ♙e5 55 ♖d4 ♙f6 56 b4 ♙e7 57 ♖f3 ♙f6 58 ♖d3 c5 59 b5 ♖d5 60 c4+ ♖e6 61 ♖e4 ♖d6 62 b6 ♖c6 63 ♖e5+ ♖b7 64 ♖d7 ♙d4 65 ♖d5 **Black resigns**

French Defence

The French Defence is currently the second most popular of the semi-open games, after the Sicilian Defence. With its wealth of strategic ideas, wide range of positions, and chances for Black to take the initiative, it attracts players of a variety of styles and tastes. As early as the third move White has to choose between 3 ♖c3, 3 ♖d2, 3 e5 and 3 exd5, which differ considerably from one another as regards the character of the resulting play. For his part, Black with his third move can 'call the tune' in reply to the most popular moves 3 ♖c3 and 3 ♖d2.

A distinguishing feature of all 'French' set-ups, both in the middlegame, and in the endgame, is the pawn formation. There are a variety of pawn formations in the French Defence, but each has its clear-cut features, characteristic of this or that opening variation. Therefore the authors did not have any particular difficulty in classifying the endings, and they have adhered to the generally-accepted system of classification by opening variation. In those rare instances where one and the same pawn formation can arise from different variations, we have relied only on the pawn formation. Hence the names: 'Rubinstein Formation' or 'Exchange Variation Formation'. Forecasting the chances of the two sides in the French endgame can be even more difficult than in the Sicilian, and so a knowledge of standard procedures can significantly facilitate the solving of problems facing a player in an actual game.

EXCHANGE VARIATION FORMATION

The exchange in the centre exd5, made by White on the third move or later (e.g. 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♙b4 4 exd5, or 3 ♖c3 ♖f6 4 exd5), does not normally give him any advantage. Usually Black replies ... exd5 (only in the McCutcheon Variation 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖f6 4 ♙g5 ♙b4 after 5 exd5 is 5 ... ♞xd5 correct), and a symmetric pawn formation arises. The open e-file heralds an exchange of the heavy pieces, and the majority of games end painlessly in a draw. The majority, but not all. Often one side will succeed in taking the initiative, since opportunities for playing for a win are by no means exhausted. After 3 exd5 exd5 the pawn formation is the same as in Petroff's Defence (1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖f6 3 ♖xe5 d6 4 ♖f3 ♖xe4 5 d4 d5). Morphy, and later Chigorin, interpreted the position after the exchange in the centre as an open game, and with considerable success.

On the other hand, there is the possibility of transposing into positions with an isolated d-pawn (4 c4 or 4 ♙d3 c5), which also enlivens the play.

In the variation 3 ♖c3 ♙b4 4 exd5 exd5 Black can avoid symmetric development. The 'Svenonius rule' – if ♖f3 ♖e7!, if ♖e2 ♖f6! – was widely employed in the games of Nimzowitsch, who was the first to demonstrate the advantage to Black of exchanging the light-square bishops after 5 ♙d3 ♖c6! 6 ♖e2 ♖ge7 7 0-0 ♙f5!

Black also has fully equal chances in

the sharp struggle resulting from castling on opposite sides.

As for the 'Exchange Variation endgame', positions with an advantage for one of the sides normally arise when the pawn formation is transformed, e.g. after an exchange of pieces on e5 and the capture dxe5, or after the exchange ... ♖xc3, bxc3.

We will conclude this brief introduction with a profound observation by Keres: "Despite the rather simple nature of the position, in the Exchange Variation neither side can take the liberty of aimlessly developing his pieces, in the expectation that a draw is inevitable".

Ivashin-Boleslavsky
Kuybyshev 1942

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖b4 4 exd5 exd5 5 ♖d3

At the Interzonal Tournament in Amsterdam (1964) Larsen stunned Portisch with the new move 5 ♖f3?!, leading to very sharp play with castling on opposite sides – and this in the 'boring' Exchange Variation! The 'premier' was a triumph: after 5 ... ♖c6 6 ♖b5! ♖e7 7 ♖f4 0-0 8 0-0-0! ♖a5? 9 ♖ge2 c6 10 ♖d3 b5 11 h4! White began an attack and concluded it brilliantly on the 33rd move.

The innovation, however, proved short-lived. Soon Antoshin (in a game with Muratov, Frunze 1964) introduced the very strong move 5 ... ♖e7+!, when it transpires that Black takes the initiative, for example:

6 ♖e3 ♖f6 7 h3 (on 7 ♖d3 comes the powerful 7 ... c5! with advantage to Black, Mestrovic-Marić, Kralevo 1967) 7 ... ♖e4 8 ♖e2 ♖c6 9 0-0-0 ♖xc3 10 ♖xc3 ♖xc3 11 bxc3 ♖e6 12 ♖g3?! 0-0-0! 13 ♖xg7 ♖dg8 14 ♖h6 ♖f5 15 ♖d2 ♖a3,

with a winning attack for Black (Lehmann-Farago, Kiev 1978).

5 ... ♖c6(!) 6 ♖e2 (6 ♖f3 ♖g4!) 6 ... ♖ge7!

Black prepares the advantageous exchange of light-square bishops.

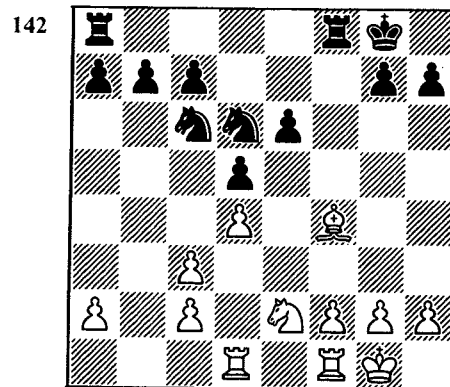
7 0-0 ♖f5
8 ♖xf5

8 ♖g3 is slightly better, although after 8 ... ♖g6! 9 ♖ce2 ♖d7 10 f4 f5 11 a3 ♖d6 the game is level (Spielmann-Nimzowitsch, Copenhagen 1923).

8 ... ♖xf5 9 ♖d3 ♖d7 10 ♖f4

This move, instead of 10 ♖d1, was suggested by Alekhine after his World Championship Match with Capablanca (Buenos Aires 1927), in which the first game, the only one from the match to begin with 1 e4, continued 10 ♖d1 0-0 11 ♖e3 ♖xe3 12 ♖xe3 ♖fe8, and Black already stood a little better. By 10 ♖f4 White attacks the c7 pawn, to which 10 ... 0-0-0 was a satisfactory reply, but Boleslavsky plays a more interesting move.

10 ... 0-0! 11 ♖h3? ♖e6 12 ♖ad1 ♖xc3 13 bxc3 ♖d6 14 ♖xe6 fxe6 (142)



In reply to 10 ... 0-0 Ivashin should

have gone in for the drawing variation 11 ♖xc7 ♖xc3 12 ♖xc3 (12 bxc3 ♖ac8 13 ♖f4 ♖a5, and Black has an excellent game – Boleslavsky) 12 ... ♖b4! 13 ♖b5 ♖xb5 14 ♖xb5 ♖xc2 15 ♖ad1. But in striving to seize the initiative, White overstepped the mark and overlooked the opponent's strong reply 11 ... ♖e6!, after which 12 ♖xc7 ♖fxd4 13 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 14 ♖d3 ♖xc3 no longer gave him equality.

As a result the game has gone into an ending with an obvious advantage to Black. The weak e6 pawn can easily be defended by the black pieces, whereas White's chronic weaknesses on the queen-side will cause him constant difficulties.

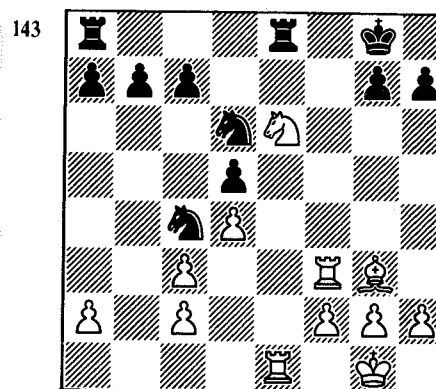
15 ♖g3 ♖a5 16 ♖f4 ♖f7 17 ♖fe1 ♖fe8 18 ♖d3

White aims at all costs to obtain counterplay. He threatens 19 ♖f3 followed by the winning of the e6 pawn.

18 ... ♖ac4!

Of course, Boleslavsky could easily have parried the opponent's threats by 18 ... ♖e4, but he prefers to sacrifice a pawn, having correctly assessed the consequences of the tactical complications.

19 ♖f3 ♖g8
20 ♖xe6 (143)



Declining to take the pawn would have been an admission by White that his preceding manoeuvres were pointless.

20 ... h6!

Suppressing the opponent's latent counterplay. It seems that by 20 ... ♖f7 with the threat of 21 ... ♖g5 Black could have advantageously exploited the pin on the e-file, but then White has a surprising saving possibility: 21 ♖fe3! ♖xe3 22 ♖xc7. After the move in the game White cannot carry out a similar idea, since after 21 ♖xd6 cxd6 22 ♖fe3 ♖xe3 23 ♖c7 ♖ec8 24 ♖xa8 ♖f5 he loses a piece (Boleslavsky).

21 ♖h4

White prevents the doubling of the enemy rooks on the e-file, but Black finds another way to exploit the pin.

21 ... a5!

Of course, 21 ... g5? did not work, on account of the weakening of the f6 square.

22 ♖e2 ♖a6
23 h3

23 ♖f1 ♖b6 24 g4 ♖e4 would not have saved White.

23 ... ♖f7! 24 ♖f4 ♖xe2 25 ♖xe2 ♖e6!

The tactical operation, begun by Black on his 18th move, has come to a successful conclusion. White loses material.

26 ♖f4 ♖e1+ 27 ♖h2 g5 28 ♖xd5 ♖d2! 29 ♖f6+ ♖h8 30 ♖d3 ♖f1+ 31 ♖g1 gxh4 32 g4 ♖e3+ 33 ♖h2 ♖c4

Apart from his extra piece, Black also has a great positional advantage. The game concluded:

34 ♖d5 ♖g5 35 ♖f4 ♖g8 36 ♖g6 ♖e2 37 ♖g2 ♖xc2 38 ♖xh4 ♖xa2 39 ♖f5 ♖h7

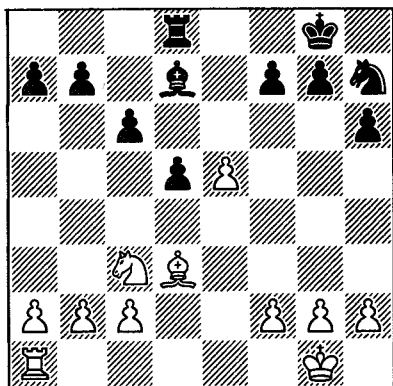
40 h4 ♖e4 41 ♜f3 a4 42 d5 a3 43 ♜d4 ♜b2
44 ♜f7+ ♜g8 45 ♜xc7 a2 46 ♜c8+ ♜f7 47
♜a8 ♜xf2+ 48 ♜h3 ♜xc3 49 ♖e6 ♜e7
White resigns

Alekhine-Yates
Hastings 1925/26

1 d4 e6 2 e4 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜b4 4 exd5 exd5 5
♜d3 ♜f6 6 ♜g5 0-0 7 ♖e2 ♜e8 8 0-0 c6 9
♜g3 ♜bd7 10 ♜h5 ♜e7 11 ♜e1 h6 12 ♜h4
♜xh5 13 ♜xe7 ♜xe7 14 ♜xh5 ♜f6 15
♜h4 ♜d7 16 ♜e5 ♜xe5 17 dxe5 ♜h7 18
♜xd8+ ♜xd8 (144)

Compared with the previous game, Black has played the opening quite unpretentiously. And although Yates has 'simple-mindedly' brought his pieces out, Alekhine has not managed to gain any tangible advantage. In Alekhine's opinion, instead of 10 ♜h5 a more promising continuation for White was 10 ♜f3 h6 11 ♜d2.

144



At the cost of great simplification White has managed to change the pawn formation and to prevent the further exchange of heavy pieces along the e-file, but he has been unable to disturb the balance in his favour. The comment of Alekhine himself is of interest: "In the endgame

which follows the pawn on e5 exerts a certain pressure on the opponent's position, and the main reason why Black loses the game is that he neglects to exchange off this pawn in time".

19 f4 ♜e8?
20 ♜f2 ♜f8?

Black demonstrates that he does not properly understand the position. As is evident from Alekhine's comment, here or on the previous move he should have played ... f6.

21 b4!

A profound move. White begins a minority attack on the queenside, with the aim of giving the opponent weaknesses on that part of the board and of neutralising his superiority there.

21 ... ♖e6 22 g3 ♜f8 23 ♜e1!

By the threat of 23 f5 Alekhine provokes a weakening of the opponent's pawns on the kingside.

23 ... g6 24 b5 ♜c5 25 bxc6 bxc6 26 ♜b1
♜e7 27 ♜b4

Alekhine prevents the further advance of the enemy king towards the queenside. On 27 ... ♜d8? there would have followed 28 ♜a4!

27 ... h5
28 ♜e2

White has weakened the opponent's pawns to a certain extent, and no longer objects to the exchange of rooks. 28 ♜a4? would have been a blunder in view of 28 ... a5.

28 ... ♜d8 29 ♜b8+ ♜e7 30 ♜xe8+
♜xe8 31 ♜e3

"Intending 32 c4. If, however, 31 ... ♜d7 (best) then first 32 a3!, e.g. 32 ... ♜e6

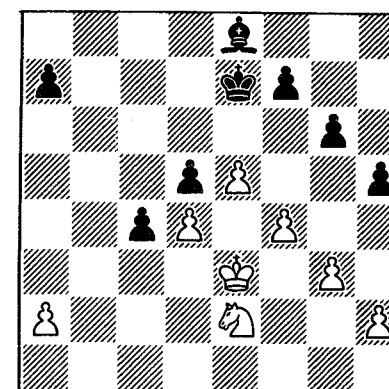
33 ♜d4, or 32 ... ♜e6 33 c4 or, finally, 32 ... ♜xd3 33 cxd3 c5 34 d4 c4 35 ♜c3 ♜e6 (c6) 36 f5!, always with an advantage for White" (Alekhine).

31 ... ♜xd3?

The difference in class between Alekhine and Yates shows up especially strikingly in the endgame. Now White is able to give his opponent an object-lesson on the theme "good knight against bad bishop in the endgame".

32 cxd3 c5
33 d4! c4 (145)

145



34 f5!

The start of the decisive offensive.

34 ... g5!

34 ... gxf5 35 ♜f4 is hopeless for Black.

35 h4! f6! 36 hxf5! fxf5 37 ♜g1! ♜d7

On 37 ... h4 there would have followed

38 g4 ♜a4 39 ♜e2!, ♜h3 and ♜xg5, winning.*

38 f6+! ♜e8

38 ... ♜f7 39 ♜f3 ♜g6 40 ♜xg5 would not have saved Black.

39 ♜f3 g4
40 ♜h4

White's active play has been crowned with complete success. He has a decisive positional advantage, and all that remains is to transfer his knight to f4.

40 ... ♜e6 41 ♜g6 ♜f7 42 ♜f4 ♜d7 43 ♜e2!

Black only has moves with his a-pawn.

43 ... a5 44 ♜e3 ♜g8 45 ♜xh5 ♜f7 46 ♜f4 ♜g8 47 ♜e2 ♜e6 48 ♜f4 ♜e8 49 ♜g5 ♜f7 50 ♜c3 ♜f8 51 ♜g6 ♜g8 52 f7+! ♜f8 53 ♜f6 ♜xf7 54 e6 ♜h5 55 ♜xd5 ♜e8 56 ♜c3 Black resigns

NIMZOWITSCH (ADVANCE) VARIATION

After the initial moves characterising the French Defence, 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5, White can immediately play 3 e5, giving a closed type of game.

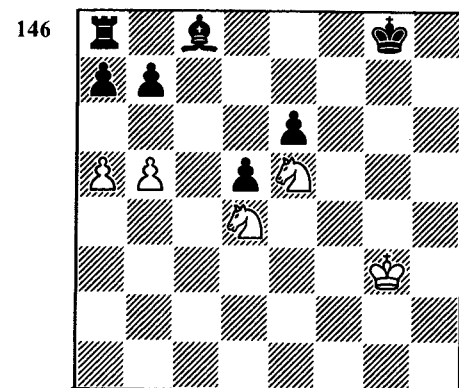
The position arising after 3 e5 has been known for a long time: this move was advocated back in the last century by Louis Paulsen, an outstanding expert on positional play. Valuable contributions to

* This was the line given by Alekhine, but it was later shown by Dr Dünhaupt that Black can draw with 39 ... c3! (cf. p.77 of Alekhine's *On the Road to the World Championship 1923-1927*, Pergamon, 1984). The authors therefore suggest an alternative winning line. Instead of 38 g4 White should play 38 f6+!. Now 38 ... ♜f7 or 38 ... ♜e6 loses to 39 gxf4 gxf4 40 ♜f3 h3 41 ♜g5+ and 42 ♜xh3, while 38 ... ♜d7 is bad, if only because of 39 g4. There only remains 38 ... ♜f8. Now comes 39 e6! ♜h5! (if 39 ... ♜g6 40 g4!, or 39 ... hxf3 40 f7! ♜xf7 - otherwise the manoeuvre ♜f3-e5 is decisive - 41 exf7 g2 42 ♜e2 ♜xf7 - 42 ... c3 43 ♜d3 - 43 ♜f2 ♜f6 44 ♜xg2 ♜f5 45 ♜f3, and White wins) 40 gxf4 gxf4 41 ♜h3 ♜g4 42 ♜g5! ♜f5 43 ♜f4 ♜g6 44 ♜e5 c3 45 e7+ ♜e8 46 ♜e6 c2 47 f7+, and wins. In any case, it appears that the endgame is much closer than was originally thought. (Translator's note)

this variation were made by Steinitz, but it was studied most deeply by Nimzowitsch, who called 3 e5 his "spiritual property". After Black's natural reaction, 3 ... c5, White is faced with the problem of his d4 pawn. The three great players solved it in different ways: Paulsen supported his pawn with 4 c3, while Steinitz usually played 4 dxc5, in order, after supporting with all means possible his e5 pawn, to then transfer his knight to the blockading square d4 – this was the theme of the brilliant positional game Steinitz-Showalter (Vienna 1898).

Although 4 c3 occurred in Nimzowitsch's games, his chief creations (4 ♖f3 and 4 ♗g4) served what was then his new understanding of the role of the centre, namely that the existence of central pawns could be replaced by piece pressure on the central squares. Nimzowitsch frequently exchanged not only his d4 pawn, but also his e5 pawn, occupying the vacated squares with pieces.

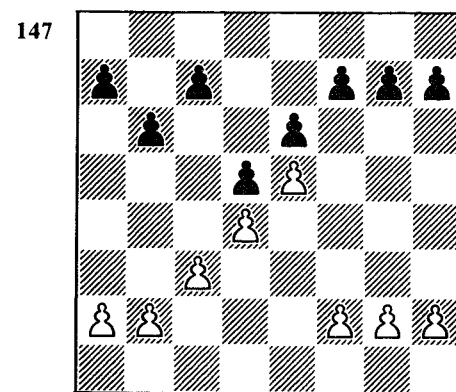
In his *My System* Nimzowitsch gives what was later to become a famous instructional position, where "... the crippling effect has shifted from the blockaded pawn further back to its rear":



It is not difficult to establish the 'French' origin of this hypothetical position. It has

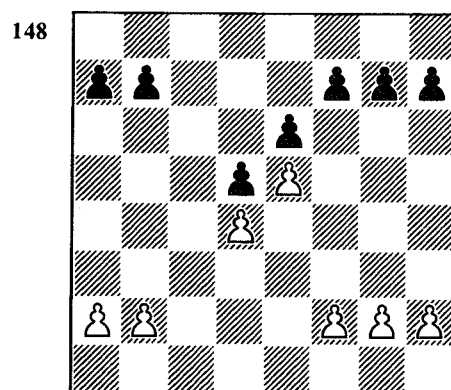
to be said, however, that the variations developed by Nimzowitsch, 4 ♖f3 and especially 4 ♗g4, lead to such sharp situations that things rarely conclude here in the endgame.

Usually an endgame structure arises from Paulsen's line in two modifications:



(without ...c5xd4, c3xd4)

and in the more common form:



We will consider both instances.

In conclusion we should point out that, when he plays e4-e5 on the 3rd move, White is preparing for an attack rather than aiming for the endgame. The absence of the queens blunts the f2-f4-f5 breakthrough and the strength of the piece

attack on the kingside; at the same time, as the endgame approaches, the importance of the open c-file (after ... c5xd4, c3xd4) and pressure on the queenside increases. A very important factor is the presence or absence of the light-square bishops: the exchange of Black's 'French' bishop rids him of a passive piece and at the same time seriously weakens the light squares in the opponent's position.

Vajda-Nimzowitsch Kecskemet 1927

1 e4 ♖c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 e6

The game, begun with the Nimzowitsch Defence, now switches to French Defence lines, and to one of the least studied and rarely employed variations: 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖c6. The introduction of this variation into tournament play is associated in particular with the name of Nimzowitsch, who regularly played this way in the 1920s. By "audaciously blocking" (as Nimzowitsch put it) the c-pawn and for a long time putting off advancing ... c5, Black of course risks suffocating from lack of space. But for White to transform this undoubted space advantage into a win is far from simple. Black's counterplay, based on attacking the d4 pawn and on undermining the e5 pawn by ... f6, may prove very dangerous, for example: 4 ♖f3 ♖f6 5 e5 ♖e4 6 ♖e2 (6 ♖d3!) 6 ... f6! 7 exf6 ♗xf6 8 ♖e3 ♖d7 9 c3 0-0-0, with excellent prospects for Black.

4 e5

After this move it can be said that ... ♖c6 has justified itself – Black now has a clear-cut plan of development. The natural 4 ♖f3 is more dangerous, for example: 4 ... ♖f6 5 e5 ♖e4 (this move is the

point of Nimzowitsch's idea – Black is indirectly attacking the d4 pawn; 5 ... ♖d7 would be passive and bad) 6 ♖d3! ♖xc3?! (6 ... ♖b4! is more critical) 7 bxc3 ♖e7 8 h4 h6 9 ♖h2! b6! 10 ♗g4 with advantage to White in Gligorić-Benko, Belgrade 1964. Nezhmetdinov's plan of 4 ... ♖f6 5 exd5 also ensures White a slight advantage. Thus in the well-known game Fischer-Petrosian (Candidates Match, Buenos Aires 1971) after 5 ... exd5 6 ♖b5! ♖g4 7 h3 ♖xf3 8 ♗xf3 ♖e7 9 ♖g5 White seized the initiative.

4 ... ♖ge7!
5 ♖f3 ♖b6!

The start of a profound plan for gaining control of the light squares. Vajda in turn tries to weaken the dark squares on the opponent's kingside by the manoeuvre ♖e2-g3-h5.

6 ♖e2 ♖a6
7 c3

Another of Nimzowitsch's opponents, Brinckmann (Niendorf 1927), carried out his plan more directly: 7 ♖g3 ♖xf1 8 ♖xf1 h5 9 ♖g5 ♗c8! (a brilliant move; Black defends his h5 pawn by a counter-attack on the d4 pawn – in the variation 10 ♖h4 ♗a6+ 11 ♖g1 ♗a4! 12 c3 ♗xd1+ he is excellently placed) 10 ♗d3 ♖g6 11 c3 h4, with chances for both sides.

7 ... ♗d7 8 ♖g3 ♖xf1 9 ♖xf1 h5 10 ♖g5 ♖a5!

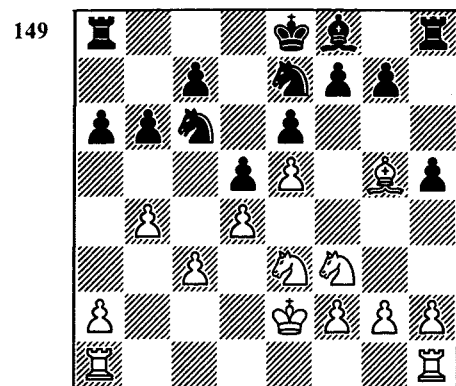
Black gradually gains control of the light squares.

11 ♗e2 ♖a6!
12 ♖e3 ♗b5

Nimzowitsch is planning to go into the endgame.

13 b4 ♗xe2+

14 ♖xe2 ♜ac6 (149)



The main feature of the diagram position is the blocked pawn structure. Not a single pawn has disappeared from the board, and much depends on the skill of the two players in pawn play. White's central pawn wedge creates the preconditions for an advance of his kingside pawns, while Black can counter with ... c5 or ... a5 on the opposite side of the board.

15 ♗e1 ♜g6 16 ♜d3 ♗e7 17 ♗xe7 ♜cxe7 18 f4?

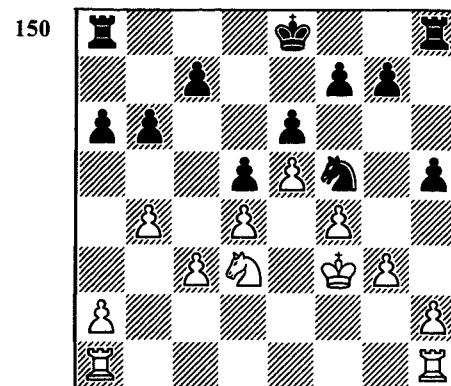
Too direct. Now Black succeeds for a time in holding up the advance of the opponent's kingside pawns. 18 g3 was preferable.

18 ... ♜h4!

"Securing control of f5. Had White prevented this manoeuvre by playing 18 g3, there would have followed 18 ... ♜f8! and then ... ♜d7, ... 0-0, ... ♗fe8 and finally ... c5 with an excellent game for Black" (Nimzowitsch). This gives a clear explanation of Black's plan, yet White too would not have been standing still. During this time he would have managed to play h2-h3, g3-g4, and f2-f4, and it is probable that his offensive would have proved more effective. At any event, 18 g3

was much stronger than the game continuation.

19 g3 ♜hf5 20 ♜xf5 ♜xf5 21 ♖f3 (150)



White intends to carry out his kingside offensive, but with his knight at f5 Black has an effective counter: in reply to h2-h3 he has ... h4 and ... ♜g3. Nimzowitsch, anticipating the opponent's plans, creates counterplay on the queenside, which will have the greater effect, the stronger White persists in his aggressive intentions.

21 ... a5!
22 a3

On 22 b5 Black has the unpleasant 22... c6 23 bxc6 ♗c8.

22 ... ♖d7
23 h3?

The impression is that Vajda sees only his own play, and completely forgets about the opponent's counterplay.

23 ... axb4!
24 ♜xb4

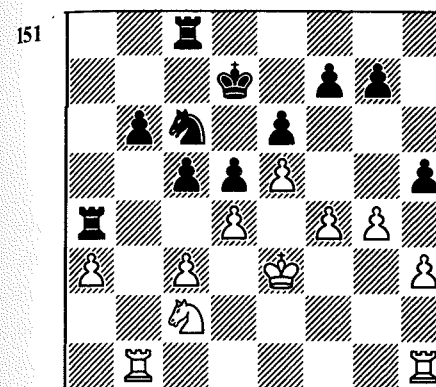
Only at this point did White realise that on 24 axb4 there follows 24 ... h4 25 g4 ♜g3 26 ♗hc1 ♜e4, when he must either concede the a-file to the opponent or lose his c-pawn, which are equally bad.

24 ... ♗a4

Here too 24 ... h4 would have been very strong, but the move played is also good.

25 g4 ♜e7
26 ♖e3 c5!

Black is no longer satisfied with winning the a3 pawn, since after 26 ... hxg4 27 hxg4 ♗xh1 28 ♗xh1 ♗xa3 29 ♜d3 White gains counterplay on the h-file.

27 ♜c2 ♜c6
28 ♗ab1 ♗c8? (151)

A time trouble error. As shown by Nimzowitsch, he could have won easily by 28 ... cxd4+ 29 cxd4 ♗c4 30 ♖d3 ♗c8 31 ♗xb6 ♜xe5+ 32 fxe5 ♗c3+ 33 ♖d2 ♗xc2+ 34 ♖e3 g5.

29 ♗xb6 cxd4+ 30 cxd4 ♜xe5 31 fxe5 ♗xc2 32 ♗b3

As a result of Black's mistake, his advantage has almost completely disappeared.

32 ... hxg4
33 hxg4

An automatic move, but stronger, as shown by Nimzowitsch, was 33 ♗f1 ♗h2 34 ♗xf7+ ♖e8 35 ♗bb7 ♗xa3+ 36 ♖f4 ♗f2+ 37 ♖xg4 ♗xf7 38 ♗b8+ ♖d7 39

♗b7+, and White gains a draw.

33 ... ♗g2
34 ♗b7+?

A mistake, which leads to defeat. It was essential to play 34 ♖f3 followed by 35 ♗h7, when White should not lose.

34 ... ♖c6 35 ♗hb1 ♗xa3+ 36 ♖f4 ♗a6
37 ♖g5

On 37 ♖f3 there would have followed 37 ... ♗g1.

37 ... f6+! 38 exf6 gxf6+ 39 ♖xf6 ♗xg4
40 ♗e7 ♗f4+ 41 ♖xe6 ♗xd4

The only pawn on the board secures the win for Black.

42 ♖f5 ♗aa4 43 ♗e6+ ♖c5 44 ♖f6 ♗f4+ 45 ♖e7 ♗a7+ 46 ♖e8 ♗e4! White resigns

Mohrlock-Ivkov

Vrnjačka Banja 1967

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 b6

Along with the natural (and, probably, strongest) continuation 3 ... c5, the text move is sometimes employed, with the aim of immediately exchanging the light-square bishops. Here the undermining of White's pawn 'wedge' by ... c5 is deferred until later, or sometimes not carried out at all. Despite the apparent slowness of Black's actions, his plan is not easily refuted, and excessively abrupt play for an attack can end dismally for White: 4 f4?! ♖d7 5 ♜f3 ♜e7 6 a4?! ♗a6 7 ♗xa6 ♜xa6 8 a5 b5 9 0-0 c5 10 dxc5 ♜f5 11 ♜c3 ♗xc5+ 12 ♖h1 h5, and Black is excellently placed (Adler-Gemrekely, USSR 1965).

Usually White has time to strengthen his position in the centre with 4 c3 (however, Barcza's idea of 4 c4!? is also interesting),

and gain space on both flanks, in order to attack the black king, wherever it should take shelter: 3 ... ♖e7 4 ♖f3 b6 5 c3 ♙d7 6 ♖bd2 a5 7 h4 h5 8 ♖g5 ♖a6 9 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 10 ♖f1 ♖f5 11 ♖g3! ♖xg3 12 ♖xg3, with the initiative for White (Kupreichik-Vaganian, USSR Cup, Kiev 1984), or 3 ... b6 4 ♖f3 ♙d7 5 c4 ♖e7 6 ♖c3 ♖b7 7 ♖e2 ♖bc6 8 0-0 dxc4 9 ♖xc4 ♖a5 10 ♖b5 ♖c6 11 ♖d3, and White has attacking chances (Sax-Short, London 1980).

4 c3 ♙d7
5 ♖h3

White intends to play his knight to a menacing post: from h5 it will attack f6 and g7, two highly important squares in Black's position. And yet in the given situation it can hardly be said that the knight is well placed at h3: Ivkov immediately 'remembers' about the thematic undermining move ... c5 and plays it with even greater effect than on the 3rd move, since from h3 the knight can no longer support the 'base' pawn at d4 ...

5 ... c5!
6 ♖a3

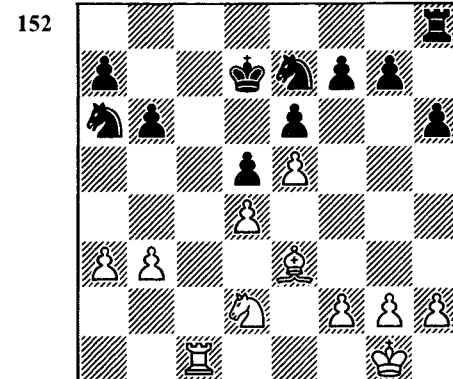
A standard procedure – the knight aims for c2, reinforcing the centre, but it stops half-way.

6 ... cxd4 7 cxd4 ♖a6 8 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 9 0-0! ♖xa3 10 bxa3 ♖e7

The opening has gone in favour of Black – this is the price of White's eccentric 5 ♖h3 and his rather indiscreet 9 0-0 (9 ♖c2 would have been more cautious). White's queenside is broken, the light squares are in Black's possession, and soon he will take control of the c-file. In this difficult situation Mohrlock defends resourcefully: he succeeds in neutralising the opponent's pressure along the open file and in repairing his queenside pawns

– true, at the cost of allowing the exchange of queens.

11 ♙d3 ♙a4! 12 ♖e3 ♖c8 13 ♖ac1 ♖c4 14 ♖g5 h6 15 ♖e4! ♖f5 16 ♖d2 ♖xc1 17 ♖xc1 ♖e7 18 ♙b3 ♙xb3 19 axb3 ♖d7 (152)



The ending, despite its apparent simplicity and the symmetric pawn formation, is unpleasant for White. The basic defect of his position is his bad bishop. It is also difficult for him to find a suitable square for his knight. Black, on the other hand, has excellent posts for his knights, his king is already in the centre, and the kingside pawn formation contains many potential possibilities for him.

20 ♖f1 h5!

First Black secures the f5 square for his knight.

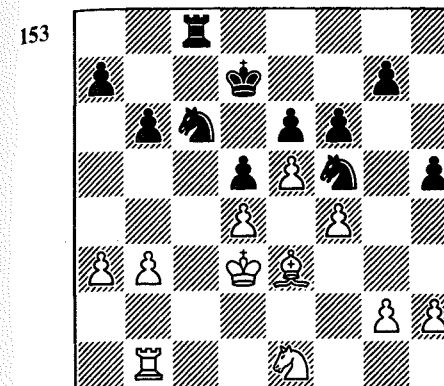
21 ♖e2 ♖f5 22 ♖f3 ♖b8 23 ♖d3 ♖c6 24 ♖e1 f6! 25 f4

Now the white bishop loses even more of its mobility, but 25 exf6 gxf6 would have afforded Black the prospect of completely seizing the centre by ... e5.

25 ... ♖c8!
26 ♖b1 (153)

White has to reckon with tactical strokes

such as 26 ... ♖xe3 27 ♖xe3 ♖xd4 28 ♖xc8 ♖f5+.



26 ... g5!

Ivkov plays excellently with his kingside pawns, seizing space on that part of the board. Looking at this game without knowing the names of the players involved, in Black's style of play you could recognise one of Nimzowitsch's creations.

27 g3

White's bishop has gradually been transformed into a 'large pawn', and Black has created a new base in the enemy pawn chain, which must first be fixed, and then attacked.

27 ... g4!

Nimzowitsch would have been happy. His system triumphs.

28 ♖g2 ♖f8 29 ♖b2 ♖ce7 30 ♖d2 ♖g6 31 ♖c2

White continues to adopt waiting tactics, but his position is deteriorating still further. He should have thought about creating counterplay on the queenside with 31 a4.

31 ... fxe5!

To obtain a decisive advantage, Black

must find a way of invading the enemy position with his rook. Ivkov takes the opportunity to create a passed pawn on the d-file, exploiting the fact that White cannot take on e5 with his f-pawn, since after 32 ... h4 the black rook would inevitably break through on one of the open files.

32 dxe5 h4 33 ♖e1 hxg3 34 ♖xg3 ♖h8 35 ♖e3 ♖xe3 36 ♖xe3

With great difficulty White has managed to avert the opening of lines on the kingside, but the position is now a textbook example of an endgame with a good knight against a bad bishop.

36 ... ♖e7 37 ♖f2 ♖f5 38 ♖c1 a5!

Apart from the kingside, there is also the queenside, to which Black switches his efforts to open lines.

39 ♖g2 ♖a8?!

A blemish. The immediate 39 ... a4! would have straight away put the opponent in a hopeless situation, since 40 b4 fails to 40 ... ♖c8.

40 ♖f2 a4
41 bxa4?

Capitulation. 41 b4 was essential, when Black would have had to break through with the pawn sacrifice 41 ... ♖h8 42 ♖xb6 ♖h3, which would have given White some counterchances.

41 ... ♖xa4 42 ♖xb6 ♖xa3 43 ♖c7+ ♖e8 44 ♖c8+ ♖f7 45 ♖c7+ ♖g6 46 ♖c6 ♖h4+ 47 ♖f2 ♖a2+ 48 ♖f1

If 48 ♖g3, then 48 ... ♖h5.

48 ... ♖f5

All according to the rules of the endgame. Black's knight and king have exchanged places on the blockading square to begin

the decisive attack.

49 ♖f2 ♜f3 50 ♖g3 ♜xh2+ White resigns

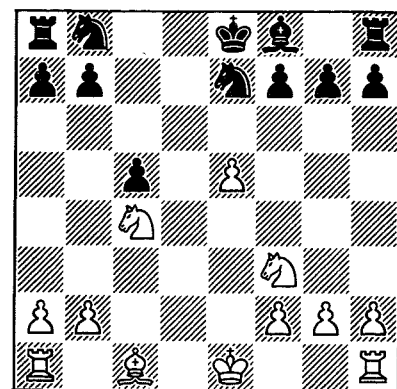
I. Zaitsev-Berezov
Moscow 1965

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 c3 ♗b6 5 ♜f3 ♜d7 6 ♜e2 ♜b5 7 c4 ♜xc4 8 ♜xc4 dxc4 9 d5 exd5 10 ♗xd5 ♜e7 11 ♗e4 ♗c6 12 ♗xc4 ♗a6 13 ♜a3 ♗xc4 14 ♜xc4 (154)

Black's plan of exchanging the light-square bishops came into fashion comparatively recently. Instead of 6 ... ♜b5, which allows 7 c4!?, it is perhaps more accurate to exchange first on d4. For example: 6 ... cxd4 7 cxd4 ♜b5 8 ♜c3 ♜b4 9 0-0 ♜xc3!? 10 bxc3 ♜xe2 11 ♗xe2 ♗a6 followed by the deployment of the knights at c6 and d7. On the queenside Black has counterplay on the light squares and along the c-file.

Nowadays in the Nimzowitsch Variation White more and more often resorts to the flexible move a2-a3, depriving the black bishop of the b4 square and, given the opportunity, preparing to seize space on the queenside with b2-b4. In this case Black's plan of exchanging the light-square bishops does not achieve its aim, e.g. 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 c3 ♗b6 5 ♜f3 ♜d7 6 a3 cxd4? (6 ... c4 is better) 7 cxd4 ♜b5 8 ♜xb5+ ♗xb5 9 ♜c3 ♗a6 10 ♜e2, and after castling White develops a dangerous initiative on the kingside. Unusual opening play was seen in the game Sveshnikov-Chernin, 52nd USSR Championship, Riga 1985: 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 c3 ♜c6 5 ♜f3 ♜d7 6 a3 ♜c8 7 ♜d3 cxd4 8 cxd4 ♗b6 9 ♜c2 g5! 10 h3 ♜xd4! 11 ♜xd4 ♜c5 12 ♜e2 ♜xf2+ 13 ♜f1 f6, and for the sacrificed piece Black gained a powerful initiative.

154



The exchange of queens has led to a difficult position for Black. White has a lead in development, qualitatively superior pawn formation, and good possibilities of active play on the d-file (the d6 square).

14 ... ♜g6?

14 ... ♜f5, to cover d6, was better.

15 h4 ♜e7 16 h5 ♜f8 17 h6! g6 18 ♜g5!

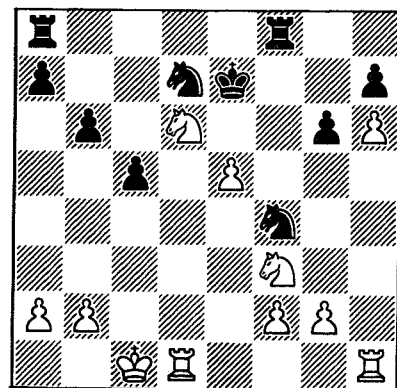
With the exchange of the dark-square bishops, White gains access to d6.

18 ... ♜bd7 19 0-0-0 ♜e6 20 ♜xe7 ♜xe7 21 ♜d6

A double attack.

21 ... b6 22 ♜xf7 ♜hf8 23 ♜d6 ♜f4 (155)

155



Black replies with counterplay along the f-file.

24 e6!

Zaitsev returns his extra pawn and commences an attack along the open central files.

24 ... ♜xe6 25 ♜he1 ♜fd8 26 ♜b5 ♜f6?

The decisive mistake. Against the threat of 26 ♜c7 there was only one defence – 26 ... ♜f8, although after 27 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 28 ♜e5 White retains the advantage.

27 ♜c7! ♜xc7
28 ♜d6+ ♜f5

28 ... ♜f7 29 ♜g5+ ♜g8 30 ♜e7 did not help.

29 ♜e7 ♜e8 30 ♜dxd7 ♜xd7 31 ♜xd7 ♜f6 32 ♜f7 a6 33 g4+ Black resigns

We conclude this section with a modern example, in which Black carried out a relatively new and interesting plan.

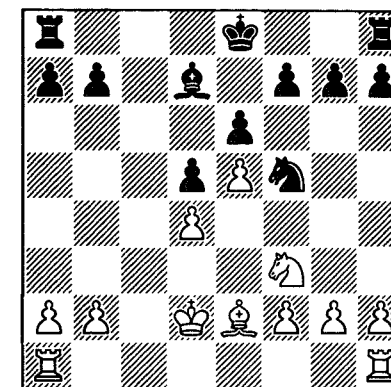
Sieiro-M. Gurevich
Havana 1986

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 c3 ♜c6 5 ♜f3 ♜ge7 6 ♜a3 cxd4 7 cxd4 ♜f5 8 ♜c2 ♜d7 9 ♜e2 ♜b4 10 ♜xb4 ♜xb4+ 11 ♜d2 ♗a5 12 ♜xb4 ♗xb4+ 13 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 14 ♜xd2 (156)

In the opening Black employed the comparatively rare continuation 5... ♜ge7, and an endgame was soon reached. We give the commentary on the diagram position by Gurevich in the magazine 64: "Theory assesses the resulting complicated ending as being slightly more pleasant for White on account of his 'better bishop'. But the following idea of the Moscow master Zlotnik changes the assessment, in

my opinion, and at the least gives Black a fully equal game."

156



14 ... ♜e7! 15 ♜hc1 f6! 16 ♜c5 ♜d8 17 ♜d3 ♜c8!

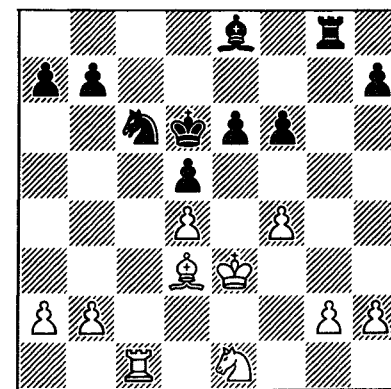
Before continuing his basic strategic idea – that of transferring his bishop to the kingside via e8, Black exchanges one pair of rooks, forestalling possible counterplay by the opponent along the c-file.

18 ♜ac1 ♜xc5 19 ♜xc5 ♜e8 20 ♜e1 ♜c6 21 exf6 gxf6

Black's position is already preferable. White's d-pawn is weak and his pieces are less well placed.

22 ♜e3 ♜e7 23 f4 ♜d6 24 ♜c1 ♜g8 (157)

157



25 ♖xh7?

A mistake, which allows the black pieces to invade White's territory. By 25 g3 he could have maintained a defensible position.

25 ... ♖h8 26 ♖c2 ♖xh2 27 ♖a4 ♖g6 28 ♖xc6 bxc6 29 ♖f2 ♖h4 30 ♖e3 ♖e4

The black pieces now dominate the board. White's position is lost.

31 ♖c3 ♖g4 32 ♖a3 ♖g3+ 33 ♖f3

33 ♖f2 is hopeless for White – 33 ... ♖xa3 34 bxa3 c5.

33 ... ♖xg2 34 ♖d2 ♖g3+ 35 ♖e2 ♖xa3 36 bxa3 c5 White resigns

WINAWER-NIMZOWITSCH VARIATION

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖b4

If White maintains the tension in the centre with 3 ♖c3, Black has the energetic move 3 ... ♖b4!, which again sets White the problem of what to do with his e4 pawn.

3 ... ♖b4 was devised by Winawer back in the last century, but did not win general recognition. It was thought that after 4 exd5 the bishop was out of play at b4, and that White had the possibility of playing the Exchange Variation with an extra tempo. In the 19th century the Exchange Variation was preferred by Morphy and Chigorin, and it was natural that no one should want to play it a tempo down.

The 3 ... ♖b4 variation was revived by Nimzowitsch. Compared with the classical 3 ... ♖f6 Black has here a number of significant advantages: there is not the unpleasant pin on his knight after 4 ♖g5, and 4 e5 no longer gains a tempo. As for 4

exd5, here too Nimzowitsch discovered a convincing method of counterplay: with a series of energetic moves, 4 ... exd5 5 ♖d3 ♖c6 6 ♖e2 ♖ge7 7 0-0 ♖f5!, Black obtains a good position.

After 3 ... ♖b4 White solves the problem of the centre in various ways. Apart from 4 exd5 exd5 he has employed moves such as 4 ♖d2, 4 ♖d3, 4 ♖e2 and 4 a3, but the most popular is the natural and strong blockading move 4 e5.

After 4 ... c5 5 a3 ♖xc3+ (recently 5 ... ♖a5 has again come into fashion) 6 bxc3 ♖e7 (or 6 ... ♖c7) we reach the basic position of the Winawer-Nimzowitsch Variation, about which, to this day, theory does not give a definite assessment.

Particular credit for the study of the positions after 6 bxc3 must go to Botvinnik. It would be no exaggeration to say that it was Botvinnik's brilliant adoption in tournaments which made 3 ... ♖b4 the main reply to 3 ♖c3. What then are the chances of the two sides in the coming middlegame? The following assessment, given by Botvinnik back in 1940, is still basically correct: "White has the freer position and the two bishops; in some cases he can make use of the d6 square. The drawback to his position is the doubled pawns on the c-file, and at a convenient moment Black can play ... c4, giving a closed position, in which the advantage of the two bishops becomes imperceptible. The chances of the two sides are roughly equal, but the play can become very sharp. Does this not make the entire variation ideal for Black from the viewpoint of the modern player? A game with counterchances is sufficient to balance the advantage of the first move."

After 6 bxc3 ♖e7 (or 6 ... ♖c7) White has two main continuations: the sharp 7 ♖g4 and the quiet 7 ♖f3 (or 7 a4). These continuations were first analysed by

Rauzer, who upheld White's position, but Botvinnik's main opponent became Smyslov, who considered that Black's advantages did not compensate for the chronic weakness of the dark squares in his position. Fischer was of the same opinion: "I may yet be forced to admit that the Winawer is sound. But I doubt it! The defence is anti-positional and weakens the kingside."

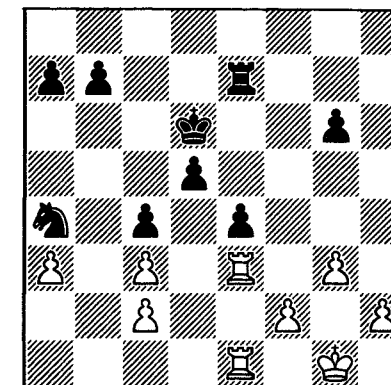
In the late fifties to early sixties, Botvinnik gradually began giving up the French Defence. After suffering heavy defeats in World Championship matches with Smyslov (1957) and Tal (1960 and 1961), who played 7 ♖g4, and after losing an important game to Unzicker (European Team Championship, Oberhausen 1961) who chose the quiet 7 ♖f3, he switched almost completely to the Caro-Kann, Sicilian and Pirc/Modern Defences.

However, the 3 ... ♖b4 variation is popular to this day, and is 'performed' particularly successfully by grandmasters Vaganian and Uhlmann.

All that has been said concerns mainly the middlegame. What about the endgame in the Winawer-Nimzowitsch Variation? The first thing that strikes one is White's queenside pawn formation. The pawns at a3, c2 and c3 can readily become easy booty for the opponent, and so in the middlegame or at the transition to the endgame White usually tries to exchange his weaknesses, at the same time opening diagonals for his bishops.

There is one other very interesting factor in the endgame, also first pointed out by Botvinnik: White's queenside is so disfigured that connection with the kingside is possible only via the c1 square! The difficulty to which this can lead is well illustrated by the following excerpt from the game *Antoshin-Botvinnik* (22nd USSR Championship, Moscow 1955).

158



White has a won position. Black's counterchances on the queenside are obviously insufficient, and after the accurate 31 f3! he would have had little chance of saving the game. There followed, however:

31 f4?!

"Slightly careless", according to Botvinnik. White does not see his opponent's counterplay.

31 ... b5
32 ♖g2?

"But this is very careless."

32 ... ♖xc3!!

A fearful blow. Now it is White who has to think in terms of saving the game. The connection between the flanks is destroyed, and the armada of black pawns becomes very dangerous.

33 ♖xc3 d4 34 a4 dxc3 35 axb5 ♖c5 36 g4?

White is demoralised and commits the decisive mistake. As shown by Botvinnik, he could still have saved the game by 36 ♖f2, and if 36 ... ♖d7 37 ♖xe4 ♖d2+ 38 ♖e2, e.g. 38 ... ♖xb5 39 ♖xd2 cxd2 40 ♖e2 c3 41 f5 gxf5 42 h4 a5 43 h5, when a

draw is probable.

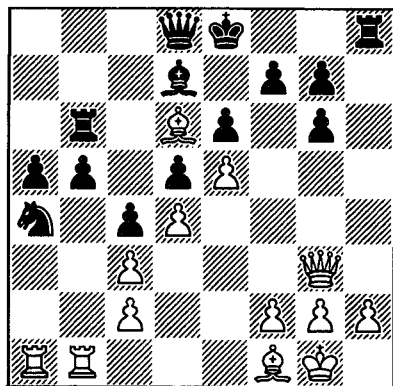
36 ... ♖d7 37 ♖e2 ♜xb5 38 h4 a5 39 h5 gxf5 40 g5 ♖d2 41 ♜f2 h4 42 g6 ♖xe2+ 43 ♜xe2 h3 44 g7 h2 45 g8=♖ h1=♖ 46 ♖d5+ ♜b4 47 f5 ♖f3+ 48 ♜e1 ♖e3+ 49 ♜d1 ♖f2!

White resigned in view of the forced variation 50 ♖d6+ ♜a4 51 ♖c6+ ♜a3 52 ♖d6+ ♜a2.

The most important diagonal for White's dark-square bishop in the Winawer-Nimzowitsch Variation is the a3-f8 diagonal. In order to move his bishop there, White must play a3-a4. Then an 'exchange of cultural values' usually occurs: Black picks up the a4 pawn, and from a3 the bishop rampages along its 'lawful' diagonal.

But in the endgame the situation changes sharply. Neither White's pair of bishops, nor his absolute domination along the a3-f8 diagonal, can normally compensate for Black's overwhelming advantage on the queenside, where in addition he has an extra pawn. One winning plan was demonstrated in the game **Tolush-Botvinnik** (14th USSR Championship, Moscow 1945): ... a5, ... b5 and the sacrifice of the exchange on d6. We give the conclusion:

159



It is apparent here that White is both a pawn down, and without any attack. As

long as the bishop at d6 is 'alive', a breakthrough by the black pawns is impossible, and so:

21 ... ♖xd6! 22 exd6 ♜c6 23 h3 ♜d7! 24 ♖e1 ♖h4 25 ♖e5 ♖f6 26 ♖g3 ♖h4 27 ♖e3 ♖f4 28 ♜e2 ♖h4 29 ♜f3 b4

Black completes his monumental plan, and White's position collapses.

30 ♖xh4 ♖xh4
31 g3

With a trap: 31 ... ♖xh3? 32 cxb4 axb4 33 ♖b1. Black, however, does not deviate from his theme.

31 ... ♖h8 32 cxb4 axb4 33 ♖b1 ♖b8 34 h4 ♖b7 35 ♜h2 ♜xd6 36 g4 ♜c3 37 ♖a1 ♜b5 38 ♖d1 ♖a7 39 h5 g5 40 ♜g2 ♖a2 41 ♜e2 White resigns

And now a few words about the 4 a3 variation. Positionally it is well founded: White gains the advantage of the two bishops in a semi-open position, and his queenside is less badly compromised than in the 4 e5 variation. After 4 ... ♜xc3+ 5 bxc3 dxe4 6 ♖g4 ♜f6 7 ♖xg7 ♖g8 8 ♖h6 a situation typical of this variation arises: White counts on his two bishops, while Black castles long and attacks along the open g-file and in the centre.

In a complex middlegame Black normally has sufficient counterplay, but in the endgame White's chances are better. Black's broken kingside (his h-pawn is very weak) can easily fall victim to the white bishops. Also in White's favour is the asymmetric pawn formation: when there are passed pawns on opposite wings, bishops are rated very highly, an example being provided by the following game:

Smyslov-Botvinnik

World Championship (7), Moscow 1954

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜b4 4 a3

This move was introduced into wider tournament play by Alekhine in the 3rd game of his 1935 match with Euwe. "In my opinion", he wrote, "this is one of the best replies to the French Defence. After the following exchange Black does not have sufficient compensation for the two bishops." Modern tournament play would not appear to support such a categorical assessment, but theory today does not give a definite conclusion: the positions arising are very complicated, and both sides have their trumps.

4 ... ♜xc3+ 5 bxc3 dxe4 6 ♖g4 ♜f6 7 ♖xg7 ♖g8 8 ♖h6 c5

An important moment. In some ways, 8 ... c5 is useful for Black, since the pawn attacks White's weakened pawn centre, but in others it is playing into White's hands, by helping him to open diagonals for his bishops. Black could have delayed 8 ... c5, and first clarified where the white queen would retreat to after 8 ... ♖g6.

It is considered that after 9 ♖e3 Black should develop his queen's knight at c6, and after 9 ♖d2 – at d7. Thus the game Sakharov-Dubinin (correspondence 1977) went 9 ♖d2 b6 10 ♜b2 ♜b7 11 0-0-0 ♖e7 12 ♜e2 ♜bd7 13 c4 0-0-0 14 ♖e1 c5 with a good game for Black.

Or 9 ♖e3 ♜c6 10 ♜b2 ♜e7 11 0-0-0 b5 12 f3 (after 12 ♜xb5+ ♜d7 the white king comes under attack along the b-file) 12 ... ♜ed5 with advantage to Black (Lebedev-Golovko, Moscow 1951).

Also possible is the plan of rapidly developing the queenside, suggested by Alatortsev back in the 1930s. This plan, beginning with 8 ... ♜bd7 (in fact, Alatortsev recommended 8 ... ♖g6 9 ♖e3 b6 10 ♜e2 ♜b7 11 ♜f4 ♖g8 12 ♜b2 ♜bd7) brought Kovačević a sensational victory over Fischer at Zagreb 1970: 9 ♜e2 b6 10 ♜g5

♖e7! 11 ♖h4 ♜b7 12 ♜g3 h6!! 13 ♜d2 0-0-0 14 ♜e2 ♜f8 15 0-0 ♜g6 16 ♖xh6 ♖h8 17 ♖g5 ♖dg8, and even Fischer could not parry the attack along the h- and g-files.

Today 8 ... ♜bd7 is probably the most popular variation (in general, 4 a3 occurs rather rarely). Here is a typical example of the modern interpretation of this variation: 8 ... ♜bd7 9 h3 (on 9 ♜e2 Uhlmann recommends 9 ... b6 10 ♜g3 ♜b7 11 ♜b2 ♖e7 12 0-0-0 0-0-0, with an equal game) 9 ... b6 10 g4 ♜b7 11 ♜g2 ♖e7 12 g5 ♖f7! 13 ♖xf8+ ♜xf8 14 h4 h6!, with a complicated game in which both sides have chances (Vorotnikov-Uhlmann, Leningrad 1984).

9 ♜e2 ♖g6

After 8 ... c5 the move order is extremely important. Thus Euwe, in the aforementioned game with Alekhine, quickly ended up in a difficult position after 9 ... ♜bd7 10 ♜g3 ♖g6? 11 ♖e3 (the e4 pawn is in danger; by exchanging it for the c3 pawn, Euwe frees the enemy bishops) 11 ... ♜d5 12 ♖xe4 ♜xc3 13 ♖d3 ♜d5 14 ♜e2 ♖f6 15 c3 cxd4 16 cxd4 ♜b6 17 ♜h5!

In the 19th game of the 1954 Smyslov-Botvinnik match, Botvinnik preferred 9 ... ♜c6, but this met with an energetic reply by Smyslov: 10 dxc5! ♖g6 11 ♖d2! (White aims for the exchange of queens, while neutralising a possible ... ♖a5) 11 ... ♜d7 12 ♖b1 ♖c7 13 ♖d6 0-0-0 14 ♖xc7+ ♜xc7, when the endgame was again favourable for White. His two bishops and extra pawn are more than sufficient compensation for the defects of his pawn structure. The tripled pawns control almost all the important squares on the central d-file and create strong points for his pieces.

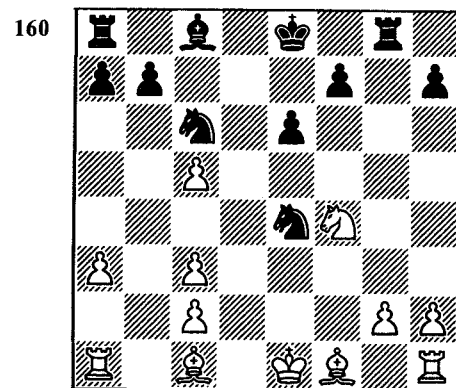
10 ♖e3 ♜c6

The 'corresponding squares' are ♖e3 – ♜c6, and ♖d2 – ♜bd7!.

11 dxc5 ♖g4?!

"Amazing! This manoeuvre was prepared by me in 1936-37, and at the time seemed very attractive. Since then I had not analysed the position at all. Correct was 11 ... ♗a5 with an equal game" (Botvinnik). Indeed, the ending which now results is rather unpleasant for Black, whereas 11 ... ♗a5! would have given good play: 12 ♙d2 ♙d7 13 c4 ♖g4! 14 ♗c3 ♗xc5 15 h3 ♗xf2+ 16 ♙d1 ♖ge5, Boleslavsky-Uhlmann, Krynica 1956.

12 ♗xe4! ♗d1+ 13 ♙xd1 ♖xf2+ 14 ♙e1 ♖xe4 15 ♖f4 ♖g8 (160)



The diagram position favours White, who has a very strong dark-square bishop with no opponent, and an extra pawn, even though tripled. From later examples the reader can see that tripled pawns on the c-file often have more virtues than drawbacks in the 'French' endgame.

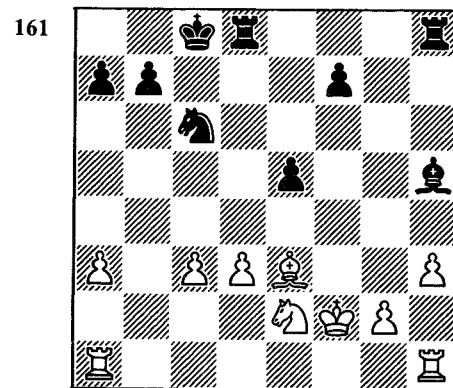
16 ♙d3 ♖xc5

Now White no longer has tripled, but doubled pawns, but 16 ... f5 17 ♙xe4 fxe4 18 ♖b1 was even more unpromising for Black.

17 ♙xh7 ♖h8
18 ♙d3 ♖xd3+!

A courageous decision. Botvinnik repairs White's pawns, but deprives him of the advantage of the two bishops, which in the given position could rapidly make White's advantage decisive. Black hopes to gain counterplay against the hanging white pawns in the centre.

19 cxd3 ♙d7 20 ♙e3 0-0-0 21 ♙f2 e5 22 ♖e2 ♙g4 23 h3 ♙h5 (161)



Black has developed strong pressure on White's central pawns. Smyslov employs a well-known technique – he transforms his material advantage into a stable positional advantage.

24 d4! ♙xe2 25 ♙xe2 exd4 26 cxd4 ♖xd4+ 27 ♙f2

In an open position with pawn majorities on opposite wings, a bishop is traditionally stronger than a knight. However, Black has very considerable drawing chances.

27 ... b6
28 ♖hd1 ♖e6

Botvinnik considers that it would have been better to play 28 ... ♖b3 29 ♖ab1 ♖xd1 30 ♖xd1 ♖d8 31 ♖b1 ♖a5 or 31 ... ♖c5.

29 ♖ac1+ ♙b7 30 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 31 h4

♖h8 32 g3 b5 33 ♙f3 a5 34 ♙e4 ♖e8 35 ♙f3

35 ♙f5 is well met by 35 ... ♖g7+, while on 35 g4 Black can gain counterchances by 35 ... ♖d8+ 36 ♙f3 ♖c6 (Botvinnik).

35 ... ♖h8
36 ♖c3

White defends his bishop with his rook and threatens to penetrate with his king to f5.

36 ... f5
37 ♖d3

Now Black's king will approach the centre and White's winning chances are reduced. In Botvinnik's opinion, 37 ♙f2 followed by ♖c1-e1-e5 would have promised White more.

37 ... ♙c6 38 ♙d2 ♖a8 39 ♙c3 ♙c5 40 ♙f6 b4 41 h5 ♖a7 42 ♖e3 ♙d6 43 ♙e5+! ♙d5!

43 ... ♙e7 looks the natural reply, but after 44 g4! fxg4+ 45 ♙xg4 Black's rook loses control of the seventh rank and he runs into difficulties.

44 ♙b2 ♙d6 45 ♖d3+ ♙c5! 46 ♖d2 ♖h7 47 ♖h2 ♙d6

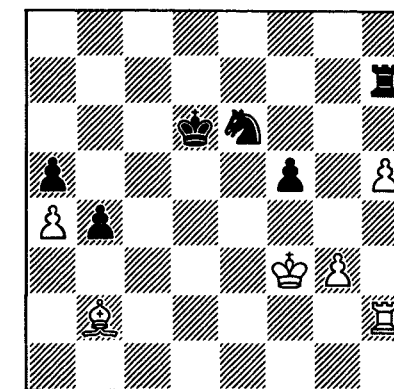
"Here I was unable to find a satisfactory continuation in the variation 48 g4 fxg4+ 49 ♙xg4 ♙d5 50 ♙f6! (but not 50 h6 ♖d8, ... ♖f7 and ... ♖xh6 or 50 ♙f5 ♖g7+!); now 50 ... ♖d8 is not possible, and against the threat of h5-h6 followed by ♙f5-g6 there appears to be no defence.

In reality it is all very simple: Black should play 50 ... ♖f7! (51 ♙f5 ♖f8), when White cannot achieve anything.

Smyslov no doubt saw all these subtleties, and so on the next move he did not play g3-g4" (Botvinnik).

48 a4 (162)

162



48 ... ♙e7?

A mistake, which leads to defeat. Black had avoided this move so many times, and yet he could not refrain from making it. He should have broken through with his king to the queenside via d5-c4-b3xa4, and given up his rook for the white h-pawn after the exchange of the f5 and g3 pawns. In this case Black's knight and two connected passed pawns on the queenside could have successfully opposed White's rook and bishop.

49 g4! f4

49 ... fxg4+ 50 ♙xg4 also fails to save the game, e.g. 50 ... ♙d6 51 ♙f5 ♖g7+ 52 ♙xg7 ♖xg7 53 h6.

50 ♖d2

Black resigns. Against the threat of 51 ♖d5 he has no defence.

Smyslov-Botvinnik

World Championship (1), Moscow 1954

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♙b4 4 e5 c5 5 a3 ♙a5

Although Black's last move looks artificial, it has a deep positional basis.

The point is that after the 'normal' 5 ... ♗xc3+ Black's difficulties are largely associated with the weakness of the dark squares in his position, and the attempt to retain the dark-square bishop is highly tempting. True, for the correctness of positional principles Black has to pay with a lag in development.

6 b4! cxd4
7 ♖b5

In the ninth game of the match Smyslov employed the sharp 7 ♗g4! and won brilliantly. Today the assessment of this move is not so clear ...

7 ... ♗c7
8 f4

The most thematic continuation. In the game Tseshkovsky-Lputian (Yerevan 1984) White chose a plan of free development: 8 ♖f3 ♖c6?! (Lputian recommends 8 ... ♖e7!) 9 ♖xc7+ ♗xc7 10 ♗f4 ♖ge7 11 ♗d3 ♖g6 12 ♗g3 ♗d7 (12 ... ♖gxe5!? was better – Lputian) 13 0-0 ♗b6 14 ♗e1, with advantage to White.

8 ... ♖e7

In his game with Short from the Biel Interzonal 1985, Vaganian introduced an interesting improvement here: 8 ... ♗d7! 9 ♖f3 ♖e7 10 ♗b2?! (Ljubojević played more strongly against Vaganian: 10 ♖bxd4 ♖bc6 11 ♗d3 ♖xd4 12 ♖xd4 ♗b6 13 ♗e3!) 10 ... ♗xb5! 11 ♗xb5+ ♖bc6 12 ♗d3 ♗b6 13 0-0 a6, and it was rather White who experienced difficulties.

9 ♖f3 ♖bc6
10 ♗d3 ♗b8

"Of course, this manoeuvre wastes a lot of time, but the dark-square bishop is very useful!" (Botvinnik).

11 ♖bxd4 a6 12 ♗e3 ♗a7 13 0-0

"13 c3 posed more danger for Black, so as to recapture with the pawn in the event of an exchange on d4" (Botvinnik).

13 ... ♖xd4 14 ♗xd4 ♗xd4+ 15 ♖xd4 ♗b6 16 ♖h1 ♗d7 17 c3 ♗c8 18 ♗e1 h6 19 a4

A committing move. If White should fail to seize space on the queenside, in the endgame this weakening will tell.

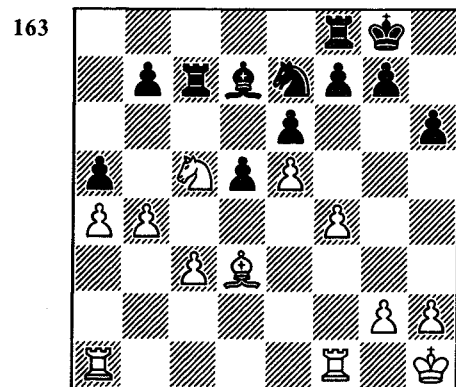
19 ... a5!
20 ♖b3 ♗c7!

An excellent move. Now 21 ♖xa5 b6 22 ♖b3 ♗xc3 favours Black – the weakness of the white pawns is very perceptible.

21 ♖c5 ♗c6 22 ♗f2 0-0 23 ♖b3 ♗d7 24 ♗c5

"Smyslov almost always aims for the exchange of queens, if this does not worsen his position ... Here this decision is well-founded: after 24 ♗fc1 f6 25 ♗g3 fxe5 26 fxe5 ♖f5 White ends up in a difficult position on account of the weakness of his pawns" (Botvinnik).

24 ... ♗xc5
25 ♖xc5 ♗c7 (163)



In the resulting ending Black's position is slightly preferable. The weaknesses,

caused by the pawn moves 6 b4 and 19 a4 in the opening, make themselves felt.

26 ♖xd7 ♗xd7

The knight at c5 was insecurely placed, and so this exchange is timely.

27 bxa5 ♗a8
28 a6?

Now White gets into serious difficulties. It was very important for him to keep the b5 strong point for his bishop. After 28 c4 or 28 ♗b5 ♗c7 29 ♗fc1 ♗xa5 30 c4 the position would have gradually become equal. It should be borne in mind that this was Smyslov's first game in a World Championship Match, and, as the history of the battle for the world crown shows, the World Champion feels more confident in such games than the Challenger.

28 ... bxa6
29 c4?!

Tarrasch aptly remarked that mistakes, like misfortunes, rarely occur singly. Now White rids himself of his backward pawn on the c-file, but Black's pieces begin to invade the white position along the open files. White should have preferred 29 ♗ab1, when it is not so difficult for him to defend his weak pawn.

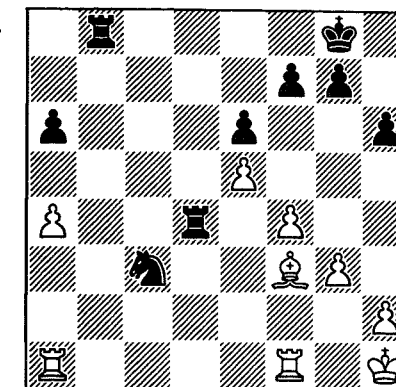
29 ... dxc4 30 ♗xc4 ♗d4! 31 ♗e2

On 31 ♗ac1 Black has the unpleasant 31 ... ♖f5.

31 ... ♖d5 32 g3 ♖c3 33 ♗f3 ♗b8 (164)

The results of White's mistakes are apparent. Black's pieces have taken up dominating positions. The a4 pawn is attacked, there is also the positional threat of 34 ... ♗b3, and the black knight occupies an impregnable position in enemy territory, controlling the very important b1 and d1 squares on the first rank.

164



34 ♗a3 ♖b1?

"Possibly Black's first error! He should have calmly taken the a-pawn (34 ... ♖xa4). On 35 ♗fa1 he could have replied with 35 ... ♗bb4 (36 ♗d1 ♖c5 37 ♗c3 ♗bc4 38 ♗xc4 ♗xc4 39 ♗e2 ♗e4 40 ♗xa6 g5), and on 35 ♗c6 with 35 ... ♖c5, if there is nothing better. Black would have won a pawn, and White would have merely retained a few drawing chances" (Botvinnik).

35 ♗a2 ♖d2 36 ♗f2 ♖c4 37 h4

With ... g5 coming, White aims to exchange as many pawns as possible.

37 ... g5 38 hxcg5 hxcg5 39 fxg5

The rook ending after 39 ♗e2 a5 40 ♗xc4 ♗xc4 was very unpleasant for White.

39 ... ♖xe5
40 ♗e2 ♗b1+?!

A superfluous check. The immediate 40 ... a5 was better, not fearing 41 ♗b5 on which there could follow 41 ... ♗g4.

41 ♖g2 a5
42 ♗c2

In his commentary on the game, Botvinnik mentioned that on 42 ♗h5 he was intending to continue 42 ... ♖g7 43 ♗f4

♖d5! 44 ♖af2 ♖b7 followed by ... ♖e7. Black would have threatened to play ... ♖g6 at the necessary moment, and would have retained the advantage.

42 ... ♖b3

Stronger was 42 ... ♖xa4 43 ♖c5 ♖e4! 44 ♖xa5 (44 ♖h5 ♖b3 45 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 46 ♖c8+ ♖g7 47 ♖c7 ♖g6, and Black is a pawn up) 44 ... ♖b3 or 44 ... ♖e3. Black would have retained winning chances, in view of the weakness of the white pawns at g5 and g3 (Botvinnik).

43 ♖f4?

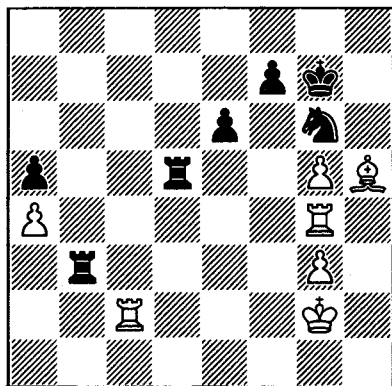
"The decisive mistake. It is clear that, in his adjournment analysis, Smyslov overlooked the manoeuvre given in the note to White's 42nd move. Correct was 43 ♖c5 ♖d3 (or 43 ... ♖d5 44 ♖xd5 exd5 45 ♖f5 ♖e3 46 ♖f2 d4 47 ♖f4) 44 ♖xd3 ♖dxd3 45 ♖xa5 ♖xg3+ 46 ♖h2, when the draw is more or less obvious" (Botvinnik).

43 ... ♖d5!

In the given situation the rook manoeuvre to d5 gains in strength, since, compared with the situation on move 42, instead of the active ♖h5 White has played the unproductive move ♖c2. Now 44 ♖h5 is not possible on account of 44 ... ♖dd3.

44 ♖e4 ♖g7 45 ♖h5 ♖g6 46 ♖g4 (165)

165



46 ... ♖e3!

Black creates two threats: 47 ... ♖ee5 and 47 ... ♖e5 48 ♖f4 ♖dd3, forcing a won rook ending.

47 ♖xg6 ♖xg6
48 ♖f2 ♖f5!

Simpler than 48 ... ♖xg5 49 ♖xg5+ ♖xg5 50 ♖xf7 ♖e4.

49 ♖xf5 exf5 50 ♖c4 ♖e4 51 ♖c7 ♖xa4 52 ♖a7 ♖a3 53 ♖h3

A clever rejoinder, which, of course, cannot save White. He would have lost after 53 ♖f2 a4 54 ♖g2 ♖xg5 55 ♖xf7 ♖b3!

53 ... f4 54 ♖h4 fxg3 55 ♖a6+ ♖f5!

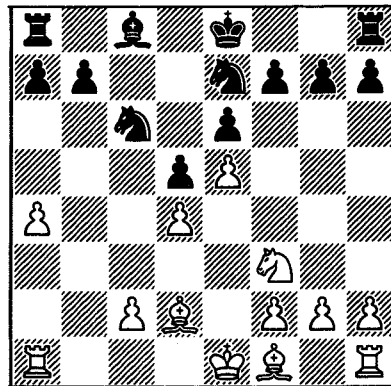
White's last chance was 55 ... ♖g7? 56 ♖h3!, when, despite his two extra pawns, Black can hardly hope to win.

56 ♖f6+ ♖e4 57 ♖h3 ♖f3 58 ♖a6 ♖f5 White resigns

Smyslov-Letelier Venice 1950

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖b4 4 e5 c5 5 a3 ♖xc3+ 6 bxc3 ♖e7 7 a4 ♖a5 8 ♖d2 ♖c6 9 ♖f3 cxd4 10 cxd4 ♖xd2+ 11 ♖xd2 (166)

166



From the viewpoint of modern theory, Black's exchange of queens is somewhat premature. White's two bishops are unquestionably valuable here, and the improvement of his queenside pawn formation merely increases his advantage.

11 ... ♖f5?!

An unnecessary move, forcing White to carry out the plan of development which he was in any case intending. 11 ... 0-0 was more natural, followed by ... ♖d7 and the doubling of rooks on the c-file.

12 ♖c3 ♖d7 13 ♖d3 ♖c8 14 ♖d2 0-0 15 a5 ♖c7 16 ♖he1!

White has cramped the opponent's position on the queenside, and has quite good prospects of a pawn offensive on the kingside. Smyslov opportunely places his rook on the as yet closed e-file, anticipating possible counterplay by the opponent. Nimzowitsch in his time called such moves 'mysterious'.

16 ... f6?!

Black's aiming for counterplay is understandable, but most of the advantages resulting from the sharpening of the game are acquired by White. He should have preferred passive defence with 16 ... a6 followed by ... ♖a7, and, according to circumstances, ... ♖b5 or ... ♖b5.

17 ♖xf5!

When this move is made on the board, it seems simple, a feature of the majority of Smyslov's moves. It is not so easy to part with the advantage of the two bishops, leaving the opposite-colour bishops on the board, but the weakness of the d5 pawn and the superior placing of the white pieces make Black's position difficult.

17 ... exf5 18 exf6 ♖xf6 19 ♖ab1 h6

20 ♖b5 was threatened, and if 20 ... ♖e6 21 ♖g5, winning a pawn.

20 ♖b5 ♖e6 21 ♖eb1 ♖ff7 22 ♖e1

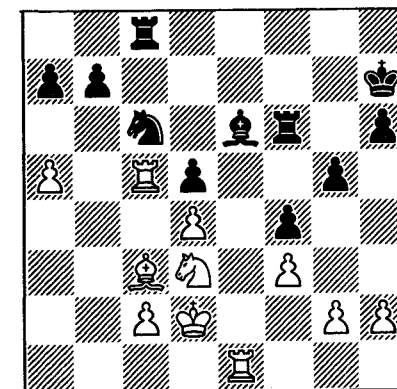
The knight is switched to d3, from where it can threaten various attacks, either from c5, or from e5 and f4.

22 ... f4 23 f3 g5 24 ♖d3 ♖h7?!

The remoteness of the black king from the centre allows White to begin concrete positional play, which as yet is not at all apparent.

25 ♖e1 ♖f6
26 ♖c5 ♖c8 (167)

167



27 ♖b4!

When you play over Smyslov's games, the most striking feature is the broken rhythm of his play. There follow, one after another, a series of solid moves, strengthening his position, of which it appears there will be no end, and then quite unexpectedly comes a tactical blow. The character of the play changes sharply, and the opponent, who is rather worn out by the positional pressure, often goes wrong in the tactical complications.

27 ... ♖xb4

White's main idea is revealed in the

variation 27 ... ♖e7 28 ♜xd5!! ♜xd5 29 ♜xe6 ♜xc5 30 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 (30... ♜xc3 31 ♜d6 ♜c7 32 ♜d7+) 31 dxc5 ♜d7 32 ♜d3 ♜xc5+ 33 ♜c4, when he wins the game on the queenside in view of the remoteness of the black king.

28 ♜xe6! ♜xe6 29 ♜xc8 ♜c6 30 a6!

The concluding blow. The black knight's support is removed, after which access to the d5 pawn is gained.

30 ... bxa6 31 ♜c7+ ♜g6 32 ♜d7 ♜e7 33 ♜b4 ♜f5 34 ♜xd5

The game is essentially over. White's two connected passed pawns in the centre cannot be stopped, and Black's counterplay on the kingside is insignificant.

34 ... ♜e3 35 ♜d8 ♜xg2 36 d5 ♜b6 37 ♜c5 ♜b7 38 ♜c8 ♜h4 39 ♜e2 ♜f5 40 ♜c6+ ♜h5 41 d6 ♜d7 42 ♜c7 Black resigns

Smyslov-Uhlmann Mar del Plata 1966

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜b4 4 e5 ♜e7 5 a3 ♜xc3+ 6 bxc3 c5 7 ♜f3 ♜d7 8 a4

The classical continuation. In modern tournaments the ambitious 8 dxc5!? (Bondarevsky-Levenfish, Moscow 1940) has been more popular, aiming to open up the game as soon as possible to give scope to the white bishops. A typical example is Belyavsky-Foisor, Bucharest 1980: 8 ... ♞c7 9 ♜d3 ♜a4 10 ♜b1 ♜ec6 11 0-0 ♜d7 12 ♜e3 ♜dxc5? 13 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 14 ♜f4!, and the white bishops began to 'rampage'.

Smyslov resorts to dxc5 a little later ...

8 ... ♞a5
9 ♞d2

Although the majority of players prefer

the more natural 9 ♜d2, Smyslov has always had a liking for the move in the game, which leaves open the possibility of his bishop occupying the important a3-f8 diagonal without loss of time. White's plan is well illustrated by one of his early games: 9 ... c4? 10 g3! 0-0 11 ♜g2 f6 12 exf6 ♜xf6 13 0-0 ♜bc6 (this position was reached by a slightly different move order) 14 ♜a3! ♜e8 15 ♜h4 ♜c8 16 f4! with a clear advantage to White, Smyslov-Boleslavsky, Moscow/Leningrad 1941. (Cf. Smyslov's *125 Selected Games* p.26, Pergamon 1983, for the complete game.)

9 ... ♜bc6
10 ♜e2 ♜c8!

A strong move. Black occupies the c-file and now plans to exchange queens. He did not wish to do this immediately: 10 ... cxd4? 11 cxd4 ♞xd2+ 12 ♜xd2 ♜f5 13 ♜c3! is similar to the Smyslov-Letelier game given above. But now the c3 square is indirectly covered by the rook from c8, and White has to declare his intentions. Nothing is achieved by 11 ♜a3 cxd4 12 cxd4 ♞xd2+ 13 ♜xd2 ♜f5, or 11 0-0 cxd4 12 cxd4 ♞xd2 13 ♜xd2 ♜f5 14 c3 ♜a5, and so Smyslov decides to implement Bondarevsky's old idea.

11 dxc5!? ♜g6
12 0-0 0-0

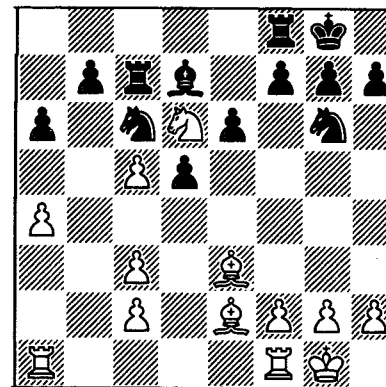
Later Uhlmann found that 13 ... ♜cxe5! was stronger. His game with Hartston (Hastings 1972/73) continued 14 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 15 ♞e3 ♜g6 16 ♜a3 ♜c6 17 f4 0-0, with the better game for Black.

13 ♞e3 ♞c7
14 ♜d4!

Almost certainly, Smyslov was already here planning to go into the endgame.

14 ... ♞xe5 15 ♜b5! ♞xe3 16 ♜xe3 a6 17 ♜d6 ♜c7 (168)

168



In the diagram position we again see tripled white pawns on the c-file, but whereas in the Smyslov-Botvinnik games (cf. p.129) White was a pawn up, here material is equal. And nevertheless White's position is clearly preferable. Black has a weak pawn at b7, which can be subjected to a frontal attack along the b-file, his pieces are uncoordinated, and the white knight is like a thorn in his flesh. Black's only possible trump is the creation of a powerful group of pawns in the centre, but White's two pawns at c2 and c3 neutralise the strength of such a set-up, and reduce its mobility by standing in its path.

18 a5!

The b7 pawn is rigidly fixed in its initial position.

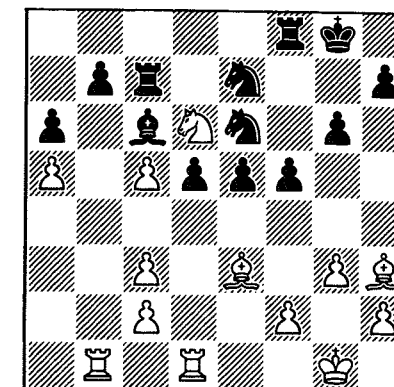
18 ... e5

Black has no other active possibility.

19 ♜fb1 ♜d8 20 ♜d1 ♜c6 21 ♜g4! ♜e6 22 ♜ab1 ♜e7 23 g3 f5 24 ♜h3 g6 (169)

Black's pawns at d5, e5 and f5 look impressive, but his centre is unsupported and has little mobility. Nimzowitsch, analysing the virtues and defects of doubled pawns, compared them with the lameness

169



of a man who was seated. He also pointed out that, possibly at the expense of their dynamic weakness, they possess additional static strength. This means that they are weak when they move, but when opposing the movement of the enemy pieces and pawns it is hard to imagine a more secure barrier. Not surprisingly, it only requires one blow from Smyslov at the black centre, and all that remains of it is a memory.

25 f4! d4

One can understand Uhlmann not wishing to conduct a difficult defence after 25 ... e4, but nevertheless this is what he should have played, since the temporary initiative gained by Black after 25 ... d4 soon peters out, whereas White's extra pawn, now a doubled one, remains.

26 cxd4 ♜d5
27 ♜f2 exd4

Of course, 27 ... ♜c3 28 fxe5 was quite unacceptable for Black.

28 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 29 ♜xd4 ♜e7 30 ♜f2 ♜c3 31 ♜e1 ♜xe1 32 ♜xe1 ♜e4 33 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 34 c3

The game gradually reduces to a straightforward ending. White is a pawn

up with a positional advantage.

34 ... ♖f6

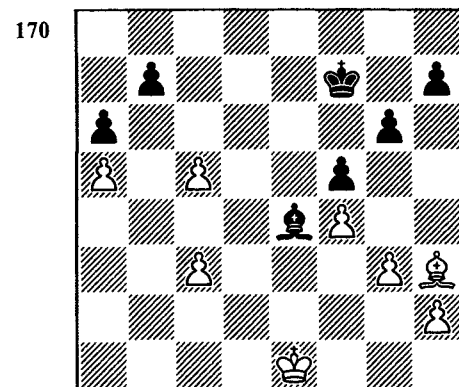
Not 34 ... ♖c8? 35 ♖xe4.

35 ♖d8+ ♔g7

36 ♖d7+ ♖f7

Otherwise the white rook simply goes to c7, and the exchange of bishops decides the game.

37 ♖xf7+ ♔xf7 (170)



In the bishop ending all Black's pawns are on the squares of the colour of his bishop, whereas with White it is just the reverse. In addition White is a pawn up. Smyslov convincingly realises his advantage.

38 ♔d2 ♔e6 39 c4 ♔d7 40 ♔e3 ♔c6 41 ♔d4 ♔d7

Black voluntarily moves away from the c5 pawn, but he would have been unable to maintain his king at c6. White, making use of zugzwang, would have placed his bishop at e2 or d1, and would then have driven away the black king with a check from a4 or f3.

42 ♔e5 ♔f3 43 ♔f6 ♔c6 44 ♔g7 ♔xc5 45 ♔xh7 ♔h5 46 ♔f1 ♔b4 47 ♔g2 ♔xa5 48 ♔xb7 ♔b6 49 ♔c8 a5 50 ♔d7 ♔c5 51 h3 ♔f3 52 ♔xg6 ♔c6 53 ♔xf5 a4 54 ♔b1

a3 55 f5 ♔e4 56 ♔a2 ♔d3 57 h4 ♔d4 58 h5 ♔e5 59 g4 ♔f4 60 ♔g7 Black resigns

Zhuravlyev-Bronstein
USSR Championship 1st League
Odessa 1974

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♔c3 ♔b4 4 e5 c5 5 a3 ♔xc3+ 6 bxc3 ♔e7 7 ♖g4 0-0

7 ♖g4!? is the critical continuation, after which Black faces a difficult problem: how is he to defend his kingside, weakened by the absence of his dark-square bishop? The most natural move is 7 ... ♔f5, but after 8 ♔d3 the attack on the g7 pawn continues, and Black is forced to weaken his kingside with 8 ... h5 (see the following game).

Therefore, if Black does not wish to go in for the sharp and deeply analysed forcing play after 7 ... cxd4, the only 'normal' move remaining is 7 ... 0-0. But for several decades Black used to avoid this, preferring to part with his g- and h-pawns.

Evidently the opinion expressed by Keres was highly regarded: "Castling is very dangerous and gives White excellent attacking chances". And it is only in the last 10-15 years that the 7 ... 0-0 variation, occurring in the games of Vaganian and Bronstein, has demonstrated its viability. Moreover, Black's results here have even been better than after 7 ... cxd4 (true, the standard of the performers may be 'to blame'!).

Initially White does indeed hold the initiative, but Black has his play along the f-file (after ... f5) and in the centre, and his pawn formation is incomparably better. In the endgame his chances sharply improve.

It remains to recall that 7 ... 0-0 was introduced into tournament practice by

Boleslavsky (in a game with Shaposhnikov, USSR Championship Semi-Final, Sverdlovsk 1951), who remarked that "... this move ... is more logical than giving up the g- and h-pawns. It is not so easy for White to mount an attack as it appears at first sight".

8 ♔f3

After 8 ♔d3 (which has recently become popular), 8 ... ♔bc6 9 ♖h5! is dangerous for Black; he should play 8 ... f5.

8 ... ♔bc6 9 ♔d3 f5 10 exf6

10 ♖g3, also recommended by Keres, retains the e5 pawn, but makes it more difficult for White to develop his initiative, and reduces the tempo of his offensive. This position was handled very subtly by Vaganian in a game with Klovian (USSR Championship Semi-Final, Aktyubinsk 1970): 10 ... ♖a5 11 ♔d2 cxd4 12 cxd4 ♖a4 13 ♖h4 ♔d7 14 0-0 ♔g6 15 ♖h5 ♔e8! 16 ♔g5 h6 17 ♔xe6 ♔f4 18 ♔c5 ♔xh5 19 ♔xa4 ♔xd3 20 cxd3 ♔xd4, with the better ending for Black.

10 ... ♖xf6

11 ♔g5

The most common continuation. An attempt to immediately 'overturn' Black's position: 11 ♖h5 h6 12 ♔e5(?) ♔xe5 13 dxe5 ♖f8 14 g4 c4 15 ♔g6? ♔xg6 16 ♖xg6 ♖h4! led White into a hopeless situation in Shaposhnikov-Boleslavsky, Sverdlovsk 1951.

11 ... ♖f7

12 ♔xe7

Here an idea of Ljubojević comes into consideration – to weaken the black king's position by forcing ... g6, and then to begin an attack with the g- and h-pawns, while retaining the dark-square bishop: 12 ♖h5 g6 13 ♖h4 c4 14 ♔e2 ♖a5

15 ♔d2 ♔f5 16 ♖g5! ♔d7 17 g4 ♔d6 18 h4 ♔e4 19 ♖e3, with a very sharp position which is nevertheless better for White.

12 ... ♖xe7

13 ♖h4 h6

Also possible is 13 ... g6 14 0-0 c4 15 ♔e2 ♖f8, Ljubojević-Belyavsky, Tilburg 1984.

14 0-0 c4 15 ♔g6 ♔d7 16 ♖fe1 ♔e8 17 ♔xe8

In a similar position (with the queen's rook at e1) Yurtayev tried to maintain control of the g6 square with 17 ♖g4, but after 17 ... ♔xg6 18 ♖xg6 ♖d6! he failed to achieve anything (Yurtayev-Lputian, Krasnoyarsk 1981).

17 ... ♖xe8

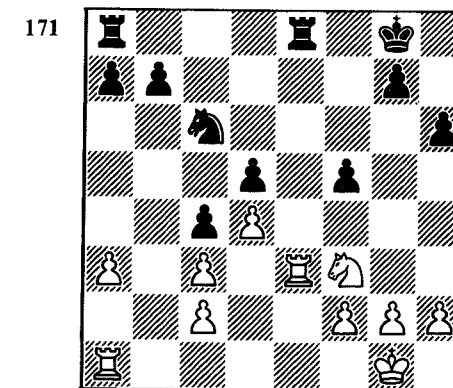
18 ♖h5 ♖f6!

With this strong move Bronstein seizes the initiative. Black's main threat in this position is the exchange of queens, after which White will have difficulties over his queenside. Now 19 ... ♖f5 is threatened.

19 ♖e3

White can find no counter, and tries at least to consolidate his hold on the e-file.

19 ... ♖f5
20 ♖xf5 exf5 (171)

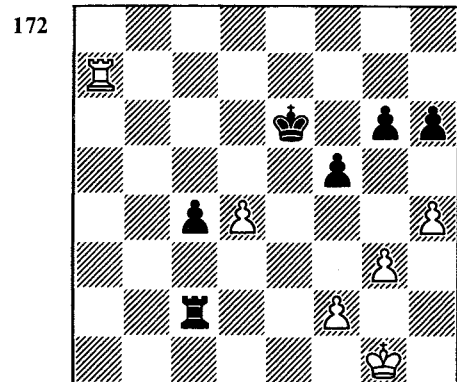


The endgame is unpleasant for White, since his queenside pawn weaknesses are chronic and incurable.

21 ♖ae1 ♖e4 22 ♜d2 ♖xe3 23 ♖xe3 ♜f7 24 h4? g6 25 g3 ♖d8 26 ♜f3 ♖d6 27 ♜e5+?

Now play goes into a rook ending which is difficult for White. 27 ♖e1 or 27 ♜f1 should have been preferred.

27 ... ♜xe5 28 ♖xe5 ♖a6 29 ♖xd5 ♖xa3 30 ♖d7+ ♜e6 31 ♖xb7 ♖xc3 32 ♖xa7 ♖xc2 (172)



White's position is lost, despite the temporary material equality.

33 ♖a5 ♖d2 34 ♖c5 ♖xd4 35 ♜f1 ♜d6 36 ♖c8 f4 37 gxf4

37 ♜e2 fxf3 38 fxf3 ♖g4 39 ♜f3 h5 is also hopeless.

37 ... ♖xf4 38 h5 g5 39 ♖h8 ♖f6 40 ♜e2 ♜c5 41 ♜e3 ♖d6 42 ♜e2 c3 43 ♖c8+ ♜b4 44 ♖b8+ ♜a3 45 ♖c8 ♜b2 46 ♖b8+ ♜c1 47 ♖g8 ♖d2+ White resigns

Yanofsky-Uhlmann
Stockholm Interzonal 1962

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 ♖b4 4 e5 c5 5 a3

♜xc3+ 6 bxc3 ♜e7 7 ♖g4 ♜f5

With 7 ♖g4! White attacks the most vulnerable point in Black's position – the g7 pawn, immediately setting him a concrete problem: whether or not to defend this pawn, and if so, then how? Neither 7 ... g6?, nor 7 ... ♜g6? (8 h4!) is worth considering, and 7 ... ♜f8 is also unappealing, although this move was recommended by Alekhine himself.

At that time 7 ... 0-0 was considered too dangerous, and so Black, following an earlier game Bogoljubow-Flohr where Black successfully solved his opening problems, decides to defend the pawn with his knight. However, this brings only temporary relief, since with his next move White renews the threat with gain of tempo, forcing Black to weaken his kingside.

8 ♜d3 h5
9 ♖f4

Modern theory considers that this guarantees White a persistent advantage, whereas after 9 ♖h3 Black can initiate unclear complications.

9 ... cxd4

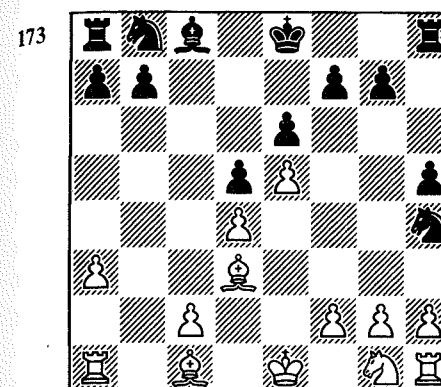
In Gligorić-Pachman, Munich 1958, Black also had a difficult game after 9 ... ♖h4 10 ♜e2! ♖xf4 11 ♜xf4 ♜e7 12 ♜e2! h4 13 ♜h5! ♜f8 14 ♜g5 cxd4?! (14 ... ♜bc6 was the lesser evil) 15 cxd4 b6 16 g4! hxg3 17 fxf3 ♜a6 18 g4 ♜xe2 19 ♜xe2 ♜bc6 20 c3, when his position was cramped, and his pieces, especially his rooks, lacked coordination.

10 cxd4 ♖h4
11 ♖xh4!

An improvement on the routine 11 ♜f3(?), as played in Bogoljubow-Flohr, Nottingham 1936, where after 11 ... ♖xf4 12 ♜xf4 the position was roughly equal,

Black's counterplay on the c-file counterbalancing White's two bishops.

11 ... ♜xh4 (173)



12 ♜g5!

A move of enormous strength. Now a new weakening (... g6) is forced, after which Black will be completely deprived of counterplay. The tactical justification of 12 ♜g5 is that the g2 pawn is immune: 12 ... ♜xg2+? 13 ♜f1 f6 14 exf6 gxf6 14 ♜xf6 ♖f8 15 ♜g6+, and Black stands badly. He is forced to retreat his knight, and soon the bishop at g5, having no opponent, completely destroys the co-ordination of the black pieces.

12 ... ♜f5 13 ♜e2! ♜c6 14 c3 ♜a5

As shown by Keres, things are also difficult for Black after 14 ... ♜d7 15 ♜xf5 exf5 16 ♜f4.

15 ♜f4 ♜e7 16 ♜e2 g6 17 ♜f6

Completing his bind on the kingside.

17 ... ♖h7
18 ♜b5+?!

An unusual decision, which succeeds, but could have been refuted tactically. White should have consolidated his positional advantage with 18 ♖b1! ♜d7 19 h4

♖c8 20 ♜d2 followed by the advance of his kingside pawns by f2-f3 and g2-g4.

18 ... ♜d7 19 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 20 ♜h3

The aim of White's manoeuvre was to take the black king away from the f7 pawn. Now 21 ♜g5 followed by ♜xf7 or ♜g7 is threatened.

20 ... h4?

As shown by Darga, Black could have equalised by 20 ... ♜g8! 21 ♜g5 ♜xf6 22 exf6 ♖hh8 23 ♜xf7 ♖hf8 24 ♜e5+ ♜d6, when White cannot hold his extra pawn, e.g. 25 f7 ♖ac8! 26 ♖c1? ♜b3 27 ♖c2 ♜xd4 with advantage to Black.

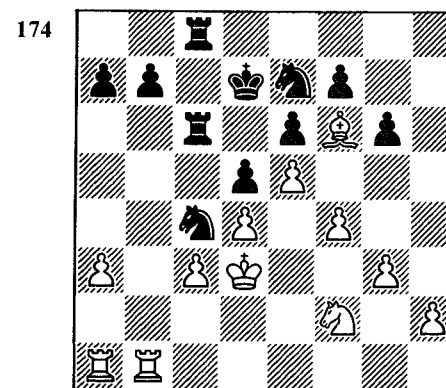
21 ♜e2!

Black's position on the kingside is already indefensible, but it is important for White not to allow counterplay on the other side of the board. 21 ♜g5? ♖h5 22 ♜xf7 ♖c8 would have given Black excellent counterchances.

21 ... ♜g8 22 ♜g5 ♖c8 23 ♜d3 ♖c6 24 g3! ♜c4

Uhlmann prefers to part with a pawn rather than open the h-file, which would be fatal for Black.

25 ♜xh4 ♖h5 26 f4 ♜e7 27 ♜f2 ♖h8 28 ♜f6 ♖hc8 29 ♖hb1! (174)



White must maintain his position on the queenside, and then the passed h-pawn will have the final say.

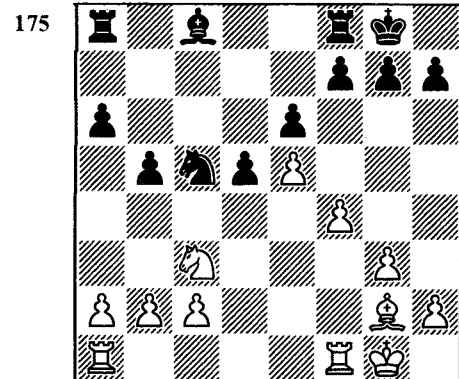
29 ... ♖8c7 30 g4 ♜c8 31 h4 ♜a5 32 ♜d1 ♜b6 33 ♖a2 ♜a4 34 ♖c2 ♜c4 35 ♖b3 ♜e8 36 h5 gxh5 37 gxh5 ♜f8 38 ♖g2!

The h-pawn cannot be stopped.

38 ... ♜cb2+ (desperation) 39 ♜xb2 ♖xc3+ 40 ♖xc3 ♖xc3+ 41 ♜d2 Black resigns

CLASSICAL VARIATION

After 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 the continuation 3 ... ♜f6 was for a long time regarded as Black's main method of play in the French Defence. The endgame arising from this variation after the exchange of dark-square bishops has even been called the 'classic French endgame'.



The diagram position arose in the famous game **Tarrasch-Teichmann**, with which we begin this section. Tarrasch demonstrated the main strategic ideas for White in positions of this type and gained an impressive victory. Many games, begun not only with the French Defence, have followed the path laid by the great German player. In the majority of cases White's

now standard plan, based on his secure control of d4 and a subsequent pawn breakthrough on the kingside, brought him success. (A more modern example, illustrating certain additional nuances, is provided by the game **Korchnoi-Stahlberg**). The endgame was assessed as difficult for Black, who began trying to avoid it.

But in modern chess, defensive technique has improved markedly, and the assessment of many positions has become less categorical. The classic French endgame is not now considered hopelessly bad for Black, and its assessment depends largely on the specific situation when the endgame is reached. At the Montpellier Candidates Tournament (1985) grandmaster Chernin successfully demonstrated in the game **Timman-Chernin** that Black is not obliged to remain passive on the kingside, but can even attempt to take the initiative there.

Tarrasch-Teichmann San Sebastian 1912

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜f6 4 ♖g5 ♖e7 5 e5 ♜fd7 6 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 7 ♖d2 0-0 8 f4 c5 9 ♜f3 ♜c6 10 g3 a6 11 ♖g2 b5 12 0-0 cxd4 13 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 14 ♖xd4 ♖c5 15 ♖xc5 ♜xc5 (175)

The idea of 8 f4 belongs to Steinitz, who in the French Defence preferred to occupy the central d4 square with a knight, rather than possess the pawn centre c3/d4/e5. In his *Die Moderne Schachpartie* Tarrasch makes the following comments on 10 g3: "This move, first suggested by Rubinstein, is fully in accordance with the entire variation. First of all, the bishop at g2 is not at all badly placed; if it is not on the b1-h7 diagonal, then White has no prospects of an attack against the enemy king position. But after all, this entire variation is created not for

such an attack, but to weaken Black's centre."

Black's 11 ... b5 must be criticised: it is justified in the event of White castling long, but at the transition into an endgame it merely creates additional weaknesses in Black's position on the queenside. Quiet development by 11 ... ♜b6 is more appropriate.

After the exchange of queens, White has an enduring superiority. He has a spatial advantage, the better bishop, the excellent blockading square d4, and the possibility of quickly bringing his king to the centre. It is curious that Teichmann evidently had no conception of the difficulties awaiting him, for at this point he offered Tarrasch a draw.

16 ♖e2 ♜d7

16 ... ♜b7 came into consideration, with the aim of playing ... ♜e4 at a convenient moment.

17 ♜d4 ♖ac8 18 ♜f2 ♖c7 19 ♜e3 ♖e8?!

Prophylaxis against f4-f5 does not have any particular point: this move does not come into White's plans. It was more logical to double rooks on the c-file.

20 ♖f2 ♜b7?!

Black prepares to exchange the enemy knight at d4, but the appearance of the white king on this square merely aggravates his difficulties. He should have considered waiting tactics along the lines of 20 ... h5!?, 21 ... g6, 22 ... ♜g7 23 ... ♖h8.

21 ♖f1 ♜a5
22 b3 ♖h6?

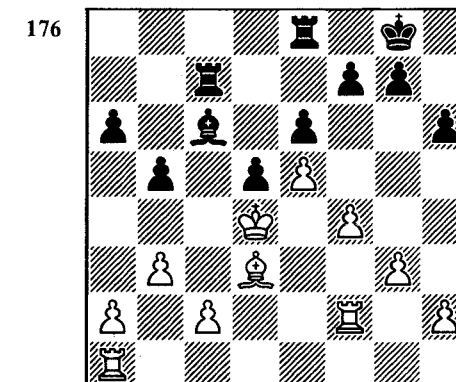
Teichmann displays a poor understanding of the position, and routinely places his h-pawn on a square of the opposite colour to his bishop. To play for a win, White

must sooner or later resort to a pawn offensive on the kingside. For the defending side it is advantageous to reduce the number of pawns, and therefore the h-pawn should have been advanced two squares. Regarding this, Tarrasch made a typical comment: "It is an old truth that, when there is a lack of good moves, bad ones are made. It is soon revealed why this move is bad. Nothing spoils a position worse than pawn moves." In Teichmann's defence, it should be said that, whereas the plans in such positions are now well known, at the time Tarrasch's play was a revelation.

23 ♜d3

Following the withdrawal of the black knight from c5, the white bishop is excellently placed at d3.

23 ... ♜c6 24 ♜xc6! ♖xc6 25 ♜d4 (176)



It now becomes obvious why it was wrong for Black to exchange knights. If the rooks also disappear from the board, the bishop ending will be lost for him. Therefore he is forced to guard the c5 square with his rooks, and White can calmly prepare the further seizure of space on the kingside using his pawns.

25 ... ♜d7

25 ... h5 is already too late: after 26 h3 g6 27 g4 hxg4 28 hxg4 ♖g7 29 ♖h1 ♖h8 30 ♖xh8 ♖xh8 31 ♖c5 the white king breaks into the opponent's position.

26 g4!

Now the drawbacks of 22 ... h6 are soon exploited.

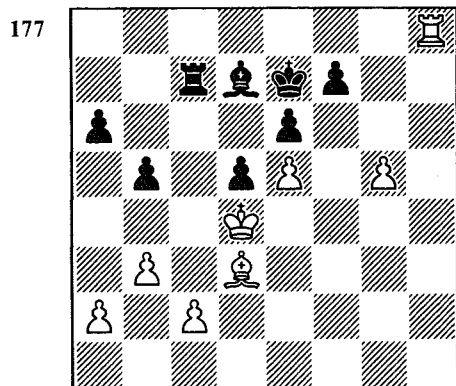
26 ... ♗c8
27 h4 g6

28 g5 h5 29 g6! was threatened.

28 ♖h1 ♖g7 29 h5 ♖h8 30 ♖fh2 ♗d7 31 g5!

This opens up the kingside, after which a white rook gains the opportunity to invade.

31 ... hxg5 32 fxg5 ♖xh5 33 ♖xh5 gxh5 34 ♖xh5 ♖f8 35 ♖h8+ ♖e7 (177)



The end of the game is in sight. All White's pieces are much more active than the opponent's, and his rook, which Black dare not exchange, has already invaded the enemy position. Now White must find a decisive plan.

36 g6?!

As Tarrasch himself indicated, he should have made the preparatory move 36 ♖h7!, and only on 36 ... ♖f8 played 37 g6! fxg6

38 ♗xg6 ♖g8 39 ♖f7. Now 39 ... ♖h8 40 ♗h7 is hopeless for Black, while on 39 ... g4 White wins by 40 ♗h5!, and if 40 ... ♖h8 41 ♗g4!, or 40 ... a5 41 ♗g6 a4 42 ♗h5 a3 43 ♗g6 (pointed out by Neishtadt).

36 ... fxg6 37 ♗xg6 b4 38 ♖h7+ ♖d8 39 ♗d3 ♖c3?

This loses without a struggle. After 36 ... ♖c6 White would still have had the problem of how to get at the e6 pawn.

40 a3! a5
41 ♖h8+ ♖e7

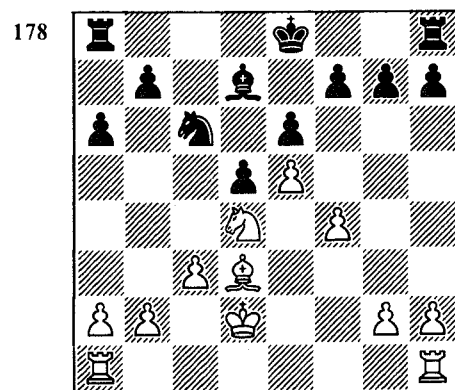
41 ... ♖c7 would not have changed anything after 42 ♖a8 ♖b6 43 ♖a6+. Now **Black resigned**, without waiting for 42 ♖a8.

Korchnoi-Stahlberg Bucharest 1954

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖f6 4 e5 ♖fd7 5 f4 c5 6 dxc5 ♖c6 7 ♖f3 ♗xc5 8 ♗d3 a6 9 ♖e2 ♖d4 10 ♖xd4 ♗xd4 11 ♗e3 ♗xe3 12 ♖xe3 ♖b6 13 ♖xb6 ♖xb6

From a different variation the classic French endgame has again arisen.

14 ♖e2 ♗d7 15 ♖d4 ♖c8 16 ♖d2 ♖e7 17 c3 ♖c6 (178)



There is a slight distinction compared with the Tarrasch-Teichmann game: White has played c2-c3 instead of b2-b3, and Black has not yet advanced his b-pawn. As a result it is unfavourable for White to exchange on c6, since Black would recapture with the b-pawn and then be able to challenge White's control of d4 by playing ... c5.

18 ♖f3

For the moment White avoids the exchange of knights. He probably had in mind the Tarrasch-Teichmann game, where the win would have been uncertain without the weak move ... h6? Besides, the position of the white king at d4 is less important, as long as Black is able to block its access to c5 by playing ... b6.

18 ... ♖c8 19 ♖hf1 ♖e7 20 ♖ae1 g6 21 ♖f2 ♖c7 22 ♖e3 b5?!

Black is tired of waiting and tries to initiate counterplay by ... b4. White's reply is directed against this threat.

23 ♖c2 ♖b8
24 ♖ec1 ♖a5

24 ... b4 could have been met by 25 c4, when 25 ... dxc4 loses to 26 ♖xc4 ♖bc8 27 ♗e4 etc.

25 ♖d4 ♖c6
26 g3

Allowing the exchange on d4, yet on the very next move White prevents this. Why? After 26 ... ♖xd4 27 ♖xd4 the situation is more favourable for White than on move 18 (Black has played ... b5), but not as favourable as in the Tarrasch-Teichmann game (the weakening advance ... h6 has not been made). Perhaps therefore White was intending 27 cxd4, e.g. 27 ... ♖xc2 28 ♖xc2 ♖c8 29 ♖c5, when after 29 ... ♖xc5 30 dxc5 he has more possibilities

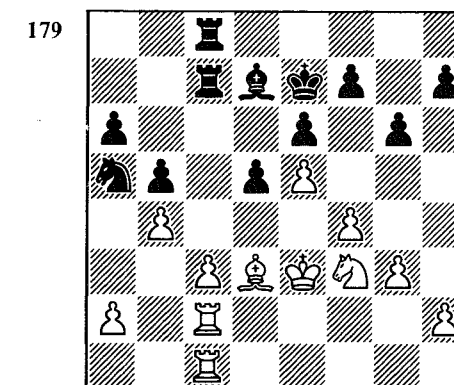
with his pawn at c5 than in the similar bishop ending with his pawn at d4.

26 ... ♖bc8 27 ♖f3 ♖a5 28 ♖g5 ♖h8

White was hoping to provoke 28 ... h6, in order to return his knight to d4 and win as in the Tarrasch-Teichmann game.

29 ♖f3 ♖hc8
30 b4!? (179)

White leaves himself with a weakness at c3, but forces Black to commit himself.



30 ... ♖c4+?

Possibly the losing move, since the resulting knight v. bishop ending is easier for White than the bishop v. bishop ending. After 30 ... ♖c6 White could have manoeuvred his knight to c5, but the position would have remained more double-edged.

31 ♗xc4 ♖xc4

Either pawn capture would have removed White's weakness at c3 and left him with a free hand.

32 ♖d2 ♖4c7
33 ♖b3 f6

Black tries to gain some room for his pieces, before White tightens his grip still further.

34 ♖c5 a5 35 exf6+ ♜xf6 36 ♜d4 ♖a8
37 ♖e1 ♜f7 38 a3 ♜c8 39 ♖ce2 ♖c6 40 g4
♖a7

Black defends against the threatened 41 f5, but now White signals his intention to break through in a different way.

41 g5!

White plans to force open the h-file, and Black, tied to the defence of his e-pawn, finds this difficult to parry.

41 ... ♜d7 42 h4 ♜e7 43 ♜d3

To avoid a possible check at c4 after the knight moves, but Euwe reckons that the immediate 43 h5! would have won, e.g. 43 ... ♜f7 (43 ... gxf5 44 f5) 44 ♖h2 ♜e8 45 hxf6+ ♜xf6 46 ♖h6+ ♜f5 47 ♖f6+ ♜g4 48 ♖xe6 etc.

43 ... axb4 44 axb4 ♖a3?! 45 h5 ♜f7

This desperate bishop sacrifice is the point of Black's previous move, but White quite rightly ignores it and sticks to his original plan.

46 ♖h2! gxf5
47 ♖xh5 ♜g8

If 47 ... ♜g6, then 48 ♖h6+ ♜f5 49 ♖f6+ ♜g4 and 50 ♜xd7 decides the issue. After the text move Black is ready to play 48 ... ♜e8 and 49 ... ♜g6+.

48 f5! ♖xc5

A last vain attempt. After 48 ... exf5 White wins with 49 ♖e7 ♜c8 50 ♖hxh7.

49 bxc5 b4 50 fxe6 ♜e8 51 ♖h2 bxc3 52 ♜d4 ♜g6 53 e7 ♖a8 54 ♜xc3 ♜e4 55 ♖f2 Black resigns

Timman-Chernin
Montpellier Candidates 1985

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜f6 4 e5 ♜fd7 5 f4
c5 6 ♜f3 ♜c6 7 ♜e3 cxd4

The piece sacrifice 7 ... ♖b6 8 ♜a4 ♖a5+ 9 c3 cxd4 10 b4 ♜xb4 (after 10 ... ♖c7 11 ♜xd4 White has a strong centre and good attacking chances on the kingside) 11 cxb4 ♜xb4+ 12 ♜d2 ♜xd2+ 13 ♜xd2 b6 (first played in Bronstein-Portisch, Amsterdam 1964) recently enjoyed a burst of popularity, until some powerful White wins dampened Black's spirits and suggested that here the knight is worth more than the three pawns:

14 ♜d3 ♜a6 15 ♜b2 ♜xd3 16 ♜xd3 ♜c5 17 ♜f2 ♜a4 18 0-0 ♜c3 19 ♖g4 0-0 20 ♜f3 ♖ac8 21 ♖h4 ♖a4 22 ♜g4 ♜e2+ 23 ♜h1 ♖c2 24 ♖ae1 d3 25 ♖d1 h6 26 ♜xh6+ gxf6 27 ♖xh6 f6 28 exf6 ♖c7 29 ♜e5 ♖h7 30 ♖g6+ 1-0 (Timman-Korchnoi, Brussels 1987).

14 ♜d3 ♜a6 15 ♜b2 ♜c5 16 ♜xa6 ♖xa6 17 ♖e2 ♖a3 18 ♖b5+ ♜e7 19 0-0 ♖e3+ 20 ♖f2 ♖hc8 21 ♖d1 g6 22 ♜f1 ♖a3 23 ♖xd4 ♖xa2 24 ♜g3 ♖b3 25 ♖e2 ♜d7 26 ♖d1 ♖c3 27 ♜d3 ♖ac8 28 ♖ff1 a5 29 f5! gxf5 30 ♜f4 ♖8c5 31 ♖h5 ♜xe5 32 ♖g5+ ♜d7 33 ♜xf5 ♜c6 34 ♜xe6! ♜xe6 35 ♖de1+ ♜d7 36 ♖e7+ ♜c8 37 ♖g8+ 1-0 (Chandler-M. Gurevich, Leningrad 1987).

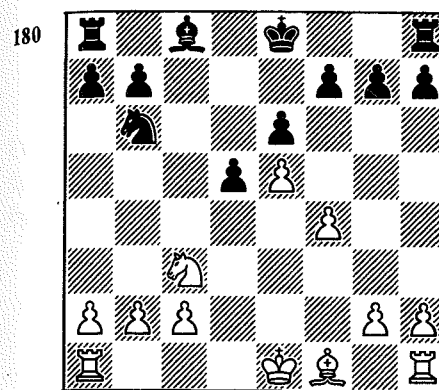
These disasters prompted Vaganian to experiment in several games with 9 ... c4, but after 10 b4 ♖c7 White retains a persistent spatial advantage.

8 ♜xd4 ♜c5 9 ♖d2 ♜xd4 10 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 11 ♖xd4 ♖b6 12 ♖xb6

The immediate queen exchange would seem to be the most promising continuation. In the game Short-Chernin from the same event, after 12 ♜b5 ♖xd4 13 ♜xd4 ♜e7 14 g3 ♜b8!? Black gained a draw with comparative ease: 15 ♜d2 ♜d7 16 ♜d3 ♜c6 17 ♜f3 h6 18 h4 h5 19 a3

♖ac8 20 ♖he1 ♜a5 21 b3 g6 22 ♜d4 ♖c7 23 a4 a6 24 c3 ♖hc8 25 ♖ec1 ♜e8 26 ♜e2 ♜d7 27 ♖a3 ♜e8 28 ♜d3 ♜d7 29 ♜e2 ♜e8 30 ♜c2 d4 31 c4 ♜c6 32 a5 f6 33 exf6+ ♜xf6 34 ♜d2 ♖d8 35 ♖e1 ♖e7 36 ♖aa1 e5 37 ♜e4 ♜f7 38 ♜xc6 ½-½.

12 ... ♜xb6 (180)



13 ♜b5 ♜e7 14 0-0-0 ♜d7 15 ♜d4 ♜a4

Black regroups his knight to a better square, before White restricts it by b2-b3.

Mention should also be made of the game Chandler-Short (Hastings 1988/89), where White chose the quite different plan of playing to open the c-file: 15 ... h5 16 g3 ♜a4 17 ♜d3 ♜c5 18 h3 ♖ag8 19 ♖hf1 g6 20 ♜d2 ♜e8 21 ♖c1 ♜d7 22 b4 ♜a4 23 c4 dxc4 24 ♖xc4, and Black held the draw only with considerable difficulty.

16 ♜d3 ♜c5
17 ♖de1 h5

As the next two moves show, Black is aiming not only to restrain the opponent's kingside advance, but even to take the initiative there himself. Now White could have blocked the kingside by h2-h4, but this would have severely reduced his own chances.

18 g3 ♖ag8
19 ♖hf1 g5!

Chernin's idea of a kingside pawn offensive was employed soon afterwards by Korchnoi in his game against Nunn at the first World Team Championship, Lucerne 1985 (from Diag. 180): 13 0-0-0 ♜d7 14 ♜d3 h5 15 ♜e2 ♜e7 16 ♜d4 g6 17 g3 ♜c6 18 ♖de1 ♜d7 19 c3 (Hort considers that 19 h3! followed by ♖hf1-f2 would have retained an advantage for White) 19 ... ♖ag8 20 ♖hf1? (again 20 h3 was better, or else 20 h4 blocking the kingside) 20 ... g5! 21 f5 g4 22 ♖e2 h4 23 b4 hxg3 24 hxg3 ♜a4 25 ♜b2 ♖h3 26 ♖g1 ♖gh8 27 ♜a3 ♖c8! 28 ♜b2 (after 28 ♜xa4 ♖xc3 the main threat of 29 ... ♜b6+, 30 ... ♖a3, 31 ... ♜d7 and 32 ... a6 mate) 28 ... a6 29 ♖gg2 ♜d1 30 ♖e3 ♜b6 31 ♖f2 ♖h1 32 fxe6 fxe6 33 ♖f1 ♜a4+ 34 ♜c1 ♖xc3+ 0-1.

20 f5 g4

Now the opening of the h-file cannot be prevented.

21 f6+ ♜d8 22 ♖e3 h4 23 b4

Forcing the exchange of Black's knight before he has time for ... ♖g5, when ... ♜e4 would be a threat.

23 ... hxg3 24 hxg3 ♜xd3+ 25 cxd3 ♖h2 26 ♜e2?!

White plans to play his king to d4, but overlooks a clever counter by his opponent. Chernin considers that 26 ♖e2 would have given him equal play.

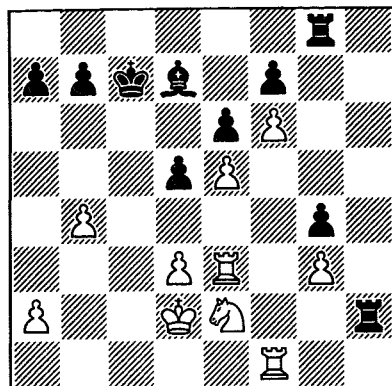
26 ... ♜c7
27 ♜d2

(diagram 181)

27 ... d4!

The pin on White's knight proves highly unpleasant, and can be broken only by giving up material.

181



28 ♖e4 ♗c6 29 ♖c1 ♖b8 30 ♖xd4?

This loses a piece. The only chance was to give up the exchange on c6.

30 ... ♗f3 31 ♖e1 ♖g5! 32 ♖d7 ♖xe5 33 ♖xf7 ♗xe2 34 ♖f8+ ♖c7 35 ♖f7 ♖f2 36 ♖c1+ ♖b6 37 ♖e1 ♖f1+?!

After 37 ... ♖ff5 38 ♖c5 ♗f3+ Black simply remains a piece up.

38 ♖d2 ♖xc1??

Black would still have been winning after 38 ... ♖f2!. Now White regains his piece, and the draw becomes unavoidable.

39 ♖xc1 ♖f5 40 ♖e8 ♖xf7 41 ♖xe6+ ♖b5 42 ♖xe2 ♖f3 Draw agreed

McCutcheon VARIATION

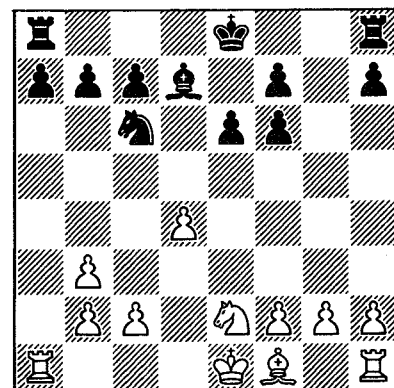
After the opening moves 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♗f6 4 ♗g5 ♗b4 5 exd5 ♗xd5 an ending can arise

virtually straight from the opening, and on this theme we give the game Smirin-Shereshevsky. Most typical of the McCutcheon Variation is the ending of Klován-Shereshevsky, in which the lively tactical battle begun in the opening was carried over to the endgame.

Smirin-Shereshevsky
Minsk 1985

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♗f6 4 ♗g5 ♗b4 5 exd5 ♗xd5 6 ♗xf6 gxf6 7 ♗e2 ♗c6 8 ♗d2 ♗xc3 9 ♗xc3 ♗d7 10 ♗b3 ♗xb3 11 axb3 (182)

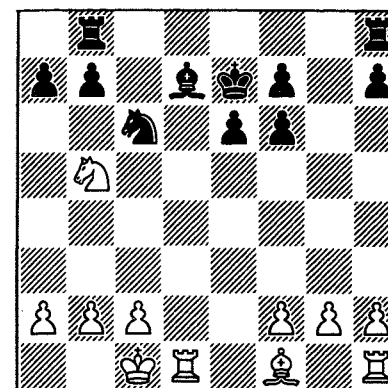
182



In the McCutcheon Variation the exchange 5 exd5 often leads by force to an endgame. Instead of 9 ♗xc3, White could have played 9 ♗xc3!? ♗xd4 10 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 11 0-0-0 ♗c6 (not 11 ... c5?! in view of 12 ♗e4 b6 13 c3! ♗f5 14 g4! ♗h4 15 ♗xf6+ ♗e7 16 g5) 12 ♗b5 ♗e7 13 ♗xc7 ♖b8 14 ♗b5 ♗d7 (183).

In the diagram position Black has fair counterchances, with play on the g-file and the a8-h1 diagonal, e.g. 15 ♗e2 ♖g8 16 g3 ♗e5!?. An important role is played by the position of the white pawn at a2, allowing Black to play his knight to e5 without loss of time (if 17 ♗xa7 ♖a8).

183



If in the opening White changes his move order with 8 a3 (instead of 8 ♗d2), then Black too should react differently: 8 ... ♗xc3+ 9 ♗xc3 ♗xd4 10 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 11 0-0-0 c5!. The position of the white pawn at a3 makes this move possible. The game Litvinov-Shereshevsky, Minsk 1978, continued 12 ♗e4 b6 13 c3 ♗b3+ 14 ♖c2 ♗a5 15 b4 ♗b7 16 ♗xf6+ ♖e7 17 ♗e4 ♗d7 18 b5 a6 19 ♖b1 ♗d6 20 ♗xd6 ♖xd6 21 bxa6 ♖c7 22 ♗d3 ♗c8 23 ♖hd1 ♗xa6, and a draw was soon agreed.

Let us return to the Smirin-Shereshevsky game. In the diagram position Black must play accurately in order to gain full equality. His pawn formation is slightly compromised, and much depends on whether or not White can manage to develop his kingside freely and obtain a positional advantage.

11 ... ♗b4!

With gain of tempo the knight makes way for the bishop.

12 0-0-0 ♗c6 13 ♗f4 0-0-0 14 c3 ♗d5 15 ♗h5

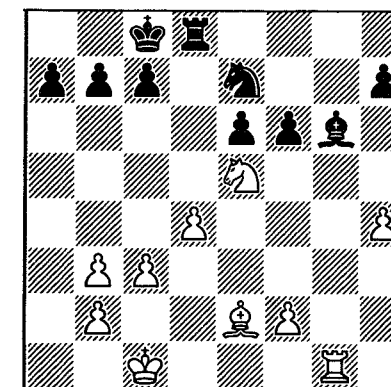
The white knight has occupied a square weakened by the doubling of the black pawn, but Black replies with timely counterplay against the g2 pawn.

15 ... ♖hg8!
16 ♖g1 ♗e7!

A little bit of tactics. 17 ... ♗f3 is threatened, and on 17 ♗xf6 there follows 17 ... ♖g6 18 ♗h5 ♗f3 19 ♗f4 ♗xd1 20 ♗xg6 hxg6 21 ♖xd1 c5 with the better ending for Black.

17 ♗e2 ♗xg2 18 ♗xf6 ♖g6 19 ♗g4 ♗e4 20 ♗e5 ♖xg1 21 ♖xg1 ♗g6 22 h4 f6 (184)

184



As a result of virtually forced action by both sides, a roughly equal ending has been reached. Now the following variation was possible: 23 ♗d3 ♖g8 24 ♗c5 ♗f7 25 ♖xg8+ ♗xg8 26 ♗c4 ♗g6, with a draw the most probable outcome. Instead, White exchanges knight for bishop, after which the advantage immediately passes to Black.

23 ♗xg6? hxg6 24 ♗g4 ♗d7 25 ♖e1 f5 26 ♗f3 c6 27 ♗d2 ♖h8 28 ♖h1 ♗d6 29 c4 e5 30 ♖e3 exd4+ 31 ♖xd4 c5+ 32 ♖c3 b6 33 b4 cxb4+ 34 ♖xb4 ♗c6+!

Despite the simplification, White's defence is not easy. The weakness of the h4 pawn is felt, and the black king and knight have a number of good posts on the dark squares.

35 ♖c3

White decides against going into the rook ending, since after 35 ♖xc6 ♜xc6 36 ♜g1 a5+! he loses a pawn.

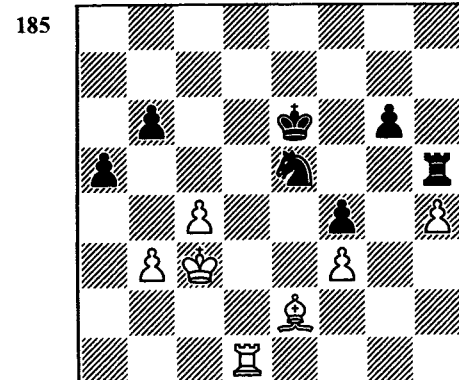
35 ... ♜e5 36 ♙e2 f4 37 f3 a5 38 ♜d4?! ♜c6+ 39 ♜c3 ♜e5

39 ... ♜e8 was very strong, but in time trouble Black decided to repeat the position.

40 b3 ♜h5
41 ♜d1+

White sealed this, practically the only move.

41 ... ♜e6 (185)



42 ♜d5?

This makes things significantly easier for Black. After 42 ♜d8! ♜xh4 43 ♜b8 ♜d7 44 ♜e8+ ♜f7 45 ♜d8 ♜e7 46 ♜g8 the only way to retain winning chances would have been by the rather unusual manoeuvre 46 ... ♜f6 47 ♜d8 ♜h7! followed by ... ♜g5-h4-g3!

42 ... ♜xh4 43 ♜b5 ♜d7 44 ♙d3 ♜h5 45 ♙xg6 ♜xb5 46 cxb5 ♜d5

It transpires that one of the white pawns is bound to fall.

47 b4?

Conceding the d4 square is equivalent

to resignation. However, things would also have been bad for White after other continuations. Black would have placed his king at c5 and knight at e5, when the white bishop has to be at h5. Then by the manoeuvre ... ♜d5, ♙e8 ♜d6, ♙h5 ♜c5 White is given the move. After the forced ♙g4 Black transfers his knight to d6 with a technically easy win.

47 ... axb4+ 48 ♜xb4 ♜d4 49 ♙h5 ♜e5 50 ♜b3 ♜e3 51 ♜c2

Things are not changed by 51 ♜b4 ♜xf3 52 ♜c4 ♜d2+ 53 ♜d5 f3 54 ♙g4 f2 55 ♙h3 ♜e2 56 ♜c6 ♜c4.

51 ... ♜xf3 52 ♜d1 ♜d2 White resigns

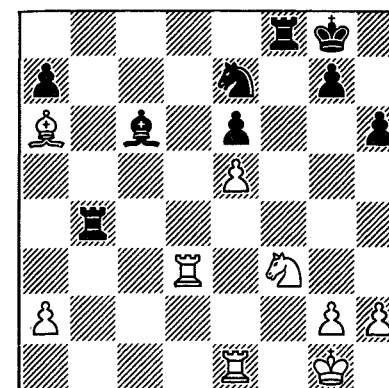
Klovan-Shereshevsky Lvov 1977

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜f6 4 ♙g5 ♙b45 e5 h6 6 ♙e3

In the game Fischer-Petrosian, Candidates Tournament, Curaçao 1962, after 6 ♙d2 ♙xc3 White chose an unusual plan: 7 ♙xc3 (7 bxc3 ♜e4 8 ♙g4 is the critical continuation) 7 ... ♜e4 8 ♙a5, with the idea of provoking ... b6, thus blocking the black queen's path to a5. But Petrosian reacted simply and effectively, and his threatening queenside pressure forced Fischer to take play into an ending by a temporary pawn sacrifice: 8 ... 0-0 9 ♙d3 ♜c6 10 ♙c3 ♜xc3 11 bxc3 f6 12 f4 fxe5 13 fxe5 ♜e7 14 ♜f3 c5 15 0-0 ♙a5 16 ♙e1 ♙d7 17 c4 ♙xe1 18 ♜fxe1 dxc4 19 ♙e4 cxd4 20 ♙xb7 ♜ab8 21 ♙a6 ♜b4 22 ♜ad1 d3 23 cxd3 cxd3 24 ♜xd3 ♙c6 (186).

In the ending Black has the initiative: the white a2 and e5 pawns are more vulnerable than the black pawns on the same files, and his minor pieces, which have excellent posts at d5 and f5, are much better placed than the

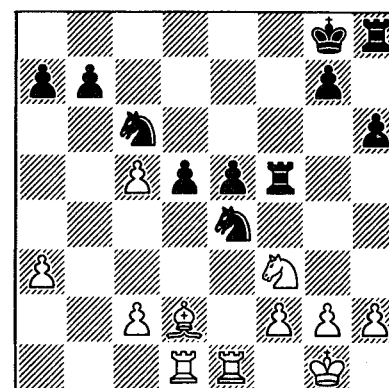
186



opponent's. Even so, White's position contains sufficient defensive resources, and it was only a further mistake by Fischer which allowed Black to win.

6 ... ♜e4 7 ♙g4 ♜f8 8 a3 ♙xc3+ 9 bxc3 ♜xc3 10 ♙d3 c5 11 dxc5 ♜c6 12 ♜f3 f5 13 exf6 ♙xf6 14 ♙h5 e5 15 ♙g6 ♙d7 16 0-0 ♜g8 17 ♜fe1 ♜f8 18 ♙d2 ♜e4 19 ♜ad1 ♙f5 20 ♙xf5 ♙xf5 21 ♙xf5 ♜xf5 (187)

187



Here there has been a sharp battle right from the opening. White temporarily sacrificed a pawn, and Black replied with a counter-sacrifice: 10 ... c5. White's queenside pawns were completely broken up, but Black's king was prevented from castling, which disrupted the coordination of his

heavy pieces along the back rank. Each side constantly obtained new pluses and minuses, and the transition into the endgame did not change the picture.

The reader should note White's profound move 15 ♙g6!, for a long time shutting Black's king's rook out of the game, whereas 15 ♙g5?! hxg5 16 ♙xh8+ ♜e7 or ♜h4?! e4 would have given Black excellent counterplay.

Later, one of the authors came to the conclusion that the soundest plan in reply to 6 ♙e3 is 7 ... g6. The discussion on the McCutcheon Variation continued in the game Klovan-Shereshevsky, Minsk 1978: 7 ... g6 8 a3 ♙xc3+ 9 bxc3 ♜xc3 10 ♙d3 ♜c6 11 h4 ♜e7 12 ♜f3 ♙d7 13 h5 g5 14 ♜xg5 hxg5 15 ♙xg5 ♙c6 16 ♙f6 ♜d7, and after a prolonged battle, not without its mistakes, a draw resulted deep in the endgame. 15 ... ♙b5! (instead of 15 ... ♙c6) would have given Black a big advantage, after either 16 ♙f6 ♙xd3 17 cxd3 ♜h7, or 17 ♙xh8 ♙f5 and 18 ... c5 with a very strong counter-attack.

The next game, Klovan-Shereshevsky, Odessa 1981, brought Black success: 7 ... g6 8 a3 ♙xc3+ 9 bxc3 ♜xc3 10 ♙d3 ♜c6 11 h4 ♜e7 12 f3 ♙d7 13 ♜h3 ♜f5 14 ♙d2 ♜a4 15 h5 gxh5 16 ♙f4 ♙e7 17 0-0 0-0-0 18 ♙e1 ♜de8 19 ♙xf5 exf5 20 ♙h4 ♙e6 21 ♙d2 ♙c6 22 ♜f4 ♙c3 23 ♙f2 ♙e6 24 ♜xh5 ♜b8 25 ♜f4 ♜c8 26 ♙e7 a5 27 ♜ab1 ♜he8 28 ♙h4 c5 29 ♜e2 ♙c4 30 ♜b3 ♙xc2 31 ♜fb1 ♜c7 32 dxc5 d4 33 ♜b5 ♙c4 34 ♜xd4 ♙xf2+ 35 ♙xf2 ♜c3 36 ♜c1 ♜xb5 37 ♜xc4 ♜xd4 38 ♙xd4 ♜c6 39 ♙a4 ♙g6 40 ♜f2 ♜eg8 41 ♜xa5 ♜xg2+ White resigns.

For a better understanding of the opening play, it is worth knowing that 6 ♙e3 is played primarily with the aim of forestalling ... c5. And Black's manoeuvre 10 ... ♜c6 11 h4 ♜e7 is based on the fact that the white bishop at e3 is 'hanging' after 12 h5?! g5 13

f4? ♖f5.

But let us return to the ending from the game Klován-Shereshevsky, Lvov 1977.

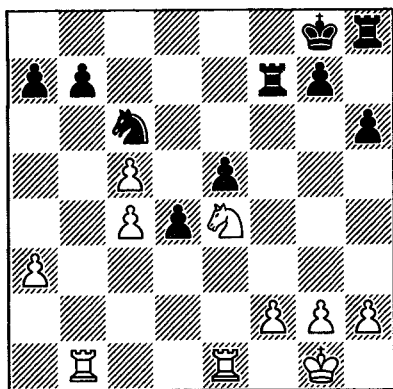
In the diagram position White has the initiative, which compensates for his queen-side pawn weaknesses, but not more.

22 c4!

A good move, which fixes the black pawns in the centre. 22 ♖c1 would have been weaker in view of 22 ... ♖c3 23 ♖d3 d4.

22 ... ♖xd2 23 ♖xd2 d4 24 ♖b1 ♖f7 25 ♖e4 (188)

188



25 ... ♖h7?

A mistake in the assessment of the position, which in the end leads to Black's defeat. Both players had spent a lot of time on the opening, and it is understandable that, now short of time, Black should want to try and neutralise the opponent's initiative as quickly as possible. The simplification occurring after the text move seemed to Black to be favourable, and to foresee that in the rook ending he would be one tempo away from a draw was at the given moment impossible. He should have been 'patient' for one more move, and coolly played 25 ... ♖d7!, when neither 26 ♖d6 b6 27 ♖e4 bxc5 28 ♖xc5 ♖c7, nor 26

♖b5 ♖h7 27 ♖eb1 ♖b8 28 ♖d6 ♖d8 achieves anything particular for White.

26 ♖d6 ♖c7
27 ♖xb7 ♖b8?!

Knowing the further course of the game, one has to criticise this move. But 27 ... ♖b8 and the entire following series of moves were planned by Black when he played 25 ... ♖h7?.

28 ♖d6 ♖xb1 29 ♖xb1 ♖d8 30 ♖b8 ♖e6 31 ♖e8 ♖xc5 32 ♖xe5 ♖b7 33 ♖xb7 ♖xb7 34 ♖f1 ♖b3 35 ♖a5 d3 36 ♖e1 ♖b2 37 ♖xa7 ♖e2+ 38 ♖d1 ♖xf2 39 ♖d7 ♖xg2 40 ♖xd3 ♖xh2 41 c5 ♖h5

Black sealed this move, but resigned the game without resuming. A straightforward analysis shows that after 42 ♖c3 ♖d5+ 43 ♖e2 ♖d8 44 c6 ♖g6 45 c7 ♖c8 46 a4 ♖f7 47 a5 ♖e7 48 a6 ♖d7 49 a7 he is one tempo away from a draw (49 ... ♖a8 50 c8=♖+).

TARRASCH VARIATION

At the international tournament in Manchester, 1890, the game Tarrasch-Scheve took the following course: 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 g6 4 ♖d3 ♖g7 5 ♖e2 ♖e7 6 0-0 b6 7 c3 0-0 8 e5 c5 9 f4 ♖a6, with a satisfactory position for Black. Since then the variation beginning with 3 ♖d2 has been associated with the name of Tarrasch. However, for many years this method of play was not especially popular, and Tarrasch himself soon gave up his invention, preferring 3 ♖c3.

An increased interest in the Tarrasch Variation and the appearance of new strategic ideas began in the late 1930s. Analytical research by Botvinnik, Boleslavsky, Bronstein and Geller, and later

the enormous practical success of Karpov with the white pieces, led to a situation where 3 ♖d2 began to supplant 3 ♖c3. Now these two continuations are considered to be roughly equivalent.

The most common replies to the Tarrasch Variation are 3 ... c5 and 3 ... ♖f6. Less popular are 3 ... ♖c6 and 3 ... ♖e7, while after 3 ... a6 the play usually reduces to positions typical of the 3 ... c5 variation.

3 ... ♖f6, 3 ... ♖c6 and 3 ... ♖e7 lead to a complicated strategic battle, but the endings resulting from these variations usually have a general 'French' outline with no individual features, and are not specially analysed in this book. Although in the Tal-Timman match, Montpellier 1985, the Soviet grandmaster employed the interesting move 11 ♖f4!? and gained victory in the endgame:

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 ♖f6 4 e5 ♖fd7 5 c3 c5 6 ♖d3 ♖c6 7 ♖e2 cxd4 8 cxd4 f6 9 exf6 ♖xf6 10 ♖f3 ♖d6 11 ♖f4 ♖xf4 12 ♖xf4 ♖a5+ 13 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 14 ♖xd2 0-0 15 ♖he1 ♖e4+ 16 ♖xe4 ♖xf4 17 ♖d3 ♖xd4 18 ♖e3 ♖xf3 19 ♖xf4 ♖xe1 20 ♖xe1 ♖d7 21 ♖e5 a6 22 ♖d6 ♖b5 23 ♖xb5 axb5 24 ♖xe6 d4 25 ♖e2 d3 26 ♖d2 ♖c8 27 b4 ♖c2 28 ♖xd3 ♖xa2 29 ♖f3 ♖c2 30 ♖f5 b6 31 h4 ♖c4 32 ♖xb5 ♖xh4 33 g3 ♖d4+ 34 ♖c7 ♖f7 35 ♖xb6 ♖f6 36 f4 h6 37 ♖a5 ♖d3 38 g4 ♖a3+ 39 ♖b6 ♖f3 40 ♖f5+ ♖e6 41 b5 g6 42 ♖c5 ♖xf4 43 ♖c6+ ♖f7 44 ♖c7 Resigns.

In the magazine 64 Tal gave the following brief explanation: "If Black does not go in for 15 ... ♖e4+ or does not take the pawn - 17 ... ♖xd4 - then he simply has a bad position. On 24 ... ♖xa2 White would have consolidated his advantage with 25 ♖e2, while after 30 ... g6 31 ♖xb5 ♖xf2 32 ♖xb7 ♖xg2 he would have won by 33 h4! ♖g4 34 b5 ♖xh4 35 b6 ♖b4 36 ♖c5 ♖b1 37 ♖d7." In a more detailed commentary in *Informator*, Tal and Bagirov

established that Timman's 28th move was a mistake. After 28 ... ♖xf2! 29 ♖d5 ♖xa2 30 ♖xb5 ♖xg2 31 ♖xb7 ♖xh2 Black would have had every right to count on a draw. Nevertheless, a new spate of endgames of this type can be expected.

A common factor of the 3 ... ♖f6 and 3 ... ♖c6 variations is the early undermining by Black of the enemy pawn centre by ... f6, and this chapter opens with an example of this type: **Matanović-Barcza**.

The endgame most typical of the Tarrasch Variation is where Black has an isolated pawn at d5. White's chances are nearly always better, and Black has to battle for a draw. Several endings of this type are given, and the chapter ends with two examples where, instead of an isolated pawn, Black has a pair of hanging pawns, the c-pawn being backward.

Matanović-Barcza

Stockholm Interzonal 1952

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 ♖f6 4 e5 ♖fd7 5 ♖d3 c5 6 c3 ♖c6 7 ♖e2 ♖b6

At one time ... ♖b6 (immediately or after the preparatory exchange 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4) was considered obligatory in this position. In analogy with the 3 e5 c5 variation the black queen attacks the pawns at d4 and b2. But in our day, when it has been found that White can parry this pressure, a different plan has become common.

After 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4 Black plays 8 ... f6, undermining the pawn chain, contrary to Nimzowitsch, 'at its head'. Pressure on the d4 pawn, which has become weak after 9 exf6 ♖xf6, may be exerted by the interesting manoeuvre ... ♖c7, ... ♖h5, ... g6 and ... ♖g7. At g7 the queen is very well placed, attacking the d4 pawn and assisting an attack on the kingside with ... h6 and ...

g5. The theory of this variation is growing exponentially, and assessments are constantly changing. We give two examples:

Smagin-Vaiser, Barnaul 1984: 7 ... cxd4 8 cxd4 f6 9 exf6 Qxf6 10 Qf3 Qd6 11 0-0 Wc7 12 Qc3 a6 13 Qg5 0-0 14 Qh4 Qh5 15 Qg3 (15 Rc1! is stronger) 15 ... Qxg3 16 hxg3 g6 17 Rc1 Wg7 18 Qb1 g5! with an attack for Black.

Geller-Dolmatov, Moscow 1985: 10 0-0 Qd6 11 Qf3 Wc7 12 Qg5 0-0 13 Rc1 Qg4 14 Qg3 g6 15 Qh4 e5 16 Qe2 Qf6 17 dxe5 Qxe5 18 b4 Qf4 19 Qxf4 Wxf4 20 b5 Qb4? 21 Qxg6! hxg6 22 a3, with advantage to White.

8 Qf3 cxd4 9 cxd4 f6 10 exf6 Qxf6 11 0-0 Qd6 12 Wd2

A strange move, which today is merely of historical value. By the transfer of his queen to the kingside White does not achieve anything, and time is lost.

White has a wide choice on his 12th move, but perhaps the strongest continuation is that introduced by Geller - 12 Qc3! . His game with Uhlmann (Skopje 1968) continued 12 ... 0-0 13 Qe3! Qd7 14 a3 Wd8 15 h3 Rc8 16 Re1 Qh8 17 Rc1 We8 18 Rc2 a6 19 Rce2 , with powerful pressure in the centre. Or 13 ... Wd8 14 Qg5 Qd7 15 Re1 Wb8 16 Qh4 a6 17 Rc1 b5 18 Qb1 Qf4 19 Qg3 , again with advantage to White, Karpov-Hort, Budapest 1973.

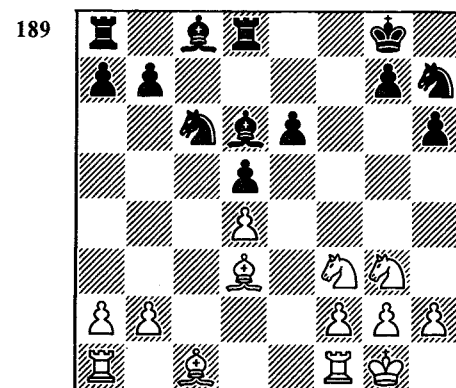
12 ... 0-0
13 Wg5 Wd8

Even stronger, as suggested by Kotov, was 13 ... Qd7! , and after 14 Wb4 Qb4 15 Qb1 Qb5 16 Re1 Qd3 the advantage is with Black, Milić-Udovčić, Yugoslavia 1957.

Grandmaster Barcza, a great lover of and expert on the endgame, plans the

exchange of queens. A perfectly possible plan, especially after encountering an innovation.

14 Qg3 h6 15 Wb4 Qh7 16 Wxd8 Rxd8 (189)



The exchange of queens has led to a complicated position, which is hard even to call an endgame. Both sides have weak pawns in the centre. White's chances look slightly preferable, but in this type of situation everything depends on the practical strength of the players and their endgame ability, since the position is not yet clarified. Black can hope not only to equalise, but also to seize the initiative. In short, all the play lies ahead.

17 Re1 Qd7
18 Qd2

Black's e6 pawn and central e5 square are weak. It is advantageous for White to exchange the dark-square bishops. Of his minor pieces, his knight at g3 is least well placed. Therefore 18 Qe2 with the idea of 19 Qf4 looks logical, but then control over e5 is temporarily lost, and by 18 ... e5!? 19 dxe5 Qxe5 20 Qxe5 Qxe5 21 Qc3 Re8 Black can obtain active counterplay. Therefore Matanović first plays his bishop to c3, and then tries to improve the position of his knight at g3.

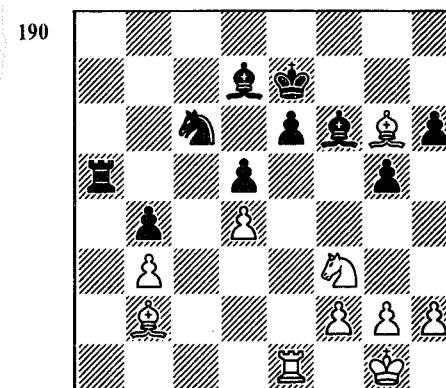
18 ... Qe7 19 Qe2 Qf8 20 $\text{Qf4?!$

The best place for this knight is at d3, and the following piece arrangement came into consideration: Rad1 , Qc3 , Qb1 , Qc1 (or Qf4) and Qd3 . Had White managed to play this, he would have achieved secure control of e5 and could have counted on an advantage. But now, with a pawn thrust on the kingside, Barcza provokes the exchange of knights, and the initiative gradually passes to Black.

20 ... g5! 21 Qg6 Qxg6 22 Qxg6 Qg7 23 $\text{Qh5?!$ Qf6 24 Qc3 b5! 25 b3 a5 26 a3 b4 27 axb4 axb4 28 Qb2 Ra5 29 Qg4 Qf7 30 Qh5+ Qe7 31 Qg6

White has found a way of bringing his light-square bishop back into play, but Black's king has already reached the centre and the a-file is in his hands.

31 ... Rda8
32 Rxa5 Rxa5 (190)



The position has changed considerably. Whereas White with his manoeuvres has been marking time, Black has achieved a great deal. He has brought his king to the centre, occupied the a-file with his rook, and seized space on both wings. The initiative is completely with him, and White has to switch to defence.

33 Qb1

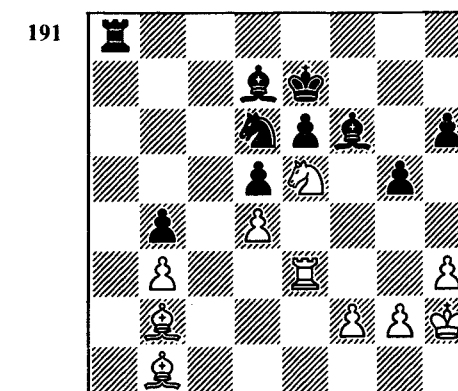
Kotov, annotating this game in the tournament bulletin, recommends that White should exchange rooks here with 33 Ra1 . It is difficult to agree with this, since after 33 ... Rxa1+ 34 Qxa1 Qd6 White is faced with insurmountable difficulties. 35 ... g4, winning a pawn, is threatened, and on 35 h3 there can follow 35 ... e5! 36 dxe5+ Qxe5 37 Qxe5 Qxe5 38 Qxe5+ Qxe5 , when the bishop ending is lost.

33 ... Ra8
34 h3 Qa5!

The black knight is transferred to d6, from where it has good opportunities for advancing to b5 or e4.

35 Re3 Qb7 36 Qe5 Qd6 37 $\text{Qh2?!$ (191)

It is hard to see what advantage White gains by moving his king to h2, compared with towards the centre via f1.



One gains the impression that White can successfully hold his defensive zone. But the Hungarian grandmaster penetrates deeply into the position and finds a latent manoeuvre, which enables Black to convert his positional advantage into another form.

37 ... ♖xe5!

It is not every player who would bring himself to exchange such a bishop and remain with a 'bad' light-square bishop. But Black's action is concrete.

38 ♖xe5 ♖f8 39 ♖e2 ♖b5 40 ♖d3 ♖c3 41 ♖c2 ♖f4 42 ♖xc3 bxc3 43 ♖g3 ♖xd4 44 ♖xc3

The game has simplified, but has not become any easier for White. Black dominates the centre, and for the moment the passed b-pawn constitutes more of a weakness than a strength.

44 ... ♖d6 45 ♖f3 ♖b4 46 ♖e2 e5 47 ♖c2 e4 48 ♖d2 ♖f5 49 ♖d1 d4 50 ♖c1 ♖e6 51 ♖a1 ♖b6 52 ♖c2 ♖d5 53 ♖a4 ♖e5

Gradually the board becomes more and more 'Black'. His quadrangle of pieces and pawns advances concertedly in the centre, while the white pieces rush helplessly about the board.

54 ♖a5 ♖f6 55 ♖e1 d3 56 ♖d1 ♖d4 57 ♖a7 ♖c6 58 ♖a5 e3! 59 fxe3+ ♖xe3

White's king and bishop are pinned to the back rank, and only his rook is able to make despairing leaps, as if trying to help the trapped pieces.

60 ♖a2 ♖d6 61 ♖d2 ♖d4 62 g3 ♖d5 63 ♖f2 ♖e4

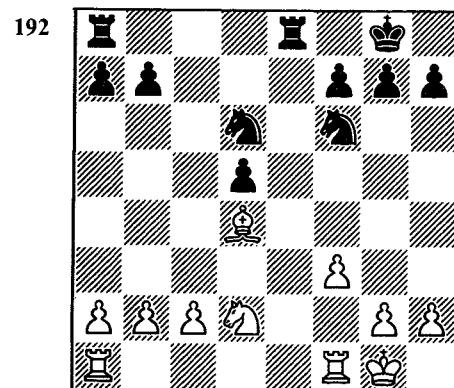
Once again a threatening quadrangle of black pieces is impending over the white position. The end is close.

64 ♖f6 ♖d8! 65 ♖xh6 ♖a8 66 ♖e6 ♖a2 67 b4 ♖h2 68 ♖xe4+ ♖xe4 69 g4 ♖e3 White resigns

Barcza exploited in splendid fashion his opponent's uncertain and planless play in the middlegame.

Parma-Puc Ljubljana 1969

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 c5 4 ♖gf3 ♖f6 5 exd5 exd5 6 ♖b5+ ♖d7 7 ♖xd7+ ♖bxd7 8 0-0 ♖e7 9 dxc5 ♖xc5 10 ♖b3 ♖ce4 11 ♖fd4 0-0 12 ♖f5 ♖e8 13 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 14 ♖e3 ♖e5 15 ♖d4 ♖f4 16 f3 ♖d6 17 ♖d2 ♖xd2 18 ♖xd2 (192)



The exchange of light-square bishops in positions of this type is in principle advantageous to Black. In White's favour is the fact that any simplification brings the endgame closer. Instead of 11 ... 0-0, which allows 12 ♖f5, 11 ... ♖d6!? should be considered. The game Lau-Korbuzov, Pernik 1984, continued 12 ♖f3 0-0 13 ♖f5 ♖xf5 14 ♖xf5 ♖c8 15 ♖xc8 ♖axc8 16 c3 ♖e4 17 ♖e3 b6 18 ♖ad1 ♖fd8 19 ♖d3 ♖d7 20 ♖fd1 ♖cd8 21 ♖d4 ♖c5 22 ♖3d2 ♖e4 23 ♖d3 ♖c5 1/2-1/2. Two points should be noted by the reader:

(a) 18 ♖ad1!? is stronger than 18 ♖fd1, since then Black could have gained good counterplay after 18 ... ♖fd8 19 ♖d3?! ♖d6 20 ♖xd5 ♖c4.

(b) Instead of 21 ♖d4, White could have retained a slight positional advantage by 21 c4! ♖f6 22 c5 bxc5 23 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 24 ♖xc5.

In the resulting ending White has a

slight but persistent advantage. Black faces a gruelling struggle for equality.

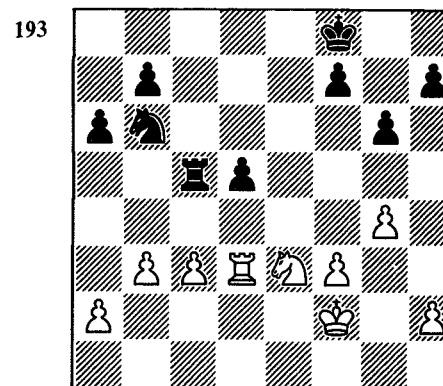
18 ... ♖f5!?
19 ♖b3!?

Of course, it would have been advantageous to completely spoil the opponent's pawns by exchanging on f6, but then the possible invasion of Black's knight would have given him counterplay.

19 ... ♖e2 20 ♖f2 ♖xd4 21 ♖xd4 ♖xf2 22 ♖xf2 ♖e8 23 ♖d1 a6 24 ♖d3 ♖c8 25 c3 ♖f8 26 g4 ♖d7 27 ♖f5 ♖b6 28 b3

28 ♖d6 would not have gained White any real advantage after 28 ... ♖c6! (28 ... ♖c7? 29 ♖e3!) 29 ♖xb7 ♖a4 30 ♖xd5 ♖b6.

28 ... g6
29 ♖e3 ♖c5 (193)



White has regrouped his pieces, and from blockading the isolated pawn he has switched to attacking it. But Black has successfully parried the first onslaught, without worsening his position.

30 ♖e2 h6?

Black's desire not to allow g4-g5, fixing his pawn at h7, is quite understandable, but untimely. In the notes to one of his games, Larsen expressed the opinion that

an isolated pawn should not be blockaded, but won. This, of course, was in the nature of a joke, but there is a great deal of truth in it. As long as the opponent maintains the blockade in front of the isolated pawn, the defender can engage in various prophylactic manoeuvres. But as soon as the white pieces regroup for an attack on the central pawn, Black's placid mood must give way to extremely precise, concrete play. With his last move White has created a latent threat to the d5 pawn. The white king is aiming to defend the c3 pawn from d2, after which b3-b4 will drive back the enemy rook, winning the d-pawn. Black should have urgently brought his king to e6, giving the d-pawn additional protection, while 31 g5 was not to be feared in view of 31 ... d4.

31 ♖d2 ♖g7

On 31 ... ♖e7 there would have followed 32 b4, when the d5 pawn is lost with check. Now in reply to 32 b4 Black hopes to gain counterplay by the knight check at c4 after the retreat of his rook.

32 ♖d4!

Parma does not hurry, but improves the position of his rook. All the same Black is unable to avert the loss of a pawn.

32 ... a5 33 a4! ♖f6 34 b4 axb4 35 cxb4 ♖c6 36 a5 ♖c8 37 ♖xd5

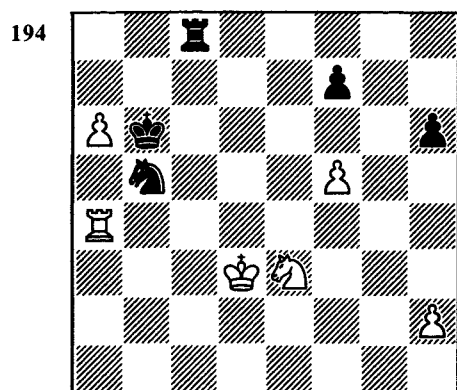
White has won a pawn while maintaining a good position. It is now a matter of technique.

37 ... ♖e6 38 f4 ♖d6 39 ♖e5+ ♖d7 40 ♖d5 ♖e6 41 f5+ gxf5 42 gxf5+ ♖e7 43 b5 ♖c8 44 a6 bxa6?!

The passed a-pawn will be more dangerous for Black than a pawn on the b-file. Therefore he should have preferred

44 ... ♖a8! 45 axb7 ♖b8, although even in this case White's advantage is sufficient for a win.

45 bxa6 ♘d7 46 ♖a5 ♘c6 47 ♘d3 ♘b6 48 ♖a4 ♘b5 (194)



At first sight Black seems to have achieved some success. He is ready to neutralise the enemy passed pawn, and on the kingside there are very few pawns remaining. But by combinational play Parma dispels all these illusions.

49 a7! ♖d8+

The pawn is immune: 49 ... ♘xa7? loses to 50 ♘c4+ ♘b7 51 ♘d6+, while 49 ... ♖a8 is met by 50 ♘c4+ and 51 ♘e5.

50 ♘d5+!

The combination continues! 50 ... ♖xd5+ is not possible, in view of 51 ♘e4.

50 ... ♘b7 51 a8=♖+! ♖xa8 52 ♖b4 ♖a5

52 ... ♘c6 would have failed to 53 ♖xb5.

53 ♘c3

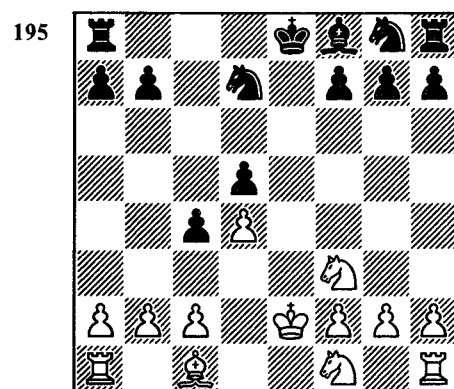
The end. White takes play into a won pawn ending.

53 ... ♘c6 54 ♖xb5 ♖xb5 55 ♘xb5 ♘xb5 56 ♘d4 ♘c6 57 ♘e5 ♘d7 58 ♘f6

♘e8 59 ♘g7 ♘e7 60 f6+ ♘e6 61 h3 Black Resigns

Marić-Marović
Yugoslavia 1970

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘d2 c5 4 exd5 exd5 5 ♘b5+ ♘d7 6 ♘xd7+ ♘xd7 7 ♘gf3 ♖e7+ 8 ♖e2 c4 9 ♘f1 ♖xe2+ 10 ♘xe2 (195)



White has played a harmless variation against the French Defence. The bishop check 5 ♘b5+ is usually followed by 6 ♖e2+ and the temporary win of a pawn by 7 dxc5. As has already been mentioned, the exchange of light-square bishops favours Black. Therefore the queen check at e7 cannot be unconditionally condemned. The mistake came on Black's next move 8 ... c4? (after 8 ... ♖xe2+ 9 ♘xe2 ♘f6 there is nothing in particular for White to boast of). Superficially, 8 ... c4 looks logical: Black arranges his pawns on light squares, after exchanging his light-square bishop. The trouble is that this idea meets with a concrete refutation. Black is insufficiently well developed to hold on to the space gained on the queenside.

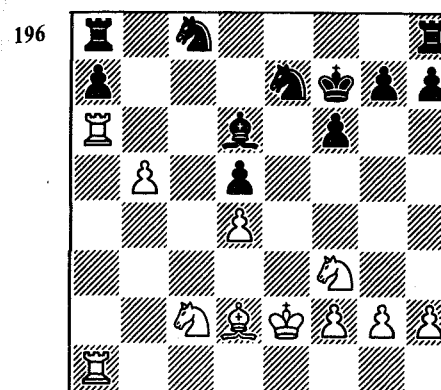
10 ... ♘d6 11 ♘e3 ♘e7 12 b3! b5

12 ... cxb3 13 axb3 leads to the better game for White.

13 a4 cxb3

Black lacks just one move – castling – to obtain a good game by 13 ... a6.

14 axb5! bxc2 15 ♖a6 ♘b6 16 ♘xc2 f6 17 ♘d2 ♘f7 18 ♖ha1 ♘bc8 (196)



Black's queenside pawns have been broken up, and thanks to his superior development White has gained the initiative. He has a great positional advantage, but Black has securely covered his main weakness, his a7 pawn. White must now try to create pressure on the d5 pawn.

19 ♘b4 ♘xb4 20 ♘xb4 ♖b8 21 ♖1a5 ♖d8 22 ♘d2!

The place for this knight is at c3.

22 ... ♖d6 23 ♘b1! ♖xa6 24 ♘xa6 ♖b7 25 ♘c3 ♘b6 26 ♘b4 ♖c7 27 ♘d3 g5

One gains the impression that Black has successfully consolidated and is thinking about counterplay on the kingside. But White's very next move dispels his illusions.

28 ♘c6! ♘ec8

28 ... ♘xc6 29 bxc6 ♖xc6 30 ♖xa7+ ♘g6 would have lost to 31 ♖a6.

29 ♖a6

The immediate 29 ♘a4 was more accurate.

29 ... h5 30 ♘a4 ♘xa4 31 ♖xa4 ♘e6 32 ♖a6 ♘f5 33 h3 h4 34 ♘c3!

The game is bound to be decided by the advance of the white king to c5.

34 ... g4 35 hxg4+ ♘xg4 36 ♘b4 ♘f5

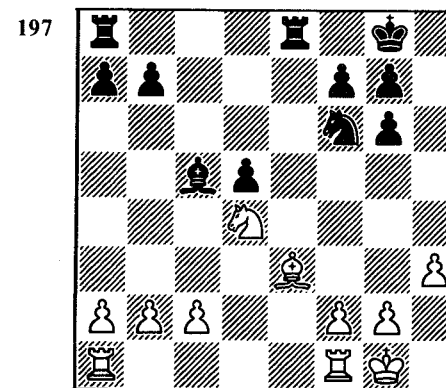
On 36 ... ♘f4 there could have followed 37 ♖a3! to answer 37 ... ♖g7 with 38 g3+ hxg3 39 fxg3+ ♖xg3 40 ♖xg3 ♘xg3 41 ♘c5, with the irresistible threat of 42 ♘xa7.

37 f3 ♖g7 38 ♖a2 ♘f4 39 ♘c5 ♖d7 40 ♖e2 h3 41 gxh3 ♘xf3 42 ♖e6 Black resigns

Botvinnik-Bronstein

World Championship (15), Moscow 1951

1 d4 e6 2 e4 d5 3 ♘d2 c5 4 exd5 exd5 5 ♘gf3 ♘f6 6 ♘b5+ ♘d7 7 ♘xd7+ ♘bxd7 8 0-0 ♘e7 9 dxc5 ♘xc5 10 ♘d4 ♖d7 11 ♘2f3 0-0 12 ♘e5 ♖c8 13 ♘g5 ♖e8 14 ♘d3 ♘xd3 15 ♖xd3 ♖g4 16 ♘e3 ♘c5 17 h3 ♖g6 18 ♖xg6 hxg6 (197)



Modern theory considers that 10 ... 0-0 gives Black better chances of equalising.

Adorjan-Vaganian, Siegen 1980, continued 11 ♖f5 ♖e8 12 ♜xe7+ ♗xe7 13 ♜f3 ♖ad8 14 c3 ♜fe4 15 ♜e3 ♖d6 16 ♖e1 b6 17 ♗c2 ♖g6 18 ♖ad1 ♗f6 19 ♜d4 ♜e6 with a complicated game. In Bronstein-Petrosian, Moscow 1975, instead of exchanging on e7, White played 12 ♜b3, but after 12 ... ♖f8 (12 ... ♜e6 is also quite possible) 13 ♖e3 ♜cd7 14 ♖d4 ♗c7 15 c3 ♗f4! 16 ♜e3 ♖ad8 17 g3 ♗e4 18 ♜g2 b6 19 ♖e1 ♗f5 20 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 Black easily maintained the balance.

Compared with the Parma-Puc game, Black's chances of equalising are better. The presence on the board of dark-square bishops gives him certain grounds for counterplay.

19 ♖ad1 ♖e4
20 c3 b6?

"This queenside prophylaxis is unnecessary. Having begun a series of exchanges, Black should have continued 20 ... ♖xd4 21 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 22 ♖xd4 ♖e8 23 f3 ♖e2 24 ♖f2 ♖e1+" (Bronstein).

21 ♜c2 ♖d8 22 ♖d3 ♖f8 23 ♖fd1 ♖e7 24 ♖f1 ♖d7 25 ♖g5 ♖c6 26 b4! ♖f8 27 ♜e3

As in the Parma-Puc game, White has switched from blockading the isolated pawn to attacking it. Black's position is difficult.

27 ... ♖e5
28 f4?

A mistake in time trouble. White should have first exchanged on f6. Immediately after the game Botvinnik showed that in the variation 28 ♖xf6 gxf6 29 f4 ♖h5 30 c4 ♖xb4 31 ♜xd5 ♖d6 32 ♜xf6 ♖hh8 33 ♜e4 ♖e7 34 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 35 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 36 ♖e2 f5 37 ♜g5 White would have retained every chance of winning.

28 ... ♖e4

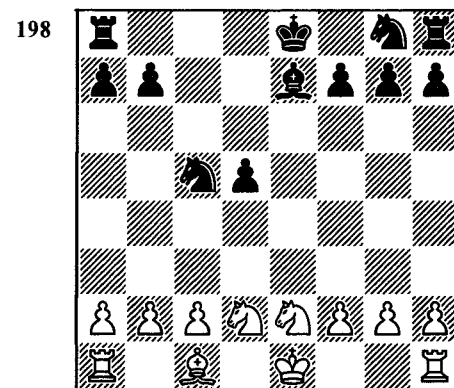
Now on 29 ♖xf6? Black can interpose 29 ... ♖xf4+.

29 f5 ♖e5 30 ♖f4 ♖e4 31 ♖g5 ♖e5 32 ♖f4 ♖e4 33 ♖g5 ♖e5 Draw agreed

To avoid giving the reader the impression that the endgame with an isolated pawn in the French Defence is hopelessly bad for Black, we give an example in which he did not have a depressing struggle for a draw, but gained good counterplay.

Ilyin-Genevsky v. Botvinnik Leningrad Championship 1932

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜d2 c5 4 exd5 exd5 5 ♖b5+ ♖d7 6 ♗e2+ ♗e7 7 ♖xd7+ ♜xd7 8 dxc5 ♜xc5 9 ♗xe7+ ♖xe7 10 ♜e2 (198)



10 ... ♜e6
11 ♜f3 ♖f6!

Botvinnik chooses the most sensible arrangement of his forces, and begins a battle for the d4 square.

12 ♖e3 ♜e7 13 0-0-0 0-0 14 ♖he1 ♖fd8 15 ♜fd4 ♜c6 16 f4?!

"With this move White offers a draw, which is achieved by force after 16 ... ♜cxd4 17 ♜xd4 ♖xd4 18 ♖xd4 ♜xf4 19 ♖e7 b6 20 ♖f1 ♜e6 21 ♖xf7 ♜xd4 22

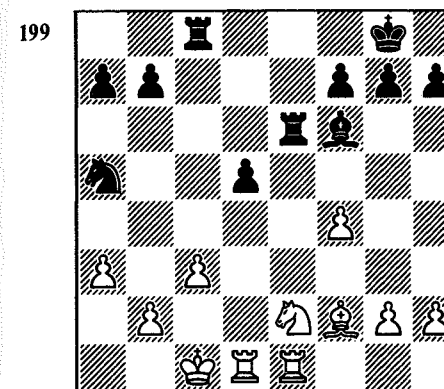
♖xg7+ with perpetual check. Black avoids this continuation, since the text move, weakening the kingside and the e3 and e4 squares, gives him some chances" (Botvinnik).

16 ... ♖e8! 17 ♜xe6 ♖xe6! 18 ♖f2 ♖c8

Black skilfully maintains his initiative. Now 19 ♖xd5 fails to 19 ... ♜b4 20 ♖c5 ♖ce8.

19 a3 ♜a5!
20 c3 (199)

This further weakening of White's position is practically forced. 20 ... ♜c4 was threatened, and both 20 ♖xd5? ♜c4 21 c3 ♖ce8 22 ♖c5 ♜d6 and 20 ♜d4? ♖xd4 21 ♖xd4 ♖xe1 22 ♖xe1 ♜b3+ were bad for him.



20 ... ♜c4?!

"A pity! By subtle manoeuvring Black has weakened White's position, and now after 20 ... ♖ce8! 21 ♜g3 ♖xe1 22 ♖xe1 ♖xe1+ 23 ♖xe1 ♖h4 and ... ♖xg3 he would have obtained a very favourable ending, with knight against bishop and weak squares in the opponent's position. But now White is able to free himself" (Botvinnik).

21 ♜d4 ♖e4 22 ♖xe4 dxe4 23 ♜c2!

White blockades the e4 pawn, and unexpectedly even gets slightly the better game.

23 ... a5 24 ♜e3 ♜xe3 25 ♖xe3 b5 26 ♖d4 ♖e7 27 f5

Black's e4 pawn is cut off from the rest of his kingside pawns, and he has to play very accurately to avoid getting into serious difficulties.

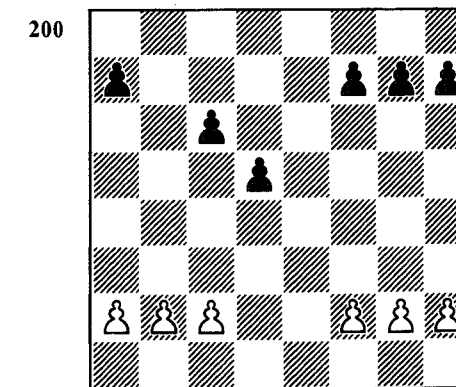
27 ... b4! 28 axb4 axb4 29 ♖e1 bxc3 30 bxc3 ♖e8! 31 ♖c2 ♖d6 32 h3

Now, from g3, the black bishop is able to prevent White from uniting his g- and f-pawns, but, as shown by Botvinnik, after 32 g3 f6 33 ♖b3 ♖f7 34 ♖c4 g6 35 ♖d5 ♖d8! White would have not achieved anything in particular.

32 ... ♖g3! 33 ♖e2 f6 34 ♖e3 ♖f2 35 ♖e2 ♖g3 36 ♖e3 ♖f2 37 ♖e2 ♖g3 38 ♜d1 ♖f7 39 ♖e3 ♖f2 40 ♖e2 ♖xd4 41 cxd4 g6 42 g4 gxf5 43 gxf5 e3 44 ♖c2 ♖e4 45 ♜d3 ♖f4 46 ♖xe3 ♖xf5

Draw agreed. On 47 ♖c4 there would have followed 47 ... h5 48 d5 ♖e5!.

We conclude this chapter with two endings in which there was a modification of the pawn formation, and a position with an isolated pawn was transformed into one with a 'backward' pawn couple at c6 and d5.



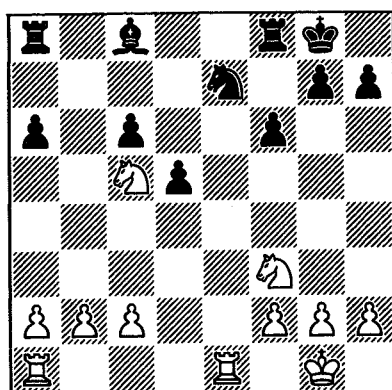
The reader's attention is drawn to the completely different plans carried out by White in two almost identical endgame positions.

Gligorić-Stahlberg

Split 1949

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 c5 4 exd5 exd5 5 ♗g3 ♗c6 6 ♘b5 a6 7 ♙xc6+ bxc6 8 0-0 ♘d6 9 dxc5 ♙xc5 10 ♗b3 ♘d6 11 ♖d4 f6 12 ♙f4 ♗e7 13 ♙fe1 0-0 14 ♙xd6 ♖xd6 15 ♖c5 ♖xc5 16 ♗xc5 (201)

201



6 ... a6? is too slow and has now almost completely gone out of use. By simple and logical moves Gligorić has seized the initiative, exchanged the dark-square bishops, and taken play into a significantly superior endgame. One white knight has occupied a splendid post at c5, and a no less promising post has been prepared for the other at d4. Black's light-square bishop is 'bad', and will never become 'good', since with his next few moves White will take measures to fix the black pawns at a6, c6 and d5, i.e. he will set up a complete blockade of the opponent's queenside.

16 ... ♙a7
17 b4 ♗f5

On 17 ... a5 there could have simply followed 18 c3, when White either obtains an outside passed a-pawn or Black has to advance his pawn to a4, where it becomes more vulnerable.

18 ♗b3 ♙c7 19 c3 ♗f7 20 ♗fd4 ♗d6 21 ♗c5 ♙e8 22 ♙xe8 ♗xe8 23 f3!

Gligorić suppresses the slightest attempt by the opponent to free himself. On the natural 23 a4 there could have followed 23 ... ♗e4 24 ♙e1 ♗f7 25 ♗xe4 dxe4 26 ♙xe4 c5!, and at the cost of a pawn Black lifts the blockade.

23 ... ♗f7 24 ♗f2 g5 25 a4 h5 26 a5 ♗c4 27 ♙e1

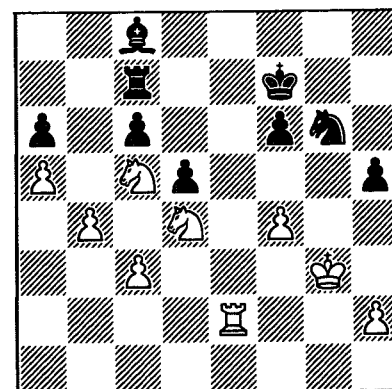
Black's queenside is completely blocked. In order to reach the opponent's pawn weaknesses on that part of the board, White must try to open up the game on the kingside.

27 ... ♗e5 28 g3 ♙e7 29 ♙e2

The immediate 29 f4 did not work because of 29 ... gxf4 30 gxf4 ♗g4+.

29 ... ♙c7 30 f4 gxf4 31 gxf4 ♗g6 32 ♗g3 (202)

202



White has achieved a great deal, but the opponent's resistance has not yet been

broken. The invasion squares on the open files are covered by the black king, and the passage of the white king to the queenside is hindered by the enemy knight. Therefore White must aim for the exchange of knights.

32 ... ♗e7 33 ♙e1 ♙a7 34 ♗f2

White does not hurry, exploiting the fact that it is much easier for him than for Black to make moves which essentially do not change the position.

34 ... ♙a8?

In time trouble Stahlberg does not make the best move. 34 ... ♗g6 was stronger.

35 ♗a4!

Threatening 36 ♗b6 ♙b8 37 ♙xe7+ ♗xe7 38 ♗xc6+.

35 ... ♙h3

36 ♙e3

Just in case, Gligorić parries a possible attack by the black rook – 36 ... ♙g8 with the threat of 37 ... ♙g2+.

36 ... ♙d7 37 ♗b6 ♙a7 38 ♙e1

Not 38 ♙xe7+? ♗xe7 39 ♗xc6+ ♙xc6 40 ♗c8+ ♗d8 41 ♗xa7 ♙d7, when the white knight is trapped. Now Black has to reckon with the possibility of ♗b3-c5.

38 ... ♗f5 39 ♗xf5 ♙xf5 40 ♗a4

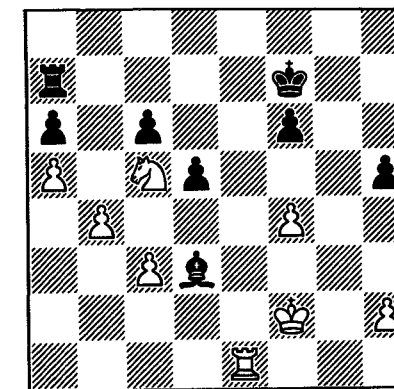
The long-awaited exchange has taken place, and the remaining white knight returns to c5.

40 ... ♙d3

41 ♗c5 (203)

A most interesting moment. Here the game was adjourned, and Stahlberg had to seal his move.

203



41 ... ♙b5?

"A typical example of an optical illusion in chess. I expected this reply (although I also analysed 41 ... ♙f5), since at the moment when the bishop has suddenly become free, few players would be able to return it to its former place" (Gligorić). Indeed, after 41 ... ♙f5 White would have had more problems, since the bishop would have been able to participate in the defence both of his weak queenside pawns and of the e6 square. White would have had to play 42 h4 (otherwise Black himself would play this) and prepare the passage of his king to the queenside. It would seem that in this case too White's advantage would have been sufficient for a win.

42 f5!

White creates an important outpost at e6 for his pieces in the enemy position. The winning of the game no longer presents any great difficulty.

42 ... ♙a8

42 ... ♙e7 would have failed to 43 ♗e6 followed by 44 ♙g1, since 43 ... ♙d3 44 ♗d8+ is not possible.

43 ♗b7! ♗g7 44 ♙g1+ ♗f7 45 ♙e1 ♗g7 46 ♗d6 h4 47 ♗f3

Gligorić is not in a hurry to win the game, and calmly strengthens his position.

47 ... ♖d8 48 ♜e7+ ♔g8 49 ♜e6 ♔g7 50 ♔e3!

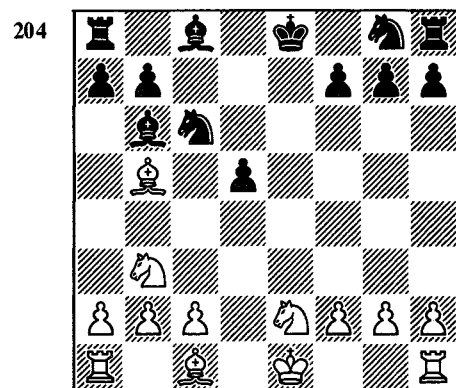
Black is being suffocated. The main thing now is not to allow any counterplay. The careless 50 ♔g4 would have allowed Black saving chances after 50 ... d4! 51 cxd4 ♔c4!.

50 ... ♔a4 51 ♔d4 ♜g8 52 ♔c5 ♔h7 53 ♔e8! ♜g2 54 ♔xf6+ ♔g7 55 ♔d7! ♜f2 56 f6+ ♔g6 57 ♔e5+ ♔h5 58 f7 d4 59 ♜e8 Black resigns

Szabo-Barcza

Stockholm Interzonal 1952

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♔d2 c5 4 exd5 exd5 5 ♔b5+ ♔c6 6 ♜e2+ ♜e7 7 dxc5 ♜xe2+ 8 ♔xe2 ♔xc5 9 ♔b3 ♔b6 (204)



In this game too Black loses by going into an ending with an isolated pawn. Nowadays he prefers to answer the bishop check with 5 ... ♔d7, and after 6 ♜e2+ the reply 6 ... ♜e7? has practically gone out of use; 6 ... ♔e7 leads to much more interesting play.

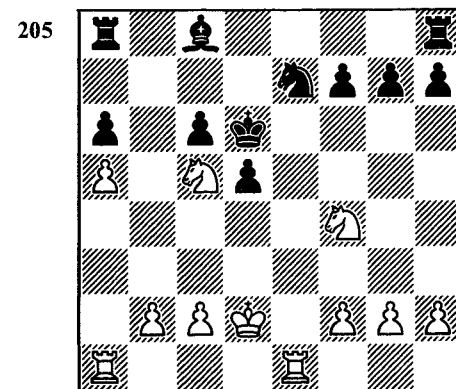
10 a4!

A good manoeuvre, the aim of which is to exchange the dark-square bishops. In our time this is a standard strategic procedure, which White also carries out with the queens on the board.

10 ... ♔ge7 11 a5 ♔c7 12 ♔f4 ♔xf4 13 ♔xf4 a6 14 ♔xc6+ bxc6 15 ♔c5

The position has stabilised. Black has got rid of his isolated pawn, but White has firmly occupied the dark squares in the centre, given the opponent a bad bishop, and is in complete control on the queenside.

15 ... ♔d8 16 ♔d2 ♔c7 17 ♜he1 ♔d6 (205)



An important moment. The white knight at c5 is attacked. The routine 18 b4 suggests itself, followed by 19 c3 and the transfer of the other knight to d4. Superficially White's position looks very fine, but there will be no real threats to the opponent's queenside. To win he will have to open up the kingside, and this is not easy to do.

Szabo takes another decision, one which is unusual and very strong. He avoids blocking the third rank and the b-file with pawns, but defends the knight at c5 with his other knight and retains great scope for manoeuvring with his rooks. In doing

so he allows the opponent to get rid of his bad bishop.

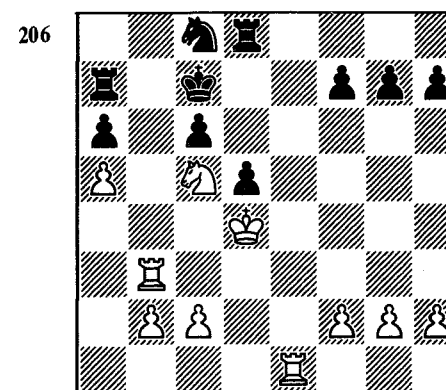
18 ♔fd3! ♜a7
19 ♜a3!

The rook aims for b6, after which Black will be in a critical situation.

19 ... ♔f5 20 ♜b3 ♔xd3 21 ♔b7+!

The tactical justification of White's plan.

21 ... ♔d7 22 ♔xd3 ♔c8 23 ♔d4 ♔c7 24 ♔c5 ♜d8 (206)



The black pieces are bunched together, trying at all costs to parry White's attack on the queenside. The kingside has been left practically undefended, and without great difficulty White provokes a weakening on this side of the board which proves decisive.

25 ♜f3 ♔d6 26 ♜ee3 ♜f8 27 ♜b3 f6

This weakens the e6 square, but Black's position is indefensible.

28 ♜fe3!

The white rooks' manoeuvres along the third rank, far-sightedly left free by Szabo, have literally demolished the opponent's defences.

28 ... ♜e7 29 ♜b8! ♜xe3 30 fxe3 ♜e8

Black hopes to parry the threat of ♜b7-d7 by ... ♜e7, and on 31 ♔xa6 to gain some play by the rook check at e4.

31 b3!

Played with a sense of humour. Black is in zugzwang, and can move only his kingside pawns.

31 ... f5 32 b4 g5 33 c3 f4 34 e4!

Szabo concludes the game energetically. The threat of 35 ♜b7 ♜e7 36 e5+ forces Black's reply.

34 ... dxe4 35 ♜b7 ♜e7 36 ♔xe4+ ♔e6 37 ♔xg5+ ♔f5 38 ♜xe7 ♔xe7 39 ♔e4 ♔d5 40 ♔c5 ♔e3 41 ♔xa6 ♔xg2

Of course, White could have won without giving the opponent any counter-chances with his passed pawn, but Szabo has precisely worked everything out and permits himself a little joke.

42 ♔c5 f3 43 a6 f2 44 ♔e4 f1=♜ 45 ♔g3+

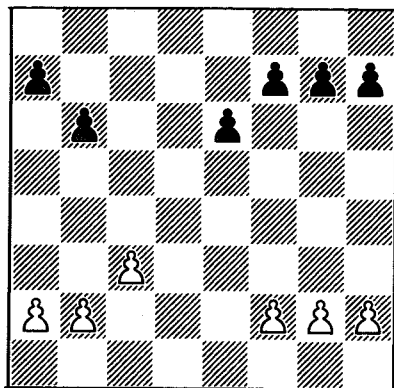
Black resigns. Szabo's play throughout the game was fresh, elegant, and very strong.

RUBINSTEIN FORMATION

In a number of variations of the French Defence Black, not wishing to allow the cramping advance e4-e5, resorts to the simplifying manoeuvre ... dxe4. Then the white pawn at d4 is attacked by frontal pressure on the d-file and by the undermining ... c5. Variations of this type are 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♔c3 (or 3 ♔d2) 3 ... dxe4, 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♔c3 ♔b4 4 ♔d3 (or 4 ♔e2) 4 ... dxe4, 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♔c3

♠f6 4 ♗g5 dxe4, and others. In such variations, and also in cases where in reply to exd5 Black takes on d5 with a piece (for example, in the Tarrasch Variation 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 c5 4 exd5 ♗xd5), the following pawn formation arises, one which we call the 'Rubinstein Formation', after the name of the inventor of the 3 ♖c3 dxe4 variation:

207



We will not examine formations with the white pawn at d4 and black pawn at c7 (or c6), since we consider that for Black to achieve an acceptable game it is more or less essential to advance ... c5. Thus in the variation 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 (3 ♖d2) 3 ... dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♗d7 5 ♖f3 ♗c6 Black does not usually survive until the endgame.

The formation with a pawn majority on the wing is well known in theory, and can also arise from other openings: Sicilian Defence, Caro-Kann Defence, Centre Counter Game, and several closed openings.

The plan in such endings normally follows from the pawn formation: the four pawns advance against the three on the kingside, and the three against the two on the queenside, although instances of a minority attack also occur. Formerly it was considered advantageous to have an

extra pawn on the queenside, since there it is easier to set up a passed pawn. Modern experience has not confirmed this principle of Steinitz's theory: it all depends on the concrete features of the position. In the majority of cases, control of the only open d-file gives the advantage to one of the sides, irrespective of the number of pawns on the flanks.

In the given section we will study some typical endings of 'French' origin, where both sides have a flank pawn majority. White's prospects in the given examples are more favourable, since he is normally the first to gain control of the d-file.

An exception is provided by the following classic ending, where a sudden change in the pawn formation occurred at an early stage.

Schlechter-Rubinstein San Sebastian 1912

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖f6 4 ♗g5 dxe4

The exchange ... dxe4, on the 3rd or 4th move, characterises the Rubinstein Variation, which was extremely popular, thanks to the successes of its inventor, in the early part of this century. And subsequently too the Rubinstein Variation has occurred quite often, especially in the games of Petrosian.

In agreeing to the 'surrender of the centre' (Tarrasch's term), Black acquires a number of strategic pluses: the possibility of free development of both flanks (after e4-e5 'French cramp' sets in – it is difficult to find good squares for the king's bishop and king's knight), he solves the problem of the 'French' bishop at c8, which obtains the splendid a8-h1 diagonal, and the possibility of frontal pressure on the d4 pawn and the undermining of it by ... c5 (or more rarely, ...

e5).

Of course, there are also drawbacks. White gains, and for a long time, a spatial advantage and more possibilities for manoeuvring. With an advantage in the centre he can usually prepare an attack on the kingside. Since sooner or later Black will play ... c5, then after dxc5 or ... cxd4 White will gain a queenside pawn majority, and he is normally the first to occupy the d-file: thus, in the given situation, after 4 ... dxe4 5 ♖xe4 it only remains for him to play ♗e2 and 0-0-0.

Nimzowitsch was the first to point out the affinity between the Rubinstein Variation and the Steinitz Defence to the Ruy Lopez – in both cases an advanced white pawn (e4 or d4) is subjected to attack along a semi-open file. However, in the Steinitz Defence Black rarely manages to develop his bishop at its ideal position g7, where it attacks the queenside and restrains e4-e5, whereas in the Rubinstein Variation the analogous manoeuvre does not usually present any difficulty: ... b6 and ... ♗b7 are an essential part of Black's development plans. Nimzowitsch had a high regard for the strategic ideas of the Rubinstein Variation, so high that, as he put it, he began developing the 3 e5 variation after he had become convinced that "3 ♖c3 is insufficient in view of 3 ... dxe4".

Nowadays we realize that these words were said in the heat of a controversy, but who knows whether or not chess would have been enriched by original variations such as 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 ♖f3!? or 4 ♗g4!?, had not Nimzowitsch been convinced that "... with the move ... b6 (Rubinstein) an improvement has been found which directly casts doubts on the value of 3 ♖c3 ..."

5 ♖xe4 ♖bd7

Today 5 ... ♗e7 is more often played,

when Black's bishop pair compensates for his cramped position.

6 ♖f3 ♗e7 7 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 8 ♗d3 b6

Black's last move looks risky, but there is no forced refutation of it. In fact, it is very soundly based, and in addition it provokes White into trying to exploit immediately the 'weakness' of the a4-e8 diagonal.

9 ♖e5?!

The temptation is too great, and even Schlechter cannot restrain himself from making this inviting move – so strong does the threat of 10 ♗b5+ appear to be.

In fact, White's threat is an empty one, and after his impulsive ninth move he no longer has an advantage – but before the game no one knew about this!

The correct plan here is 9 ♗e2, as played by Capablanca in his match with Kostić (Havana 1919): 9 ... ♗b7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♖ad1 h6 12 ♗f4 ♗d5 13 c4, with advantage to White.

The plan with queenside castling is also powerful: 10 0-0-0 0-0 11 h4 ♗d5 12 ♖b1 ♖fd8 13 c4 ♗d6 14 ♖he1 (Bronstein-Kan, Moscow 1947).

As is apparent from the above examples, the main drawback of ... b6 is that the queen becomes 'cramped' at d8, and is unable to move out to a5. Hence the undermining move ... c5 is hindered, and simple development, ♗e2 and ♖ad1 (or 0-0-0), is much more advantageous for White than the sharp attack 9 ♖e5.

9 ... ♗b7

Ignoring White's attack.

10 ♗b5+ c6

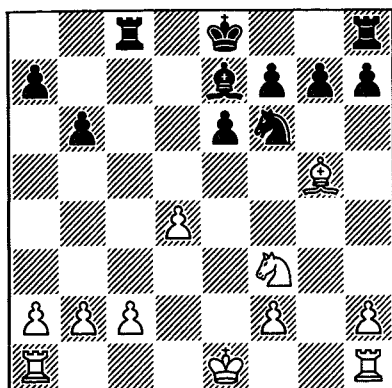
11 ♗xc6+?

And this move leads directly to an inferior position. 11 ♗f3 ♗d5! 12 ♗xd5

♟xd5 13 ♙xe7 cxb5! 14 ♙h4 ♟f4 was also not good for White, and so he should have withdrawn his bishop to e2.

11 ... ♙xc6 12 ♟xc6 ♖d5! 13 ♟e5 ♖xg2 14 ♖f3 ♖xf3 15 ♟xf3 ♙c8 (208)

208



The two players are now faced with finding a plan. Thanks to his mobile pawns, Black has a definite positional advantage. To obtain counterplay White should be preparing for activity on the queenside, which is best assisted by the pawn advance a2-a4-a5. Therefore he should have considered 16 c3 or 16 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 17 c3 followed by the advance of his a-pawn. Instead, Schlechter castles long, thereby committing a positional mistake.

16 0-0-0? ♟d5

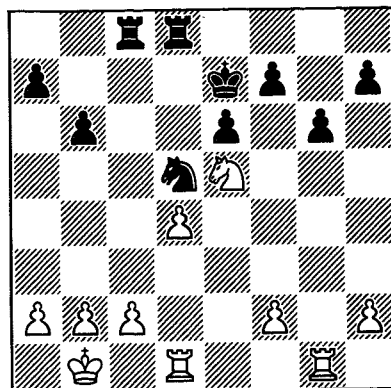
Rubinstein happily goes in for simplification. With a reduction in the material, White's weaknesses become more accessible.

17 ♙xe7 ♟xe7 18 ♟b1 ♙hd8 19 ♙hg1 g6 20 ♟e5 (209)

Black's positional advantage is quite appreciable, and 20 ... f6 21 ♟f3 ♟f4 now suggests itself, improving the placing of his pieces.

But Rubinstein carries out a quite

209



unexpected manoeuvre, inviting his opponent to go into a rook ending.

20 ... ♟b4!? 21 c3 ♟c6 22 ♟xc6?

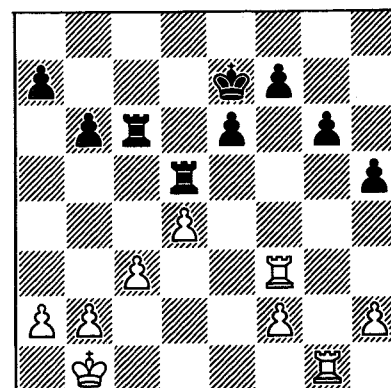
Black's idea justifies itself: despite the material equality, the rook ending is difficult for White. 22 ♟g4 was correct.

22 ... ♙xc6
23 ♙d3

23 ♙g5 was stronger, not allowing 23 ... ♙d5.

23 ... ♙d5! 24 ♙h3 h5 25 ♙f3 (210)

210



At first sight, all seems well with White. He has defended against the threat of 25 ... ♙f5, and on 25 ... e5 he can reply 26

♙g5, to meet 26 ... ♙f6 with 27 ♙xf6 ♟xf6 28 f4. Nevertheless, Rubinstein played

25 ... e5!!

If the above variation is continued for two more moves: 28 ... exf4!! 29 ♙xd5 f3, it transpires that, despite his extra rook, White is unable to prevent the black pawn from queening (pointed out by I. Zaitsev).

Thanks to the possibility of this combination, Rubinstein succeeds in taking his rook from c6 across to the kingside.

26 dxe5 ♙xe5
27 ♙e3?!

A mistake in a difficult position.

27 ... ♙xe3 28 fxe3 ♙e6! 29 ♙e1 ♙f6! 30 ♙e2 ♟e6 31 ♟c2 ♟e5 32 c4 ♟e4

Black's king has taken up an ideal position, and there is no way of opposing the advance of his passed pawn on the kingside. The game concluded:

33 b4 g5 34 ♟c3 g4 35 c5 h4 36 ♙g2 ♙g6 37 ♟c4 g3 38 hxg3 hxg3 39 ♟b5 bxc5 40 bxc5 ♟f3 41 ♙g1 a6+! White resigns

Gligorić-Stahlberg

Candidates Tournament, Zürich 1953

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♟c3 ♙b4 4 ♙d3

4 ♙d3 is not the best move in this variation, but it has an interesting history. The move appeared in the 1920s, when White was trying different methods against 3 ... ♙b4.

In his match against Ilyin-Genevsky (Leningrad 1929/30) Ragozin successfully employed 4 ... c5. Typical of the spirit of the variation and of Ragozin's style was the 5th game of the match: 4 ... c5 5 a3

♙xc3+ 6 bxc3 c4! 7 ♙e2 dxe4 8 ♙xc4 ♖xc7 9 ♖e2 ♟d7 10 ♙b2 ♟gf6 11 f3 b5!! (a brilliant, Nimzowitsch-style 'blockade sacrifice': this stratagem was used in a similar situation by Nimzowitsch in a game with Brinckmann, Kolding 1922*) 12 ♙xb5 ♖a5 13 0-0-0 ♙b8 14 c4 0-0! 15 fxe4 ♙a6!, with a strong attack for Black.

This all seemed clear enough, but in the 1940s an interesting variation was devised by Kondratiev: 4 ... c5 5 exd5 ♖xd5 6 ♙d2!? ♙xc3 7 ♙xc3 cxd4 8 ♙xd4 ♖xg2 (an original idea was tried by Petrosian in a game against Geller, Gagra 1953: 8 ... e5!? 9 ♙c3 ♟c6 10 ♖f3 ♟f6! 11 ♖g3 0-0, with sharp play) 9 ♖f3! ♖xf3 10 ♟xf3, with sufficient compensation for the sacrificed pawn. Since 4 ... dxe4 allows the Kondratiev variation to be avoided, without reducing Black's chances, this has become the main reply to 4 ♙d3.

4 ... dxe4
5 ♙xe4 c5

This move is not in itself bad, but even so 5 ... ♟f6 is more energetic, when after the retreat of the bishop Black can decide which of the two blows at the centre (... c5 or ... e5) will be the more effective.

For example: 6 ♙d3 c5! 7 dxc5 ♟bd7 with a splendid game for Black (Averbakh-Botvinnik, 22nd USSR Championship, Moscow 1955), or 6 ♙f3 0-0 7 ♙e2 e5! (Pilnik-Petrosian, Belgrade 1954).

White also achieves nothing by transposing into the McCutcheon Variation after 6 ♙g5 c5! when Black easily escapes from his opening difficulties: 7 dxc5 ♖xd1+ 8 ♙xd1 ♟bd7 9 ♙xf6 ♟xf6 10 ♙f3 ♙xc5, with the better chances for Black (Lasker-Tarrasch, World Championship 1908), or 7 a3?! ♙xc3+ 8 bxc3 ♖a5! 9 ♙xf6 ♖xc3+, with advantage to Black (Tal-Kärner,

* Cf. Nimzowitsch's *Chess Praxis* p.150, Dover 1962. (Translator's note)

Pärnu 1971). 6 ... ♖bd7 7 ♕e2 c5 8 a3 ♕xc3+ 9 bxc3 ♖c7 is also quite good (Gipslis-Bronstein, 29th USSR Championship, Baku 1961).

6 ♕e2

6 a3 is illogical: after 6 ... ♕xc3+ 7 bxc3 ♕f6 8 ♕d3 ♖db7 9 ♕f3 ♖c7 10 0-0 c4! 11 ♕e2 ♖d5 Black gained the advantage in the game Lilienthal-Boleslavsky, Leningrad/Moscow 1941.

6 ... ♕f6
7 ♕f3

The bishop has occupied the 'Catalan' diagonal, and Black has to be careful. Any ill-considered actions may lead to the paralysis of his queenside – in the Catalan Opening there is a countless number of such examples.

7 ... cxd4?!

And that is what happens! Black does not sense the crisis and carelessly exchanges pieces – and meanwhile the resulting ending is unpleasant to play and very difficult to save.

The correct move was 7 ... ♖c6!, when White does not achieve anything either by 8 ♕e3 cxd4 9 ♖xd4 ♖e5 10 ♕e2 ♖d5 (Fichtl-Uhlmann, Berlin 1962), or by 8 a3 ♕xc3+ 9 bxc3 e5 (Hort-Pietzsch, Kecskemet 1964).

8 ♖xd4 ♖xd4

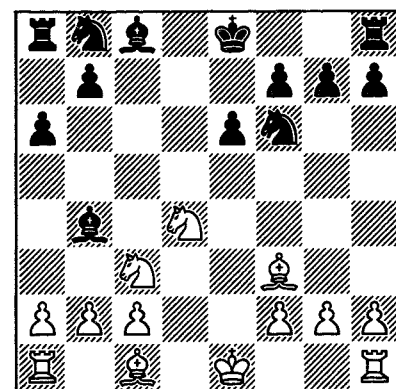
"I would not have exchanged queens here. After moving it to e7, ... e5 could have been prepared or other counter-chances sought. Now Black faces a lengthy and in general unpromising defence" (Bronstein).

9 ♖xd4 a6

(diagram 211)

10 0-0 ♖bd7 11 ♖e1 0-0 12 ♕d2

211



White's advantage is obvious. He is already concluding his mobilisation, whereas it is difficult for Black to complete the development of his queenside.

12 ... ♖d8
13 a3 ♕d6

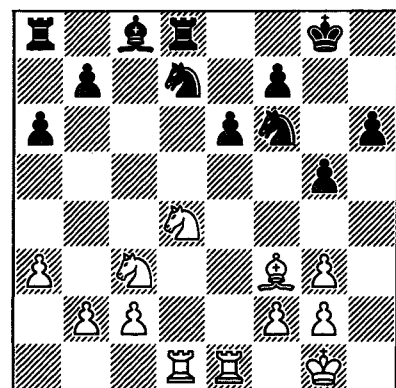
Stahlberg uses his bishop to cover the h2-b8 diagonal, which White's bishop was ready to occupy.

14 ♖ad1 ♕c7
15 ♕g5!

Now it is not easy for Black to escape from the pin. He either has to weaken his kingside pawns or move his rook off the only open file.

15 ... h6 16 ♕h4 g5 17 ♕g3 ♕xg3 18 hxg3 (212)

212



The exchange of dark-square bishops has not eased Black's position. He has still not solved the problem of developing his light-square bishop, and in the centre there are now a number of vulnerable points on the dark squares. In order to ease his position, Stahlberg decides to drive the enemy bishop off its important diagonal, at the cost of a further weakening of his kingside pawns.

18 ... g4 19 ♕e2 ♖b6 20 ♖b3 ♕d7 21 ♖a5 ♖ab8 22 ♖d6! ♖c8 23 ♖d4! e5 24 ♖d2

In the preceding combative series of moves Black has been trying to escape from the bind on his position, while White has been doing everything possible to maintain it. Gligorić has been more successful. Black has weakened his pawns even more, and has still not coordinated his forces. The rest of the game is a matter of technique.

24 ... ♖e8 25 ♖e4! ♖xe4 26 ♖xd7 ♖c5 27 ♖c7 ♖e6 28 ♖xb7 ♖d6 29 ♖d7 ♖b6 30 b4

White is a pawn up with a big positional advantage. Black would have been quite justified in resigning here, but the game went on:

30 ... ♖b5 31 ♖c4 ♖c6 32 ♖xe5 ♖xc2 33 ♖xb5 axb5 34 ♖xf7 ♖f8 35 ♖xh6 ♖e7 36 ♖d5 ♖c7 37 ♖f5+ ♖e8 38 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 39 ♖xg4 ♖a2 40 ♖c5 ♖d6 41 ♖c3 Black resigns

Tal-Uhlmann
Moscow 1967

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 c5 4 ♖gf3 cxd4 5 exd5 ♖xd5

This position is more often reached by

a different move order: 4 exd5 ♖xd5 5 ♖gf3 cxd4. The 4 ... ♖xd5 variation is not well favoured by theory, which is not altogether justified. Black can count on obtaining a solid position with counter-chances. It was not without reason that 4 ... ♖xd5 often occurred in Petrosian's games, and earlier in the games of Eliskases and Stahlberg. Some interesting ideas in this variation were put forward in his time by the Soviet master Chistyakov. In general, the variation is in no way worse than others. As Keres remarked: "4 ... ♖xd5 is quite possible, but with correct play White for a long time maintains the initiative".

6 ♕c4 ♖d6 7 0-0 ♖f6 8 ♖b3 ♖c6 9 ♖bxd4 ♖xd4 10 ♖xd4 ♕e7

It is hard to criticise a move played in the French Defence by Uhlmann himself. And yet it seems to us that 10 ... ♕e7 is not in accordance with Black's basic set-up in this variation: ... ♖c7, ... ♕d6, ... b5 and ... ♕b7, by which his pieces take up good positions for a counterattack. The introductory move here is 10 ... a6! Here are a few thematic examples:

(a) Kholmov-Fuchs, Kislovodsk 1966: 11 c3 ♖c7 12 ♕e2 ♕d6 13 h3 0-0 14 ♕g5 ♕f4! 15 ♕xf4 ♖xf4 16 ♖fe1 b5 17 ♕b3 ♕b7, with a good game for Black.

(b) Ivkov-Petrosian, Havana Olympiad 1966: 12 ♕d3 ♕d6 13 h3 ♕d7!? 14 ♖e1 ♕h2+ 15 ♖h1 ♕f4 16 ♖f3 ♕xc1 17 ♖axc1 0-0 18 c4 ♖fd8 19 ♖e3 ♖c5 20 ♖f3 1/2-1/2

(c) Lobron-Petrosian, European Team Championship, Plovdiv 1983: 11 b3 ♖c7 12 ♕b2 (12 ♖e2!? is more interesting) 12 ... ♕d6 13 h3 0-0 14 ♖e1 b5 15 ♕f1 ♖d8! 16 ♖e2 ♕b7, with the more pleasant game for Black.

A very interesting idea was carried out by Black in the game Hecht-Herzog, Malta

Olympiad 1980: 10 ... ♔d7!? 11 c3 ♖c7 12 ♗e2 0-0-0!? 13 a4?! ♔d6 14 h3 ♕h2+ 15 ♖h1 ♕f4 16 a5?! ♕xc1 17 ♖fxc1 h5 18 ♖g1 ♕g4!, and Black won with a direct attack on the king. As can be seen, in the 4 ... ♖xd5 variation there is still much unexplored territory . . .

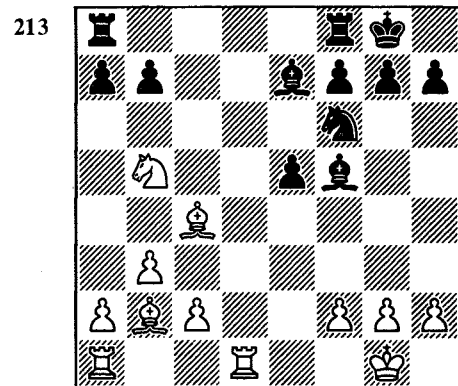
11 b3! 0-0
12 ♕b2 e5

Here 12 ... a6 is already too late: 13 ♖f3! ♖c7 14 ♖fe1 b5 15 ♔d3 ♕b7 16 ♖h3! g6 17 a4! with advantage to White, Stein-Uhlmann, Moscow 1967.

In general Uhlmann was very unsuccessful with the 4 ... ♖xd5 variation in Moscow, losing to Tal, Stein and Gipslis.

By 12 ... e5 Black forces an ending, which seems harmless only at first sight – White has a great lead in development.

13 ♕b5 ♖xd1 14 ♖fxd1 ♕f5 (213).



In the endgame White has an enduring positional advantage. He has completed his development and has already begun attacking, whereas Black still has to complete the mobilisation of his forces, and the deployment of his minor pieces and central pawn lack harmony. In set-ups characterised by pawn majorities on the flanks, it is vital to control the only open file, and this is in White's possession.

In short, Black faces a difficult struggle for equality.

15 ♖ac1 ♖fd8

Black's problems are not solved by 15 ... ♔d7 16 ♔c7 ♖ac8 17 ♔d5 ♕g5 18 ♔e3.

16 ♕xe5 ♖xd1+ 17 ♖xd1 ♕xc2 18 ♖c1

The pawn formation is now symmetric, but the difference in the activity of the pieces has further increased in favour of White.

18 ... ♕g6

After 18 ... ♕e4 19 ♔d6 White would have gained the advantage of the two bishops.

19 ♕e2!

Such backward moves by an already developed piece are always hard to find. White opens the c-file for his rook and prepares to move his bishop to f3, with an attack on Black's queenside pawns.

19 ... ♕e4 20 f3 ♔d5 21 ♖f2

A further advantage for White – his centralised king.

21 ... h6
22 ♔d6

Tal commences decisive pressure on the black position.

22 ... ♔d8 23 ♔d4 ♔d7 24 ♕c4!

The chief defender of Black's queenside is removed.

24 ... ♕xc4 25 ♖xc4 b6 26 ♖e3 g6 27 ♖e4!

White's advantage has become decisive. Black is completely helpless.

27 ... ♕e7

27 ... ♕f6+ would have been no better: 28 ♕xf6 ♕xf6 29 ♖c8+ ♖xc8 30 ♕xc8.

28 ♖c8+ ♖xc8 29 ♕xc8 f5+ 30 ♕d5 ♖f7

Black resigned, without waiting for 31 ♕xa7.

Radulov-Yusupov
Indonesia 1983

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♔d2 c5 4 exd5 ♖xd5 5 ♕gf3 cxd4 6 ♕c4 ♖d6 7 0-0 ♕f6 8 ♕b3 ♔c6 9 ♕bxd4 ♕xd4 10 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 11 ♕xd4

The capture with the queen occurs much more rarely than 10 ♕xd4, although the two moves are roughly equivalent in strength. In forcing the exchange of queens, White hopes to make use of his queenside pawn majority. He also pins considerable hopes on the d-file. In the given situation it is dangerous for Black to play ... a6 and ... b5, on account of a2-a4!. He is therefore obliged to complete his development with ... ♔d7, blocking the only open file, which makes it harder to fight for. For example:

11 ... ♔d7 12 ♕f4 ♖c8 13 ♕b3 ♕b5 14 ♖ad1, Matanović-Vasyukov, Belgrade 1962.

11 ... a6 12 ♕e2 ♔d6 13 ♖d1 ♖e7 14 ♕e3, Trifunović-Karaklajić, Yugoslavia 1957.

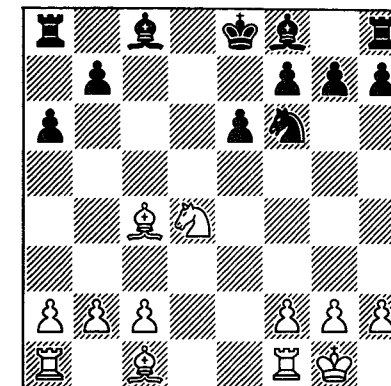
In both cases Black encountered certain difficulties.

11 ... a6

(diagram 214)

In the present game Yusupov succeeds in demonstrating that things are not so bad for Black in the ending. True, he is helped by White's unfortunate 12th move.

214

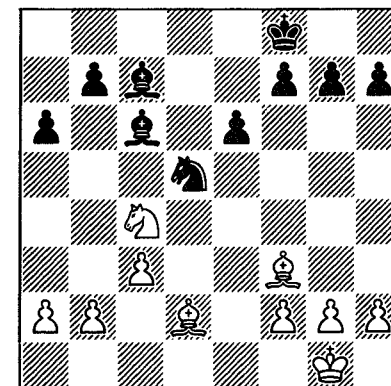


12 ♖e1?! ♔d7 13 ♕f4 ♕c5 14 ♖ad1 ♖c8 15 ♕b3 0-0 16 ♕f3 ♖fd8 17 c3 ♖f8 18 ♕e5 ♕e8 19 ♖xd8

Black has harmoniously deployed his forces and has equalised. Radulov is the first to begin exchanging rooks on the d-file, which is a micro-concession to the opponent. But, given the opportunity, Black himself could have activated his game by the exchange of rooks and ... ♕e4, while on 19 ♖f1 he had a bishop check at b5.

19 ... ♖xd8 20 ♖d1 ♖xd1+ 21 ♕xd1 ♔d5 22 ♔d2 ♕d6! 23 ♕c4 ♕c7 24 ♕f3 ♕c6 (215)

215



Black has gradually taken the initiative,

and accurate play is already demanded of White to maintain the balance. The most direct way to draw was by further simplifying with 25 Qe3! . After 25 ... Qxe3 26 fxe3 Qxf3 (26 ... f5 27 Qxc6 bxc6 28 h3 does not essentially change the position) 27 gxf3 Black retains a minimal positional advantage, but against accurate play by White it can hardly be realised. White can place his pawn at h3 and improve the arrangement of his pawns on the queenside. Against active play by Black such as ... f5 , ... g5 , ... h5 and g4 , White, depending on the concrete situation, either exchanges twice on g4 and plays e3-e4, or else does not react at all.

25 Qa3?!

White aims for simplification by c3-c4 without weakening his kingside pawns, but after Yusupov's strong reply he begins to lose space. The knight at a3 proves to be out of play.

25 ... Qe7!

26 Qxc6?

This leads to a weakening of the light squares on the queenside and in the centre. 26 Qe2 was more logical, with a solid enough position.

26 ... Qxc6 27 f4 e5! 28 fxe5 Qxe5 29 h3 Qe7 30 Qf1 Qe6 31 Qe2 Qd5 32 Qe3 Qe4 33 Qb1

Black's pieces are cramping the opponent more and more strongly. Radulov achieves the exchange of knights, but the bishop ending proves to be difficult for him.

33 ... Qc4 34 Qd2+ Qxd2 35 Qxd2 f5 36 a4 Qf4! 37 Qxf4?

The pawn ending is lost for White, but in the bishop ending after 37 Qe1 Qe3 followed by the creation of a passed pawn on the kingside it is doubtful whether he could have saved the draw.

37 ... Qxf4 38 b4 Qe4 39 a5

White lost on time.

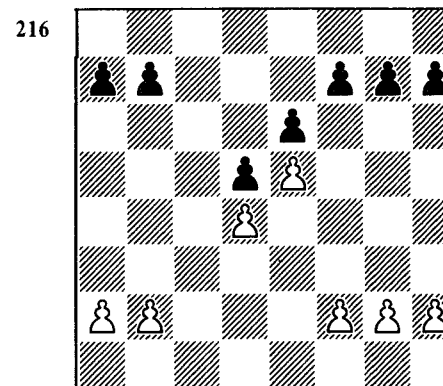
Caro-Kann Defence

It is commonly held that the Caro-Kann Defence is preferred by players who like quiet play and avoid complications. But this is not altogether correct, if only as shown by the fact that the defence has been used at various times by World Champions Capablanca, Botvinnik, Smyslov, Petrosian, Karpov and Kasparov, and also by outstanding grandmasters such as Nimzowitsch, Flohr, Bronstein and Portisch.

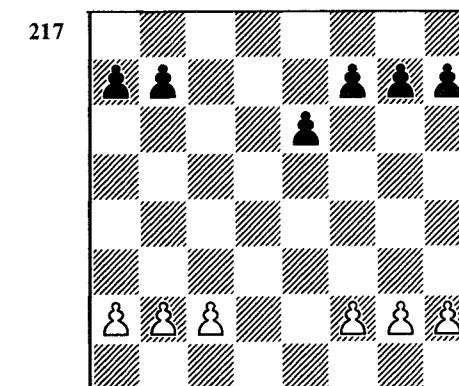
The Caro-Kann Defence attracts players primarily by the clarity of its plans, definite pawn formations, and wide possibilities for strategic manoeuvring. In the Sicilian Defence a mistake can often result in an immediate rout; in the Caro-Kann Defence the punishment for positional errors can be no less ruthless.

Endings typical of the Caro-Kann Defence can be arbitrarily divided into the following types:

(1) d4/e5 pawn wedge, with the c-file open.

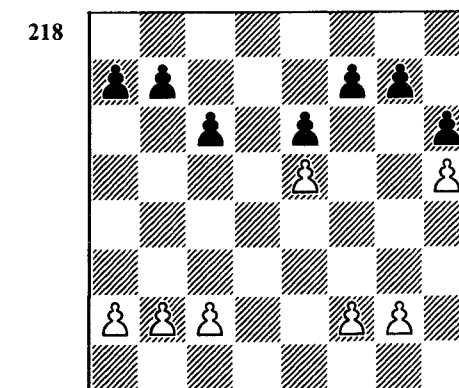


(2) Both sides have a pawn majority on one of the flanks, with the d-file open.



(3) White has the advantage of the two bishops in a semi-open position.

(4) A symmetric pawn formation with white pawns at e5 and h5, with the d-file open.



Endings arising from games begun

with 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♙f5 are usually favourable for Black, especially if there is an early exchange of bishops at d3, which slightly weakens the light squares in White's position. Black can quickly begin play on the c-file after ... c5 and can comfortably deploy his pieces on the weakened light squares, whereas the opponent's dark-square bishop is restricted by its own pawns.

The formation with pawn majorities on the flanks arises from the variations beginning 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4. Normally the side who controls the open d-file has good prospects in the endgame.

White most often gains the advantage of the two bishops in the variation 1 e4 c6 2 ♘c3 d5 3 ♘f3 ♙g4 4 h3 ♙xf3 5 ♙xf3.

At present Black experiences the most difficulties in the endings where White has advanced pawns at e5 and h5, a formation which arises from the Classical Variation 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 dxe4 4 ♘xe4 ♙f5. The idea of establishing white pawns at e5 and h5, squeezing Black's kingside, took a long time to be reached. Initially White tried to gain an advantage by seizing space on the queenside (after both sides had castled long) with c2-c4, but the counter ... c5 normally prevented this. Moreover, White's h-pawn, detached from the main pawn mass, would often be a cause of constant concern.

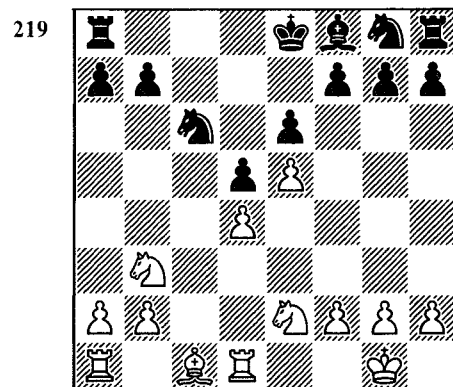
A white pawn appeared at e5 as a result of a knight exchange on this square, together with a pawn at h4, in games played back in the 1920s. Here Black's kingside was not blockaded, and he did not experience any particular difficulties.

The first to experience defensive problems was Petrosian, when in the 1966 World Championship Match Spassky employed the 'paralysing' set-up of pawns at e5 and h5. Apart from the several examples in this book, two other games to

note are Geller-Hort, Skopje 1968, where White realised the advantages of this set-up in classic style (cf. p.82 of *The Application of Chess Theory*, Pergamon, 1984), and Ljubojevic-Karpov, Linares, 1981, where Black demonstrated one way of neutralising White's aggressive plan (annotated by Karpov on p.166 of *Chess Kaleidoscope*, Pergamon 1981).

Atkins-Capablanca London 1922

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♙f5 4 ♙d3 ♙xd3 5 ♙xd3 e6 6 ♘e2 ♙b6 7 0-0 ♙a6 8 ♙d1 c5 9 c3 ♘c6 10 ♘d2 cxd4 11 cxd4 ♙d3 12 ♘b3 ♙xd1 13 ♙xd1 (219)



White has played the opening cautiously and has not gained the slightest advantage. In fact, Black's position is already preferable. He has the superior bishop and better prospects for play on the queenside. At present the 3 e5 variation is usually associated with sharp play such as 3 ... ♙f5 4 ♘c3 e6 5 g4 ♙g6 6 ♘ge2.

13 ... ♘ge7
14 ♙d2 a5!

Capablanca does not allow his opponent to simplify the game by 15 ♘a5.

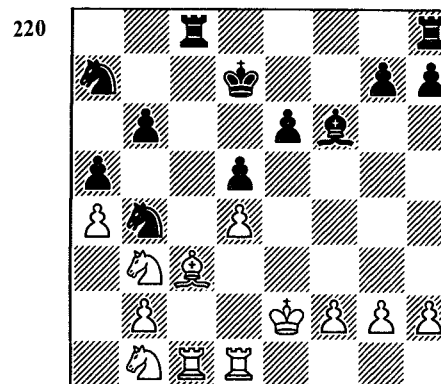
15 ♙c1 b6
16 a4?!

An unnecessary weakening of the b4 square. 16 a3 was more appropriate.

16 ... ♘d7! 17 ♘c3 ♘a7 18 ♙f1 ♘ec6 19 ♘e2 ♙c8 20 ♙e1 ♙e7 21 ♘b1 f5!

Capablanca begins play over the entire board. White is faced with a choice: either to allow the strengthening of Black's position and his seizure of space on the kingside, or to open up the game slightly and make his d4 pawn more vulnerable. Atkins chooses the second variation.

22 exf6 ♙xf6 23 ♙c3 ♘b4! (220)



Imperceptibly Black has outplayed his opponent. White already has an unpleasant position. From b4 Black's knight is ready to go to a2, after which he will gain complete control of the c-file.

24 ♙d2

Panov, in his book on Capablanca, makes the following comment on this move: "Atkins plays the whole game indecisively and inconsistently, and yet a poor plan is better than completely planless play. 24 ♙xb4 axb4 25 ♙xc8 ♙xc8 26 ♘d3 and then ♙c1 was essential, aiming for a minor piece ending." In defence of the English master, we should like to

add that if this variation is continued for just one more move and 26 ... ♘c6 is played, it transpires that the threats of 27 ... ♙a8 and 27 ... e5 are extremely unpleasant for White.

24 ... ♘ac6! 25 ♙e3 ♘a2! 26 ♙c2 ♙c7 27 ♘a3 ♙hc8 28 ♙cd2

White is forced to concede the c-file. 28 ... ♘xd4+ was threatened.

28 ... ♘a7 29 ♙d3 ♘b4 30 ♙3d2 ♙c6 31 ♙b1 ♙e7

Capablanca sets his sights on the knight at a3, which is covering the c2 square.

32 ♙a1 ♙d6
33 h3 ♙6c7!

Black prepares 34 ... ♘bc6 35 ♘c2 ♘e7 36 ♘e1 ♙b4, exchanging the knight.

34 ♙ad1 ♘a2! 35 ♙a1 ♙xa3 36 ♙xa2 ♙b4 37 ♙d1 ♙c4 38 ♙c1 ♘c6!

Threatening 39 ... ♘xd4+.

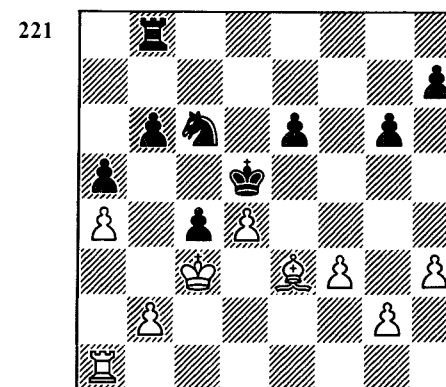
39 ♙xc4

39 ♙aa1 was slightly better.

39 ... dxc4 40 ♘d2 ♙xd2! 41 ♘xd2 ♘d6 42 ♘c3 ♘d5

Black's advantage is already decisive.

43 ♙a1 g6
44 f3 ♙b8! (221)



Capablanca embarks on a decisive breakthrough on the queenside

45 ♖a3 b5 46 axb5 ♖xb5 47 ♕f2 ♖b4

Threatening 48 ... ♖d3.

48 b3 cxb3 49 ♖xb3 ♖c6+ 50 ♖c3 ♖b1 51 ♖a4 ♖c1+ 52 ♖d2

All the same White cannot hold the fourth rank. If 52 ♖b3 ♖b1+ and 53 ... ♖b4, or 52 ♖d3 ♖b4+ 53 ♖e3 ♖c3+ 54 ♖d2 ♖c2+ 55 ♖e3 ♖c4!.

52 ... ♖c4 53 ♖a1 a4 54 ♖a2 ♖a7!

A rook ending with an extra pawn does not satisfy Capablanca. Keeping the minor pieces on wins more quickly.

55 ♖a1 ♖b5 56 ♖b1 ♖c6! 57 ♖d3 ♖c3+ 58 ♖d2 ♖b3 59 ♖c1+

After the exchange of rooks the black king breaks through to the kingside and eliminates the white pawns, e.g. 59 ♖xb3 axb3 60 ♖d3 ♖d5 61 ♖e3 b2! 62 ♖c2 ♖c4 63 ♖xb2 ♖d3! etc.

59 ... ♖b7 60 ♖c2 a3 61 ♖g3

Desperation. Against passive tactics the black king would have penetrated to b4, when ... ♖b2 at the right moment would have concluded the game.

61 ... ♖xd4 62 ♖c7+ ♖b6 63 ♖c4 ♖b5 64 ♖c8 ♖c6 65 ♖a8 ♖b2+ 66 ♖e3 ♖xg2 67 ♖f2 ♖b4!

White resigns. One of those games which created Capablanca's reputation as a human machine, inexorably exploiting the opponent's slightest errors.

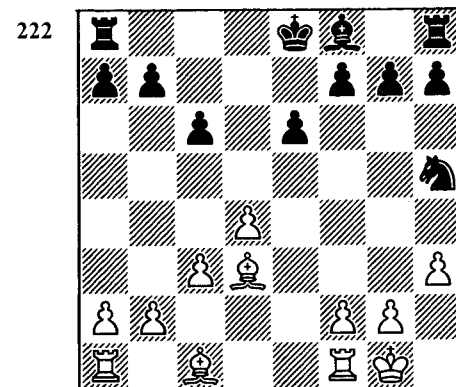
Boleslavsky-Bronstein

Candidates Match (10), Moscow 1950

1 e4 c6 2 ♖c3 d5 3 ♖f3 ♖g4 4 h3 ♖xf3 5

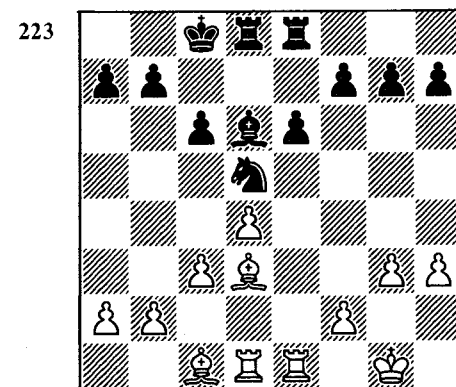
♖xf3 ♖f6 6 d4 e6 7 ♖d3 dxe4 8 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 9 ♖xe4 ♖d7 10 c3 ♖f6 11 ♖e2 ♖d5 12 0-0 ♖h5 13 ♖xh5 ♖xh5 (222)

With his previous move Black practically forced the exchange of queens, since if the white queen retreated he could have castled long and mounted an attack on the kingside with the advance of his g-pawn.



An endgame has been reached where White has a slight positional advantage. With their next few moves both sides create order in their positions.

14 ♖e3 ♖f6 15 ♖ad1 ♖d5 16 ♖c1 0-0-0 17 ♖fe1 ♖d6 18 g3 ♖he8 (223)



The two sides have completed the

mobilisation of their forces. A typical position has been reached, one which can arise not only from the Caro-Kann Defence. Its main feature is the fact that both sides have minimal possibilities for pawn play. There is no point in White advancing his queenside pawns, which leads merely to the creation of weaknesses, while the central pawn breaks ... c5 and ... e5 by Black would merely open the game unfavourably. If one side has no possibility of pawn play, his position is normally unpromising. In the given instance, as we will see, White can in fact advance his kingside pawns, and therefore his chances are better.

19 ♖e4 ♖f6 20 ♖c2 h6 21 ♖d3!

Boleslavsky probes the one vulnerable point in the opponent's position – the f7 pawn. The rook is transferred to f3.

21 ... ♖d5 22 ♖f3 ♖e7 23 ♖b3 ♖ed7 24 ♖g2 ♖f8 25 g4 a6 26 h4 g6 27 ♖xd5!

White voluntarily gives up the advantage of the two bishops for the sake of a pawn attack on the kingside.

27 ... cxd5 28 ♖h3 ♖g7 29 h5 g5 30 f4 gxf4 31 ♖xf4

White has achieved a great deal, and in Black's position there are two weak pawns at h6 and f7. But the drawish nature of the ending is fairly persistent, and this advantage is insufficient for a win.

31 ... ♖g8
32 ♖g3 ♖h8

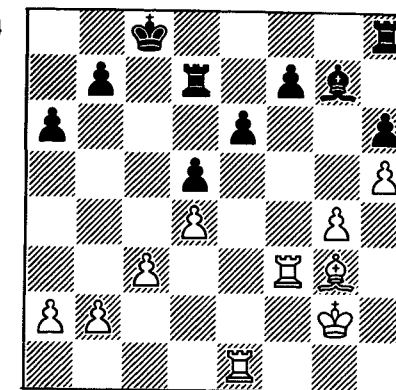
Bronstein plays his rook to h7, from where it defends both pawn weaknesses.

33 ♖f3 ♖dd8

As shown by Boleslavsky, the immediate 33 ... ♖f8 was more accurate.

34 ♖g3 ♖d7 (224)

224



35 ♖h4?!

"After this Black achieves the best arrangement of his pieces and defends easily. He would have had more difficult problems after 35 ♖ef1 ♖f8 36 ♖h4, when the game could have continued 36 ... ♖c7 37 ♖f6 ♖g8 38 ♖g3 ♖c6 (38 ... ♖d6? 39 ♖e5+ ♖xe5 40 dxe5+ ♖xe5 41 ♖xf7 ♖g7 42 ♖e1+ ♖d6 43 ♖f6, and White should win) 39 ♖h4 ♖c7 40 ♖lf2 ♖c6 41 ♖xg7 ♖xg7 42 ♖f6 ♖h7 43 g5 hxg5+ 44 ♖xg5 ♖d6 45 ♖h6 ♖g7+ 46 ♖f6 ♖g1 47 ♖h7 ♖h1 48 h6 b5 49 ♖g2 (not 49 ♖h8 ♖g1, or 49 ♖g5 f6+) 49 ... ♖f1+ 50 ♖g7 f5+ 51 ♖g6 ♖xh7 52 ♖xh7 f4. The resulting rook ending is a draw, e.g. 53 ♖g7 f3 54 ♖g6 (54 ♖h2 ♖g1+ 55 ♖f7 ♖g2 56 ♖h3 f2 57 ♖f3 ♖h2 etc) 54 ... f2 55 h7 ♖h1 56 ♖f6 ♖g1+ 57 ♖f7 ♖h1." (Boleslavsky)

Boleslavsky's detailed analysis of this ending demonstrates that it is drawn. However, in the last variation White was just one tempo away from a win, and it is possible that at some point his play could be improved. At any event, it would have been a thankless task for Black to passively mark time, watching his opponent improving his position and waiting for his offensive, in which there might, or might not, be attacking resources sufficient for a

win. And Boleslavsky certainly deserves credit for working out an active plan for White in such positions.

35 ... ♖h7 36 ♜ef1 ♕f8 37 ♖h3 ♕d6 38 ♕f6.

Or 38 ♜f6 ♕e7 and 39 ... ♕d8.

38 ... ♕e7
39 ♕xe7

The rook ending does not promise White much hope of success. Perhaps he should have retreated his bishop to e5 and tried to initiate play on the opposite wing, by taking his king to d3 and following up with b2-b3 and c3-c4.

39 ... ♜xe7 40 ♜f6 ♜d7 41 g5

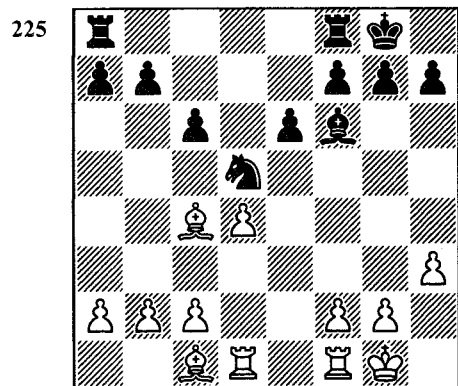
The only possibility of playing for a win, which is easily parried by Black.

41 ... hxc5 42 ♖g4 ♖d8 43 ♖xg5 ♖e7 44 h6 ♜d8 45 ♖h5 ♜g8 46 ♜f2 b5 47 b4 ♜g1 48 ♜f1 ♜g2 49 ♜f2 ♜g1 Draw agreed

Larsen-Filip

Palma de Mallorca 1970

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♖d7 5 ♖f3 ♖gf6 6 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 7 ♕c4 ♕f5 8 0-0 e6 9 ♕g5 ♕e7 10 ♖e2 ♕g4 11 ♜ad1 0-0 12 h3 ♕xf3 13 ♖xf3 ♖d5 14 ♕c1 ♕g5 15 ♕e3 ♖f6 16 ♖xf6 ♕xf6 17 ♕c1 (225)



White has not extracted any particular advantage from the opening, and an ending similar to that in the Boleslavsky-Bronstein game has been reached, with the difference that the black king has castled kingside and is defending f7.

17 ... ♜fd8 18 c3 b5 19 ♕b3 ♜ac8

Annotating this game in *Informator*, Larsen suggests that 19 ... a5 was preferable.

20 ♜d3 h6 21 g4 ♕e7 22 f4 c5

Against White's kingside pawn offensive, Filip replies with a counterblow in the centre. This slightly opens the position, which favours White, who has the advantage of the two bishops.

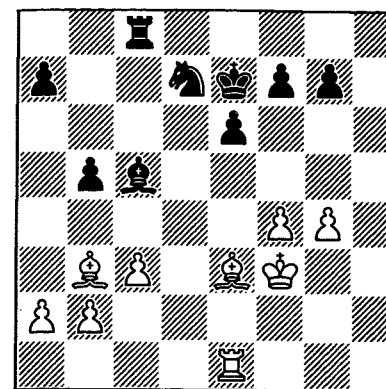
23 dxc5 ♕xc5+ 24 ♖h1 ♖f6 25 ♜fd1 ♜xd3 26 ♜xd3 ♖f8

The pawn formation has changed, and each side now has a pawn majority. Usually the plan in such situations is to advance the pawn majority. The particular feature of the given position is that both sides have already pushed forward pawns on the flanks where the opponent has a majority, and so the advance of the majority is severely hindered and leads merely to simplification. Larsen begins manoeuvring, with the aim of keeping the opponent in a state of constant tension. In this case the probability of a mistake increases, since nothing is so exhausting as defending an inferior position where the situation is not clearly defined.

27 ♖g2 ♖e7 28 ♖f3 ♖d7 29 ♜d1 h5 30 ♜e1 hxc4+ 31 hxc4 ♕d6 32 ♕e3 ♕c5 (226)

Filip defends soundly. Convinced that no rash action by his calm opponent can be expected, Larsen decides to change the situation before the time control.

226



33 ♕d4! ♕xd4 34 cxd4 ♖d6 35 f5 ♜e8 36 ♜h1 ♜e7 37 ♜h8 e5 38 dxe5+ ♖xe5+ 39 ♖g3 f6

White has achieved some success. The position has been opened up, and the material balance of rook and bishop against rook and knight is in his favour. But there are too few pawns remaining for White to have serious hopes of winning. Any active plan must inevitably involve g4-g5, which means that each side will only have three pawns left.

40 ♕e6 ♜c7 41 ♜d8+ ♖c6 42 ♖f4 ♖c4 43 b4 ♖d6?!

Why not 43 ... a5?

44 ♜f8 ♖c4 45 g5 fxg5+ 46 ♖xg5 a5??

But now this is inappropriate. He should have played 46 ... ♖e5.

47 bxa5 ♖xa5?
48 ♜c8!

Filip had obviously forgotten about this move. After the exchange of rooks the black king cannot reach e5, and White's king is free to pick up the g7 pawn.

48 ... ♜xc8 49 ♕xc8 ♖c7 50 ♕e6 ♖d6 51 ♖g6 ♖c6 52 ♖xg7 ♖e5 53 ♖f6 b4 54

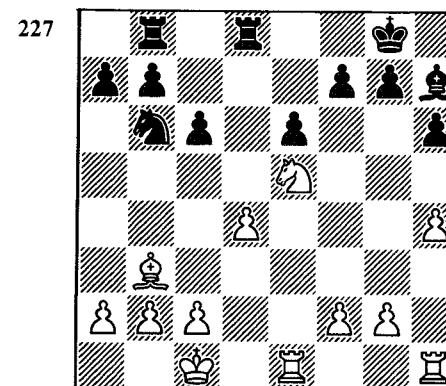
♕b3 ♖f3 55 ♖g7 ♖e5 56 f6 ♖d7 57 f7 ♖e7 58 ♕c2 Black resigns

On 58 ... ♖f8 there follows 59 ♕f5.

Tal-Botvinnik

World Championship (15), Moscow 1960

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♕f5 5 ♖g3 ♕g6 6 ♕c4 e6 7 ♖1e2 ♕d6 8 h4 h6 9 ♖f4 ♕xf4 10 ♕xf4 ♖f6 11 ♖d2 ♖bd7 12 0-0-0 ♖d5 13 ♜de1 ♖7b6 14 ♕b3 ♖xf4 15 ♖xf4 ♖d5 16 ♖e5 0-0 17 ♖e4 ♖b8 18 ♖d6 ♜d8 19 ♖c4 ♖b6 20 ♖xb8 ♜axb8 21 ♖e5 ♕h7 (227)



In the opening Botvinnik committed an inaccuracy – 7 ... ♕d6?! (7 ... ♖f6 was better). As a result he had to exchange on f4, since 9 ... ♕h7 would have been unpleasantly met by 10 ♖fh5. White gained an enduring initiative, and subsequent simplification did not ease Black's position. In the diagram White still has strong pressure on his opponent's position.

22 ♜h3!

Tal exploits the tactical features of the position and does not waste time on defending the d4 pawn.

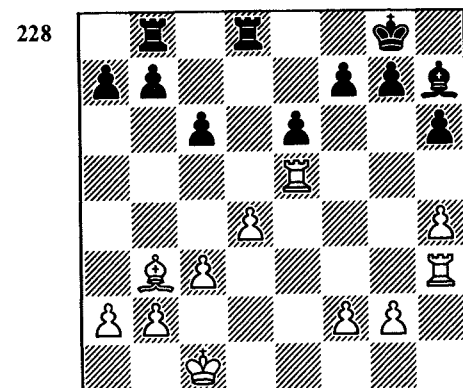
22 ... ♖d7

The capture on d4 is prettily refuted: 22 ... ♖xd4 23 ♜xf7! ♙f5 (23 ... ♜xf7 24 ♙xe6+ ♜f8 25 ♖f3+ ♜e7 26 ♙f5+) 24 ♖f3 ♙g4 25 ♖g3 ♙h5! (25 ... ♜xf7 26 ♖xg4!) 26 ♜e5 ♖xh4 27 ♙xe6+ with a big advantage to White. Botvinnik aims by the exchange of knights to weaken the opponent's pressure on f7.

23 c3

Now the knight sacrifice does not work: 23 ♜xf7? ♜xf7 24 ♙xe6+ ♜f8 25 ♖f3+ ♜f6 26 g4 ♙g8 27 g5 ♖e8!.

23 ... ♜xe5
24 ♖xe5 (228)



There are very few pieces left on the board, and yet White's position is close to winning. He has a significant spatial advantage, more mobile pawn chain, and better placed pieces. He also has a clear plan for realising his superiority. After appropriate preparation he can advance his kingside pawns, h4-h5, g2-g4, f2-f4, g4-g5 and g5-g6, undermine f7, the bulwark of Black's position, and open up the game. For his part, Black's only possibility of counterplay, which White can easily neutralise, is to prepare ... c5.

24 ... b6
25 ♖he3?!

White should have played 25 ♙c4 immediately, to have the possibility of b2-b4.

25 ... ♖bc8
26 ♙c4 ♖c7?!

Botvinnik in return commits an inaccuracy. He does not have time to make full preparations for ... c5, and should have played it immediately: 26 ... c5!, when after either 27 dxc5 bxc5 or 27 d5 exd5 28 ♙xd5 ♜f8 the worst for him would have been over.

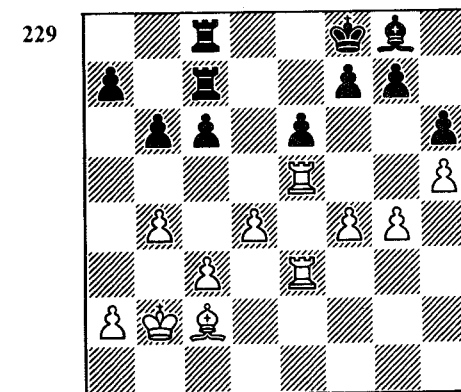
27 b4!

The moment has been lost. Now on 27 ... c5 there follows 28 dxc5 bxc5 29 b5, when White increases his advantage.

27 ... ♜f8
28 g4 ♙g8

28 ... f6 would have met with a pretty refutation: 29 ♖f3! ♙f5 30 ♙xe6 fxe5 31 ♖xf5+ and 32 ♖xe5, with a big advantage to White.

29 ♙b3 ♙h7 30 f4 ♙g8 31 ♜b2 ♙h7 32 h5 ♖dc8 33 ♙c2 ♙g8 (229)



Curiously enough, the exchange of bishops would have favoured White. In this case Black would have been deprived of the counterplay associated with ... f6,

and White could have prepared undisturbed his pawn breakthrough on the kingside.

34 g5?!

A committal and premature decision. White could have made a number of useful moves, beginning with moving his rook at e5 away from the pawn attack ... f6. Therefore 34 ♖e1 came into consideration. From the practical point of view, the position should have been adjourned without changing the general picture, and the most accurate way to win found in adjournment analysis.

34 ... f6!
35 ♖5e4

If 35 gxf6 gxf6 36 ♖5e4 then 36 ... c5! 37 dxc5 bxc5 38 b5 c4!, and the vulnerability of the white pawn at h5 gives Black counterplay.

35 ... c5! 36 ♙b3 cxb4 37 cxb4 hxg5 38 fxg5 fxg5 39 ♖g3 ♖f7 40 ♖xg5 ♖f2+ 41 ♜a3 ♖c7

The sealed move. In this position the players agreed a draw without resuming. A possible variation: 42 ♖ge5 ♖f5! (43 d5 was threatened) 43 ♖xf5 exf5 44 ♖f4 ♙xb3 45 ♜xb3 ♖f7 46 ♜c4 ♜e7 47 ♜d5 ♜f6 48 ♜d6! ♖f8! 49 ♜d7 ♖f7+, and White must repeat moves.

Spassky-Botvinnik

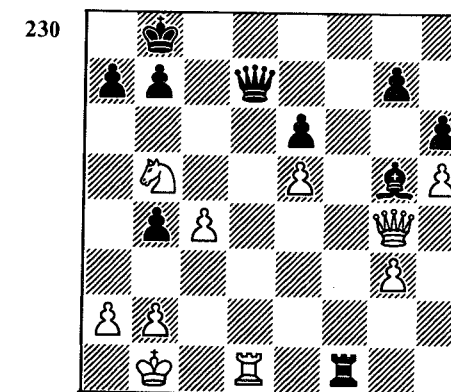
USSR Team Championship, Moscow 1966

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 dxe4 4 ♜xe4 ♙f5 5 ♜g3 ♙g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♜f3 ♜d7 8 h5 ♙h7 9 ♙d3 ♙xd3 10 ♖xd3 ♜gf6 11 ♙d2 ♖c7 12 0-0-0 0-0-0 13 ♖e2 e6 14 ♜e5 ♜xe5 15 dxe5 ♜d5 16 f4 c5 17 c4 ♜b4 18 ♙xb4 ♖xd1+ 19 ♖xd1 cxb4 20 ♜e4 ♙e7 21 ♜d6+ ♜b8 22 ♜xf7 ♖f8 23 ♜d6 ♖xf4 24

g3 ♖f8 25 ♖g4 ♖d7 26 ♜b1 ♙g5 27 ♜b5 ♖f1 (230)

Not long before this, the 13th game of the 1966 Spassky-Petrosian World Championship Match took the same course for the first fifteen moves, when Black retreated his knight to d7. The game continued 15 ... ♜d7 16 f4 ♙e7 17 ♜e4 ♜c5 18 ♜c3 f6 19 exf6 ♙xf6 20 ♖c4 ♖b6 21 b4 ♜a6 22 ♜e4 ♜c7 23 ♖he1 ♖d4 24 ♖b3 ♖b5 25 c3 ♖xe4 26 ♖xe4 ♖xh5. Black did not obtain full compensation for the exchange, and after a highly tenacious battle Spassky realised his advantage on the 91st move. Later it was established that, by playing 21 ... ♖a6! instead of 21 ... ♜a6, Black could have gone into a roughly equal ending after 22 ♖xa6 (22 ♖xc5? ♖a3+ 23 ♜b1 ♖xd2) 22 ... ♜xa6 23 ♜e4 (23 a3? ♖xd2!) 23 ... ♖d4 24 ♜xf6 gxf6.

Botvinnik played his knight to d5, a move which was known to him from the game Grigoriev-Panov, Moscow 1928, which he had annotated, although Grigoriev's pawn was still at h4.



Strictly speaking, an endgame is reached only two moves later, but it will be useful for the reader to be familiar with the position in which White has exchanged bishop for knight, and the black pawn has

moved from c5 to b4. As this game shows, White's position is only apparently threatening, and Black has considerable defensive resources.

28 ♖c2?

A mistake. In the minor piece ending White loses a pawn. The cool 28 ♖d6 would have led to a roughly equal position.

28 ... ♜xd1 29 ♞xd1 ♞xd1+ 30 ♖xd1 ♙e3!

It is difficult for White to prevent the black bishop from attacking the e5 pawn.

31 ♖e2

As shown by Botvinnik, the pawn ending after 31 b3 ♙f2 32 g4 ♙c5 33 ♖e2 a6 34 ♖d6 ♙xd6 35 exd6 b6 36 ♖d3 ♖b7 37 ♖d4 ♖c6 38 ♖e5 ♖d7 is lost for White.

31 ... ♙c1 32 b3 ♙b2 33 ♖d6 ♙xe5 34 ♖e4 ♖c7

Black has won a pawn, but White has every chance of holding the position.

35 g4

Of course, not 35 ♖c5 on account of 35 ... ♙xg3 36 ♖xe6+ ♖d6 37 ♖e5, when the white knight is trapped.

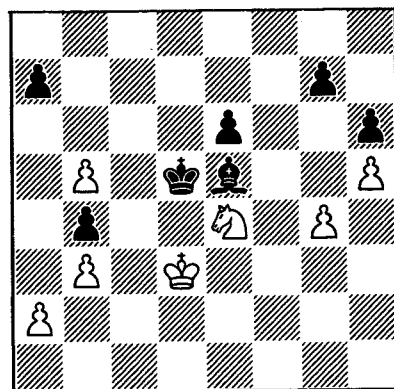
35 ... ♖c6 36 ♖d3 b5 37 cxb5+

"Sooner or later this exchange was forced. Thanks to inevitable zugzwang, by ... ♖d6-e5 the black king could always have occupied a central position" (Botvinnik).

37 ... ♖d5! (231)

Black's only chance is to break through with his king in the centre. The b5 pawn has no particular significance. After 37 ... ♖xb5? 38 ♖d2! followed by ♖e4 and ♖f3 White would have set up an impregnable fortress.

231



38 g5

"White's plan of exchanging the king-side pawns would seem to be sufficient for a draw.

After the game Spassky demonstrated a more convincing way: 38 ♖e3 ♙c7 39 ♖f3! ♖d4 40 ♖f2 ♖c3 41 ♖e2 ♖b2 42 ♖d3 ♖xa2 43 ♖c2, and Black cannot break through!" (Botvinnik).

38 ... ♙xg5 39 ♖xg5 ♙f4 40 ♖e4 ♙h6 41 ♖f2 ♙g5 42 ♖g4 ♙f4 43 ♖f2 ♙d6 44 ♖g4

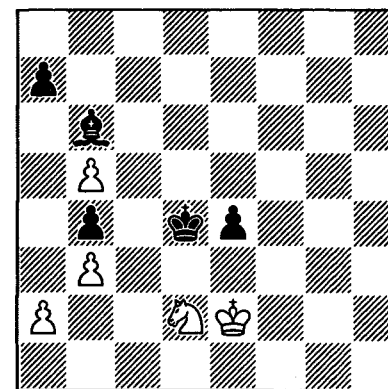
After 44 ♖e4 ♙f8 45 ♖f2 ♙e7 46 ♖e4 ♖e5 47 ♖f2 ♖f5 48 ♖c4 ♖g5 49 ♖d3 ♖xh5 50 ♖xb4 g5 51 a4 g4 52 ♖d3 White would have gained a draw, but 44 ... ♙c7 45 ♖f2 ♙b6 46 ♖e4 ♖e5 47 ♖d2 ♖f4 48 ♖c4 ♖e3 49 ♖f1+ (49 ♖b1 ♙a5) 49 ... ♖e2 50 ♖g3+ ♖f3 51 ♖f1 ♙c7! would have led to a win for Black (shown by Botvinnik).

44 ... ♙c5 45 h6 g4 46 ♖xh6 e5 47 ♖f5 e4+ 48 ♖e2 ♖e5 49 ♖h4 ♖d4 50 ♖f5+ ♖d5 51 ♖h6

A risky move. But Spassky has accurately worked out that in the variation 51 ... ♖e6 52 ♖g4 ♖f5 53 ♖h6+ ♖f4 54 ♖f7 ♙e7 55 ♖h6 Black is unable to win the errant knight.

51 ... ♙e7 52 ♖g4 ♙g5 53 ♖f2 ♖d4 54 ♖d1 ♙c1 55 ♖f2 ♖d5 56 ♖g4 ♙g5 57 ♖f2 ♙f6 58 ♖g4 ♙d4 59 ♖h2 ♙c5 60 ♖f1 ♖d4 61 ♖d2 ♙b6 (232)

232



62 ♖c4

"Only this ill-starred move leads to defeat. After 62 ♖f1 ♖c3 63 ♖g3 ♖b2 64 ♖d1! ♖xa2 65 ♖c2 e3 66 ♖e2 the pawn at b5 would have saved White – Black does not have ... a5-a4. But now the knight can no longer return to e2, and the game is decided" (Botvinnik).

62 ... ♖c3

63 ♖d1 ♙d4

Threatening 64 ... ♖d3.

64 ♖e2 e3!

65 ♖a5

The pawn ending after 65 ♖xe3 ♙xe3 66 ♖xe3 ♖b2 67 ♖d3 ♖xa2 68 ♖c4 ♖a3 is lost for White. But now there is no defence against the advance of the black king to the a2 pawn.

65 ... ♖b2 66 ♖c6 ♙c5 67 ♖e5 ♖xa2 68 ♖d3 ♙e7 White resigns

Szabo-Barcza
Leningrad 1967

1 e4 c6 2 ♖c3 d5 3 d4 dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♙f5 5 ♖g3 ♙g6 6 h4 h6 7 ♖f3 ♖d7 8 ♙d3 ♙xd3 9 ♞xd3 ♞c7 10 ♙d2 ♖gf6 11 0-0-0 0-0-0 12 c4 e6 13 ♙c3 ♙d6 14 ♖e4 ♙f4+ 15 ♖b1 ♖e5 16 ♖xe5 ♙xe5 17 ♞e3 ♖xe4 18 dxe5 ♜xd1+ 19 ♜xd1

From the opening White has not gained any advantage. Barcza's next move is a clever piece of tactics, which sets the opponent definite problems.

19 ... ♜d8!

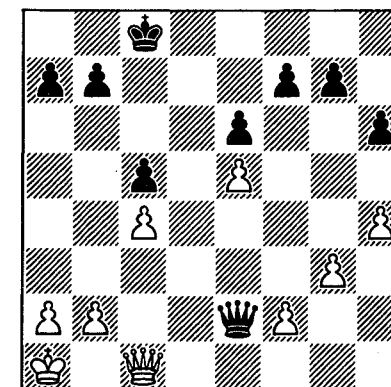
Black exploits the undefended state of the first rank, and also the fact that in the opening White 'forgot' to advance his pawn to h5.

20 ♜d4?

A mistake. White could still have maintained the balance in the variation 20 ♜xd8 ♞xd8 21 ♖c2 ♞xh4 22 g3 ♞h1 23 ♞xa7 ♖xc3 24 ♞a8+ ♖c7 25 ♞a5+. But now play goes into a queen ending which is difficult for White.

20 ... ♖xc3+ 21 ♞xc3 c5! 22 ♜xd8+ ♞xd8 23 g3 ♞d1+ 24 ♞c1 ♞e2 25 ♞f4 ♞d1+ 26 ♞c1 ♞d3+! 27 ♖a1 ♞e2 (233)

233



Since 28 ♞f4 is not possible, White loses material.

28 f4 ♞f2

29 g4 ♖xh4

Black has won a pawn, and its realisation does not present any great difficulty, in view of White's numerous pawn weaknesses.

30 ♖g1 b6 31 a3 ♜c7 32 ♖g2 ♖d8!

The black queen breaks decisively into White's position via the d-file.

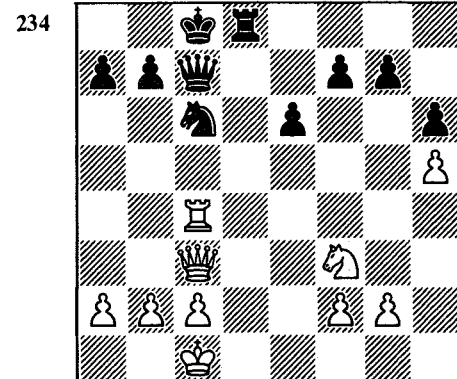
33 ♖e4 ♖d1+ 34 ♜a2 ♖d4 35 ♖c2

35 ♖a8 ♖xc4+ 36 ♜a1 ♖a6 would not have saved White.

35 ... ♖xf4 36 ♖a4 a5 White resigns

Faibisovich-Okhotnik
Leningrad 1979

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♙f5 5 ♖g3 ♙g6 6 h4 h6 7 h5 ♙h7 8 ♖f3 ♖d7 9 ♙d3 ♙xd3 10 ♖xd3 e6 11 ♙d2 ♖gf6 12 0-0-0 ♖c7 13 ♖e2 c5 14 ♖f5 0-0-0 15 ♖e3 ♖b8 16 ♙h4 ♖c6 17 ♙c3 ♙e7 18 dxc5 ♙xc5 19 ♙c4 ♙xe3+ 20 ♖xe3 ♙xd1+ 21 ♖xd1 ♙d8+ 22 ♖c1 ♖d5 23 ♖e1 ♖xc3 24 ♖xc3 (234)



White played the opening in original fashion, employing in reply to 13 ... c5 the new plan of moving his knight from g3 to

e3. Then Faibisovich brought his king's rook into play via h4 and aimed for simplification, pinning his hopes on a favourable endgame, thanks to the pawn at h5 fixing the opponent's kingside.

24 ... ♖b6!?

The exchange of the g7 and h5 pawns after 24 ... ♙d5?! 25 ♖xg7 ♙xh5 26 b3 would have been to White's clear advantage.

25 b4!

Capturing the g7 pawn would have led to a draw: 25 ♖xg7? ♖a6! 26 ♖d2 ♙xd2 27 ♙xc6+ ♖xc6 28 ♖xd2 ♖d5+ (Faibisovich).

25 ... ♜b8?

A mistake. It is understandable that Black should want to remove his king from the pin as soon as possible, but now White obtains a great advantage in the endgame. Black should have delayed the king move and played 25 ... f6. Then after the possible variation 26 a3 ♜b8 27 ♙c5 ♙d5 28 ♙xd5 exd5 29 ♖d2 White gains some advantage, but Black's position is quite defensible.

26 ♖e5! ♖xf2

There appears to be nothing better. 26 ... ♖xe5 27 ♖xe5+ ♜a8 28 ♖c7! is totally uninviting.

27 ♙xc6 bxc6?

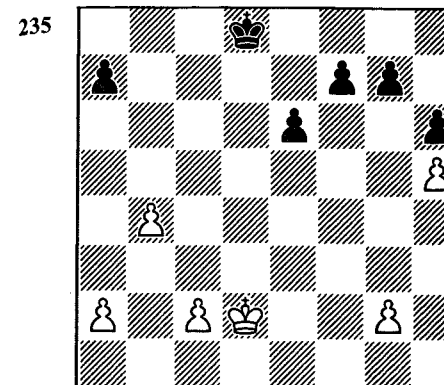
The decisive mistake. Black should first have given check at f4 and gone into a significantly inferior queen ending after 27 ... ♖f4+ 28 ♖b2 bxc6 29 ♖xc6+ ♜c7 30 ♖xd8+ ♜xd8 31 ♖c5. Now White can take play into a pawn ending, which can normally be given a definite assessment.

28 ♖xc6+ ♜c7 29 ♖xd8+ ♜xd8 30 ♖d2+! ♖xd2+ 31 ♖xd2 (235)

♙e3 ♜c6 45 g4! Black resigns

Ljubojević-Portisch
Tilburg 1978

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 dxe4 4 ♖xe4 ♙f5 5 ♖g3 ♙g6 6 ♖1e2 ♖f6 7 ♖f4 ♖bd7 8 ♙c4 e5 9 ♖e2 ♖e7 10 dxe5 ♖xe5 11 ♙e3 ♙b4+ 12 c3 ♙c5 13 ♙xc5 ♖xe2+ 14 ♙xe2 ♖xc5 15 0-0-0 (236)



The pawn at h5 plays its part to the end. Thanks to it White wins the pawn ending.

31 ... f5

Now White essentially has two extra pawns on the queenside, against one black one on the kingside. But 31 ... g5 would also not have saved Black. Faibisovich gives the following analysis: 32 hxg6 fxg6 33 ♙e3 h5 (33... ♙e7 34 ♙e4 ♖d6 35 c4 e5 36 c5+ ♙e6 37 b5 h5 38 b6) 34 ♖f4 ♙e7 35 ♙e5 g5 (35... a6 36 a4 g5 37 a5 ♖d7 38 ♖f6) 36 b5 h4 37 a4 ♖d7 38 c4 ♖c7 39 c5 ♖d7 40 a5 ♖c7 41 a6!.

32 c4 ♖d7 33 c5 ♜c6 34 ♖d3 ♖d5 35 g3 e5 36 ♜c3

White simply has to wait for Black to run out of moves with his a-pawn, when he will be forced to move his king away from the centre or determine the formation of his kingside pawns.

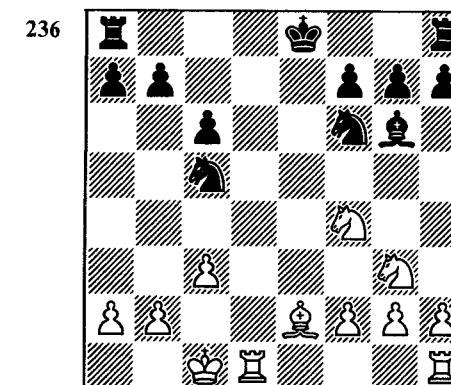
36 ... a6 37 ♖d3 a5 38 a3 a4 39 ♜c3 e4

Now it only remains for White to break up the black pawns on the kingside.

40 ♖d2 ♜c6
41 ♙e3

41 ♙e2! was more precise.

41 ... ♖d5 42 ♖f2 ♜c6 43 ♙e2 ♖d5 44



White's position is preferable. He has a slight lead in development, more active minor pieces, and greater possibilities for play on the flanks. In addition, he always has in reserve the exchange of his knight for the bishop at g6, and with play on both flanks his bishop may prove stronger than the enemy knight.

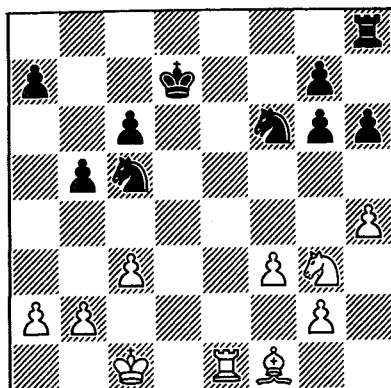
15 ... ♙d8

Portisch tries to keep his king in the centre. 15 ... 0-0 would all the same have been met by 16 f3.

16 f3 ♙xd1+ 17 ♙xd1 ♙e7 18 ♙e1 ♖d7 19 h4! h6 20 ♖xg6 fxg6 21 ♙c4 b5 22 ♙f1 (237)

Original play by Ljubojević. If he is to win, White must accumulate as many small advantages as possible. On the

237



kingside he has achieved some success, and now he has to break up Black's position on the queenside. Therefore the Yugoslav grandmaster provokes Portisch into advancing his queenside pawns, hoping that this will weaken more squares than White could achieve by himself mounting a pawn attack on the queenside, which in any case would be liable to result in considerable simplification.

22 ... a5 23 d2 b8 24 e2 b4?!

Portisch persists with his queenside play, but thereby weakens his own position. After 24 ... d5 it would have been much more difficult for White to find an active plan. Possibly Black was hoping to seize the initiative, and overlooked White's strong reply.

25 b1! d5
26 cxb4 bxb4

Other captures would also have left White with the initiative: 26 ... axb4 27 d4 and 28 e4, or 26 ... dxb4 27 d3 followed by 28 e4.

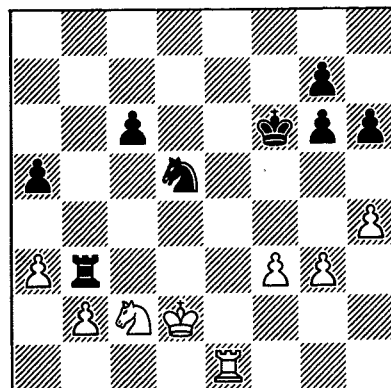
27 g3 d6 28 a3 b8 29 d4 b6 30 e4 e5

The two sides have grouped a great amount of force on the central squares.

Black, whose position is inferior on account of his pawn weaknesses, would like to make the play more concrete, since it is harder for him to make non-committal moves. Therefore Portisch is the first to provoke a crisis.

31 e2 d3+ 32 exb3 bxb3 33 e1+ f6 (238)

238



34 e6+!

With this tactical blow Ljubojević consolidates his advantage.

34 ... f7?

Portisch solves incorrectly the exchanging problem. In the knight ending after 34 ... e6 35 d4+ d6 36 dxb3 a4 Black would have retained good drawing chances, thanks to his centralised pieces. Now, however, White creates a passed pawn on the queenside, which brings him victory.

35 ex6 bxb2

The capture of the f3 pawn would have been answered by 36 e5, when White's queenside pawns advance much more quickly than Black's passed pawns.

36 e5 e7

Annotating the game in *Informator*,

Ljubojević gives the following interesting variation against 36 ... d6: 37 e7+ f6 38 e1 b3 39 b7 a4 40 d4 c3+ 41 d2 d5 42 b5, and White wins.

37 exa5 f5 38 e3 b7 39 e5

White does not pay any attention to the kingside. The game will be decided by the advance of his a-pawn.

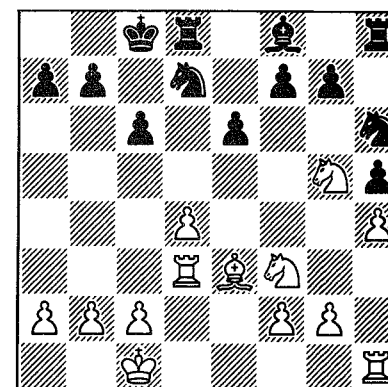
39 ... dxc3 40 a4 e6 41 d4+ d6 42 c4 b1 43 d5+ e6 44 a5 c1+ 45 b4 b1+ 46 a4 f5 47 a6 a1+ 48 a3 d1 49 a7 d8 50 b5 Black resigns

And now a game in which Black radically prevented h4-h5. This first attempt was a failure, but the idea should not necessarily be shelved.

Karpov-Larsen
Bugojno 1978

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 d2 dxe4 4 dxe4 e5 5 g3 g6 6 f3 d7 7 h4 h5 8 d3 e3 9 dxd3 e6 10 e4 a5+ 11 d2 f5 12 0-0 0-0 13 e3 h6 14 e5 dxd3 15 dxd3 (239)

239



Larsen's seventh move 7 ... h5 is a

surprise. It weakens the g5 square, for which the white knights were aiming, but on the other hand the advance of the white pawn to h5, gaining space, is now impossible. After the exchange of queens the game has gone into a complicated ending with a minimal positional advantage for Karpov.

15 ... e7 16 e1 hf8 17 h3 g4 18 g5 fe8 19 xe7 xe7 20 fg5 df6 21 d2 ed7 22 ee2 g6 23 c3 b6 24 f3

The two players are engaged in unhurried manoeuvring, with the aim of provoking weaknesses in the opponent's position. Such play is easier for White, since after the exchange of the dark-square bishops the g5 and e5 squares are readily accessible to his knights. White can easily take away the g4 and e4 squares from the enemy cavalry, by advancing his f-pawn to f3.

24 ... c5!?

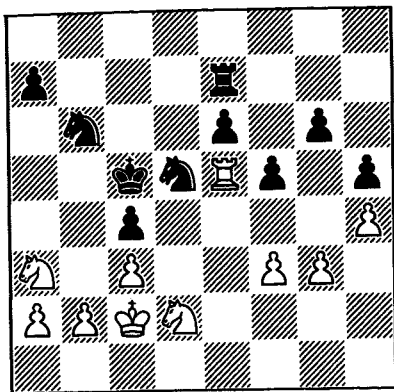
That the Danish grandmaster should aim to make the play more concrete is understandable. Karpov is a virtuoso in playing undetermined positions where he has a slight but persistent initiative.

25 dxc5 bxc5 26 hg5 c7 27 d7+ d7 28 d2 d5 29 g3 e7 30 ge4 c6 31 d3 c4 32 d4+ b6 33 c2 f5 34 d2 c5 35 a3 b6 36 f3 f6 37 e5+ fd5

The white knights have 'latched on' to the c4 pawn, which Black is doing everything possible to defend. Already Karpov could have played 38 dxc4 here, but Black would have been able to hold the position after 38 ... dxc4 39 b4+ c6 40 dxc4 dxc3 41 e5+ d6, when nothing definite is apparent.

38 e2 (240)

240



38 ... ♖d7?

Larsen overlooks the opponent's latent threat. 38 ... a5 was essential, with a defensible position.

39 ♖e1 ♜5b6
40 ♜dxc4!

The loaded gun is fired! With the loss of his c-pawn Black's position collapses. Karpov confidently and energetically realises his advantage.

40 ... e5 41 ♖d1 ♜xc4 42 b4+ ♜c6 43 ♜xc4 ♖g7 44 ♖d6+ ♜c7 45 ♖a6 g5 46 hxg5 ♖xg5 47 ♖xa7+ ♜d8 48 f4 exf4 49 gxf4 ♖g2+ 50 ♜b3 ♖f2 51 ♜e3! ♜f6

The f4 pawn cannot be taken on account of 52 ♖a8+ and 53 ♜d5+.

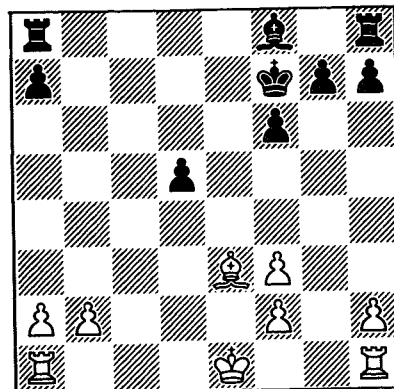
52 ♜xf5 ♖xf4 53 ♜d4 ♖f1 54 ♖a8+ ♜e7 55 a4 ♜f7 56 a5 ♜g7 57 a6 ♜d5 58 ♖d8 Black resigns

Dolmatov-Lechtinsky
Hradec Kralove 1981

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 c4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 ♜c6 6 ♜f3 ♜g4 7 cxd5 ♜xd5 8 ♖b3 ♜xf3 9 gxf3 e6 10 ♖xb7 ♜xd4 11 ♜b5+ ♜xb5 12 ♖c6+ ♜e7 13 ♖xb5 ♖d7 14

♜xd5+ ♖xd5 15 ♜g5+ f6 16 ♖xd5 exd5
17 ♜e3 ♜f7 (241)

241



13 ... ♖d7 is considered stronger than 13 ... ♜xc3 14 bxc3 ♖d7 15 ♖b1!, when the game Fischer-Euwe, Leipzig Olympiad 1960, showed that the opening of the b-file and White's lead in development are more important factors than the complete breaking up of his pawns.

With 15 ♜g5+ Dolmatov tries to improve on a well-known theoretical variation. Here White had usually exchanged queens immediately, e.g. 15 ♖xd5 exd5 16 0-0 ♜e6 17 ♖e1+ ♜f5 18 ♜e3 ♜e7 19 ♖a1 ♜f6 20 ♖c5 ♖hd8 21 b4 ♜g6! 22 b5 d4 23 ♜d2 d3 24 a4 ♖ac8 25 ♖ec1 ♖xc5 26 ♖xc5 ♖d4 27 a5 ♖a4, and a draw was agreed in Smejkal-Filip, Czechoslovakia 1968. But now the f6 square is occupied by Black's pawn, which creates some difficulties for him in manoeuvring on the kingside.

18 0-0-0 ♖d8
19 ♖d3

The exchange of the a7 and a2 pawns by 19 ♜xa7 ♖a8 20 ♜e3 ♖xa2 did not promise White any particular advantage.

19 ... ♖d7 20 ♖hd1 ♜e6 21 a3!

A useful prophylactic move. White's

position is slightly preferable.

21 ... ♜e7
22 ♖c3 ♖hd8?!

Black condemns his rooks to complete passivity. He would have had more chances for counterplay after 22 ... ♖b8.

23 ♖c6+ ♜d6
24 h3 ♜e5!

Lechtinsky breaks the pin by this bold advance of his king, his only active piece.

25 f4+

White could hardly have avoided this move. Black was intending to withdraw his bishop and threaten the advance of his central pawn.

25 ... ♜e4 26 ♖d4+ ♜f3 27 ♖xd5 ♜xf4?!

But this is wrong! It would have been much more active for Black to continue the raid with his king. After 27 ... ♜g2! he would have been threatening 28 ... ♜xf4 and 28 ... ♜xh3. Now Dolmatov takes play into a double rook ending where he is a pawn up.

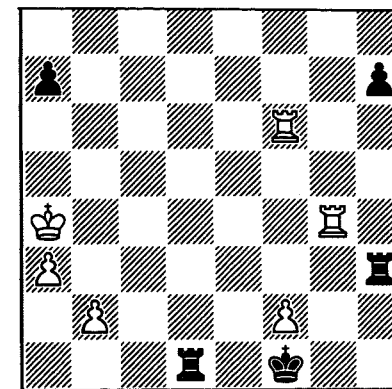
28 ♖f5 ♖d1+ 29 ♜c2 ♖8d2+ 30 ♜b3!

This move was possibly underestimated by Lechtinsky. Accepting the exchange sacrifice would have led to a sharp and unclear endgame.

30 ... ♖d3+ 31 ♜a4 g5 32 ♖cxf6 ♜g2 33 ♜xf4 gxf4 34 ♖xf4 ♖xh3 35 ♖g4+ ♜f1 (242)

Double rook endings occur much more rarely than normal rook endings. In this situation much depends on which side is favoured by the exchange of one pair of rooks. Two rooks can sometimes successfully combat an enemy passed pawn

242



supported by the king. In the diagram position White has every chance of creating a passed pawn on the queenside, and this means that the exchange of one pair of rooks is to his advantage.

36 ♖g7?!

An inaccuracy. In the light of what has been said, Dolmatov should have kept this rook in reserve for the defensive move ♖g3. 36 b4 looks very strong, when Black does not have 36 ... ♖1d3 in view of 37 ♖g3!.

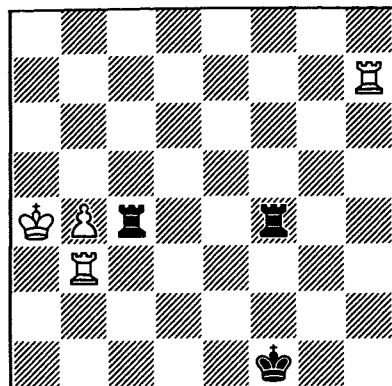
36 ... ♖d4+ 37 b4 a5! 38 ♖g3 ♖h5 39 f4 axb4 40 axb4 ♖c5?

With his last move before the time control the Czech player makes a decisive mistake. He should have simply played 40 ... ♜f2, not allowing the white rooks to attack the h7 pawn.

41 ♖d3!? ♖e4 42 ♖h6 ♖cc4 43 ♖b3 ♖xf4 44 ♖xh7 (243)

With the exchange of the kingside pawns, Black has lost any chance of counterplay. White now concentrates all his forces on the queenside and advances his pawn to the queening square, despite the desperate resistance of the black rooks.

243



44 ... ♖g2 45 ♜d7 ♜c2 46 ♜dd3 ♜a2+
47 ♜a3 ♜b2 48 ♜db3

White all the time invites the exchange of one pair of rooks, which, of course, is declined.

48 ... ♜e2 49 ♖a5 ♜f8 50 b5

White has everything prepared for the decisive advance of his pawn.

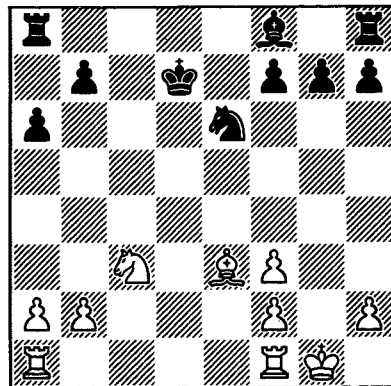
50 ... ♜a8+ 51 ♖b6 ♜g8 52 ♖a6 ♜a8+
53 ♖b7 ♜g8 54 b6 ♜e7+ 55 ♖a6 ♜a8+ 56
♖b5 ♜e5+ 57 ♖c6 ♜e6+ 58 ♖b7 Black
resigns

Yusupov-Timoshchenko
USSR Cup, Kislovodsk 1982

1 c4 c6 2 e4 d5 3 exd5 cxd5 4 d4 ♘f6 5
♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♘f3 ♘g4 7 cxd5 ♘xd5 8 ♖b3
♘xf3 9 gxf3 ♘b6 10 d5 ♘d4 11 ♘b5+
♘d7 12 ♖a4 e5 13 dxe6 ♘xe6 14 ♘e3 a6
15 ♘xd7+ ♖xd7 16 ♖xd7+ ♘xd7 17 0-0
(244)

Theory promises Black an equal game after 12 ... ♘xb5 13 ♖xb5 g6. The continuation chosen by Timoshchenko has led to a complicated ending, in which White has the initiative but Black has the better pawn formation.

244



17 ... ♘d6

A natural, developing move, but 17 ... ♜c8 was preferable, as suggested by Yusupov.

18 ♘d5!

Often there is only one move which will maintain an initiative. 18 ♜fd1 suggests itself, with the aim of molesting the opponent on the d-file, but by 18 ... ♜ac8 19 ♘e4 ♜c6 20 ♜c1 ♘d8! Black defends successfully.

18 ... ♜ad8 19 ♜ac1 ♘c7 20 ♘b6+ ♖e6
21 ♜fe1!

White keeps a careful eye on possible counterplay by the opponent. On 21 ♜fd1 Black would have had the unexpected reply 21 ... g5! (Yusupov).

21 ... ♖f5 22 ♜ed1 ♘e6 23 ♜d5+ ♖f6
24 ♜cd1 ♘c7 25 ♘d7+ ♖e7 26 b4!

The white pieces have conquered a great deal of space, but it is difficult to improve their positions. The pawns must come to their aid.

26 ... f6
27 a4!

With the intention of advancing a pawn to b6.

27 ... g5

Timoshchenko prepares a strong point for his pieces at f4.

28 ♘c1!

A move with several aims. White opens the e-file for his rooks, prepares to play his bishop to a3, and simultaneously sets a trap, into which Black falls.

28 ... ♘f4?

He should have played 28 ... ♜hg8.

29 ♘xf4 ♘xf4

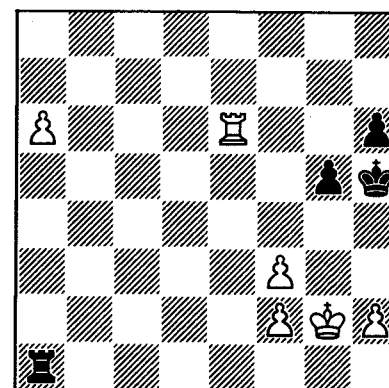
Tired by the strain of defending, Black overlooks a tactical blow and loses a pawn. 29 ... gxf4 was the lesser evil.

30 ♘xf6! ♜c8 31 ♘h5! ♘c7 32 ♜e1+
♖f7 33 ♜d7+ ♖g6 34 ♘g7! ♘d8

The only move. 34 ... ♜hf8 35 ♜e6+ ♜f6
36 ♜xf6+ ♖xf6 37 ♜xc7 would have lost immediately.

35 ♜xb7 ♘f6 36 ♜e6 ♜hf8 37 ♜xa6
♜b8 38 ♜xb8 ♜xb8 39 ♘h5 ♖xh5 40 ♜xf6
♜xb4 41 a5 ♜b1+ 42 ♖g2 ♜a1 43 a6 h6
(245)

245



The storm has died down, leaving on the board a prosaic rook ending where White is two pawns up. But the win in this ending is not achieved automatically. White's doubled f-pawns prevent his king from crossing to the queenside, and Yusupov has to free his king by subtle manoeuvres, with the repeated use of zugzwang. White's winning method is highly instructive.

44 h3 ♜b1 45 ♜d6 ♜a1 46 ♜e6!

The first zugzwang position.

46 ... ♜a3

Black is forced to let the white king out, since rook moves along the back rank are not possible in view of 47 f4! gxf4 48 ♜e5+ ♖g6 49 ♜a5!.

47 ♖f1! ♜a2

Capturing the f3 pawn would have lost to 48 ♜e3 and 49 ♜a3.

48 ♖e1 ♜c2 49 ♜b6 ♜a2 50 ♜d6!

Again zugzwang. 50 ... ♜b2 is met by 51 ♜d2 ♜b1+ 52 ♜d1 ♜b2 53 ♜a1, so Black is forced to allow the white king onto the second rank.

50 ... ♜a1+ 51 ♖d2 ♜a2+ 52 ♖e3
♜a3+ 53 ♖e4 ♜a2 54 ♖d5

Now White can disregard the kingside pawns. Everything is decided by the a-pawn.

54 ... ♜xf2 55 ♖c6 ♜xf3 56 a7 ♜f8 57
♖b7 ♜f7+ 58 ♖a6 ♜f8 59 ♜c6 ♜h8 60
♖b7 ♖h4 61 a8=♖ Black resigns

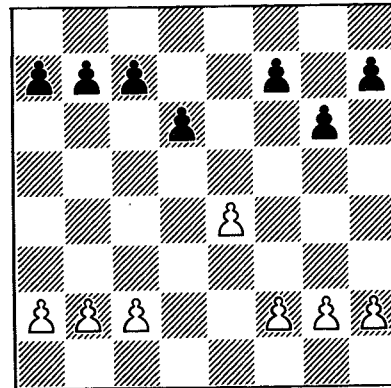
After 61 ... ♜xa8 White first captures the h6 pawn.

Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence

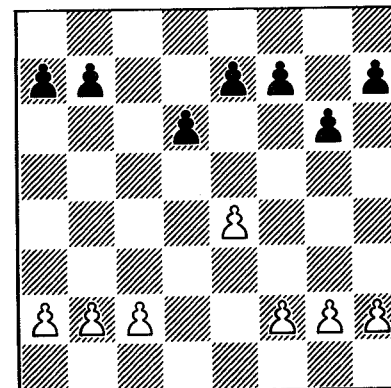
This opening, which back in the 1920s was considered 'irregular', is now one of the most popular. "A game with counter-chances is sufficient to balance the advantage of the first move" – these words by Botvinnik about his favourite French Defence are also fully applicable to the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence. In the 1930s it was played only occasionally, but today no one would be surprised to see it being used in a match for the World Championship. What are the reasons for such popularity? At first, Ufimtsev in the USSR and Pirc in Yugoslavia established the theoretical basis of the opening 1 e4 g6 (or 1 ... d6), showing that such play could not be refuted, and therefore that the opening could not be considered 'irregular'. The theory of the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence quickly expanded in variations, but even so the defence was used much more rarely than, say, the Sicilian or French. A decisive impetus to the development of the opening was given by Botvinnik. Although the Ex-World Champion regularly played the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence only in the last few years of his career, the ideas put forward by him sustained the theory and tournament practice of the opening for decades.

Botvinnik was most probably attracted by the enormous analytical possibilities in an opening which had not been fully researched, by the complexity of the problems arising in it, and, of course, by the exceptional flexibility of Black's opening set-up. Indeed, consider the following pawn formations.

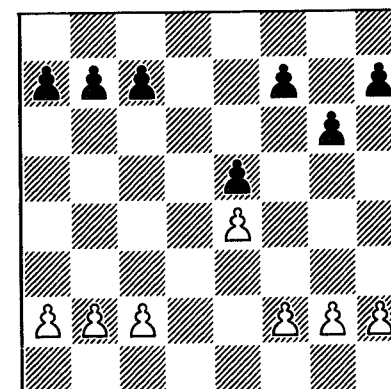
246



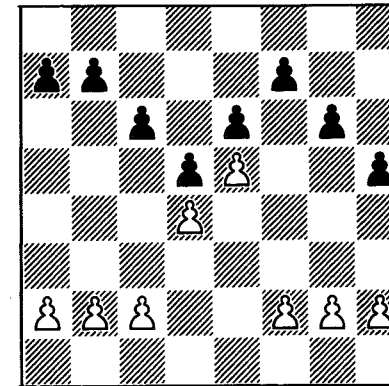
247



248



249



It is not difficult to see the relationship between these Pirc-Ufimtsev formations and the Sicilian (Diag. 247), the Caro-Kann (Diag. 249), and even with Open Games such as the Ruy Lopez and Philidor's Defence (Diags. 246 and 248). And naturally, Botvinnik's colossal strength and erudition enabled him to alternate freely in such a variety of set-ups.

We will consider the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence formations from the viewpoint of the practical endgame. Here too we regard Botvinnik's interpretation as classical. We give examples of him playing endings with formation 246 (Unzicker-Botvinnik), 247 (Kholmov-Botvinnik) and 248 (Matulović-Botvinnik), while for formation 249 the reader is referred to the game *Matanović-Botvinnik*, Belgrade 1969 (cf. *Selected Games 1967-70* p.162).

The two games *Bronstein-Benko* and *Velimirović-Tringov* are rather different, being characterised by an unusual interpretation of the Austrian Attack. White rejects attempts to mate the black king, and tries to exploit his spatial advantage by taking play into an endgame. An important part is also played by the activity of the white pieces. However, it would be incorrect to assume that in this way Black's opening set-up can be refuted.

Here too experts on the opening, who have made a deep study of endings of this type, find sufficient resources for active defence.

Bronstein-Benko

Monte Carlo 1969

1 e4 d6 2 d4 ♘f6 3 ♘c3 g6 4 f4

In reply to the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence, Bronstein chooses the usually sharp Austrian Attack.

4 ... ♗g7
5 e5

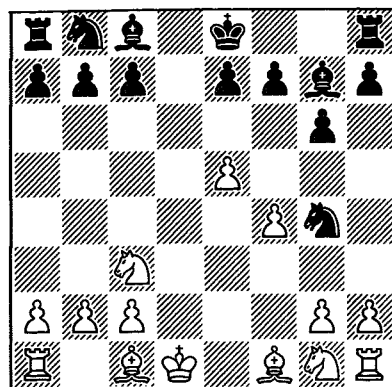
This advance, made a move later, is memorable for the brilliant game *Bronstein-Palmiotto* (Munich Olympiad 1958): 5 ♘f3 0-0 6 e5! ♘fd7 7 h4! c5 8 h5 cxd4 9 ♗xd4 dxe5 10 ♗f2! exf4? 11 hxg6 hxg6 12 ♗xf4 ♘f6 13 ♗h4, with an irresistible attack on the black king.

In the present game Bronstein played e4-e5 on the fifth move, probably to avoid 5 ♘f3 c5 6 ♗b5+ ♗d7 7 e5 ♘g4 8 e6 ♗xb5, with extremely intricate play. At that time this variation was being intensively tested in tournaments of the most varied standard. Now after 5 ... ♘fd7 6 ♘f3 0-0 7 h4 a position from the *Bronstein-Palmiotto* game is reached. This, however, did not appeal to Benko, although it was worth considering 5 ... ♘fd7 6 ♘f3 c5!?

5 ... dxe5?! 6 dxe5 ♗xd1+ 7 ♗xd1 ♘g4 (250)

The first thing that strikes one is White's spatial advantage, created by the sharp advance of his e-pawn. For his part Black has a slight lead in development, resulting from White's inability to coordinate his rooks by castling.

250



White's plan is fairly clear. He must complete his development and coordinate his pieces, after which his spatial advantage will give him the better game. Black's counterplay is more difficult to define. It basically consists in undermining White's centre by ... f6 and in the knight raid on the queenside ... Qc6-b4 (with the white king at e1). Black's play must be concrete, largely depending on the opponent's actions, and the value of each of his moves is higher than for White.

Instead of the natural 8 Qe1 White has another good alternative – 8 Qd5!?. The game Hort-Short, Amsterdam 1982, went 8 ... Qd8 9 Qe1 c6 10 Qc3 f6 11 h3 Qh6 12 Qf3 Qf7 13 Qc4 with advantage to White.

8 Qe1 c6

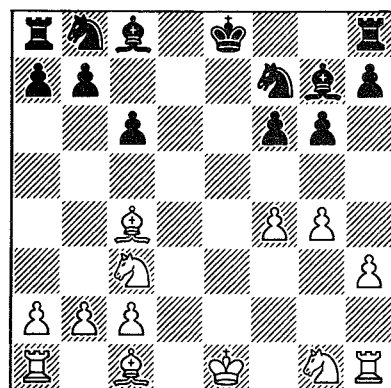
On 8 ... f6 there could have followed 9 h3 Qh6 10 Qd5 Qd8, transposing into the previous variation. 8 ... Qc6 9 h3 Qh6 10 Qd5 led to a clear advantage for White in Lukin-Tseitlin, Leningrad Championship 1972, and 8 ... h5, recommended by Benko after the game, would have met with the standard reaction: 9 Qd5 Qd8 10 Qf3 c6 11 Qe3 f6 12 h3 Qh6 13 Qd3 Qf5 14 Qxf5 gxf5 15 e6! ± (Polyak-Bondarevsky, Moscow 1945).

9 h3 Qh6 10 g4! f6 11 exf6 exf6 12 Qc4 Qf7? (251)

After the game Benko suggested the superior 12 ... f5 13 g5 Qf7, which was tested in the game Bronstein-Tseshkovsky, USSR Teams, Moscow 1981: 14 Qf3 Qd6 15 Qb3 Qd7!, and Black gradually solved all his problems.

Benko's 12 ... Qf7 appears logical, and to disclose its incorrectness it required Bronstein's next amazing move, which was indeed difficult to foresee.

251



13 Qh2!!

The white rook unexpectedly comes into play, preventing Black from coordinating his pieces.

13 ... Qd6 14 Qb3 Qd8 15 f5! Qe8+ 16 Qf1 g5?

Benko has clearly been unsettled by the Soviet grandmaster's energetic and original play, and his last move can be considered the decisive mistake. His dark-square bishop is for a long time shut out of the game, and White gains the opportunity to take command on the kingside by the undermining h3-h4. Of course, 16 ... gxf5?! 17 Qf4 was no use, but after 16 ... Qd7 17 Qf4 Qe5 a hard battle would still have been in prospect.

17 h4 h6 18 Qf3 Qd7 19 Qd2 Qc7 20 Qe1!

Bronstein exchanges the only active black piece.

20 ... b6 21 Qxe8 Qxe8 22 Qe1!

In modern chess the concept of 'good' and 'bad' bishops is much wider than it was, say, fifty years ago. White's dark-square bishop has prospects only on the h2-b8 diagonal. Black's g7 bishop, although restricted by its own pawn, is the chief defender of his kingside, and has the prospect of quite good play on the a3-f8 diagonal. Therefore the exchange of dark-square bishops is clearly to White's advantage.

22 ... Qa6+ 23 Qg1 Qf8 24 Qg3+ Qd6 25 Qxd6+ Qxd6 26 hxg5 hxg5 27 Qh7

The white rook has invaded, and Black no longer has an adequate defence.

27 ... Qe8?!

27 ... Qc4 was more tenacious.

28 Qe6 Qc8 29 Qd4 a6 30 a4 Qd8 31 Qd5!

An elegant tactical stroke, which wins material.

31 ... Qe8

32 Qe6+ was threatened.

32 Qxc6 Qc4 33 Qd5 Qe3 34 Qe6 Qxg4 35 Qe4 Qd8 36 c4 Qe5 37 Qxf6 Qd6 38 Qe4+ Qc7 39 Qd5!?

A repetition of the same idea.

39 ... Qe8 40 Qe6+ Qb8 41 Qd6 Qg8 42 b3 Qf6 43 Qc7 Qxd5 44 cxd5 Black resigns

Velimirović-Tringov
Havana 1971

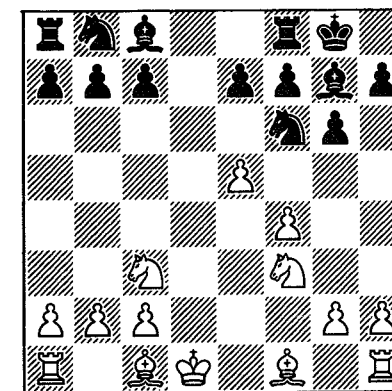
1 e4 d6 2 d4 Qf6 3 Qc3 g6 4 f4 Qg7 5 Qf3 0-0 6 e5 dxe5

It is curious that two major specialists in this opening, Pirc and Botvinnik, held different opinions about Black's last move: Pirc considered it to be the only correct one, whereas Botvinnik preferred 6 ... Qfd7, reckoning that "after 6 ... dxe5 7 dxe5! Qxd1+ 8 Qxd1 White stands slightly better".

As often happens, the truth lies somewhere in between: modern theory regards 6 ... dxe5 and 6 ... Qfd7 as roughly equivalent, but to reach such a conclusion twenty years of tournament experience were required!

7 dxe5 Qxd1+
8 Qxd1 (252)

252



8 ... Qg4

A natural and good move, although the paradoxical 8 ... Qh5!? also comes into consideration and leads to highly intricate situations, e.g. 9 Qe1 Qc6 10 Qb5 f6! (Makarychev-Gedevanishvili, USSR Olympiad, Moscow 1972), or 9 Qc4 Qc6 10 Qf1 (less good is 10 Qe3 Qg4 11 Qf1?! Qa5! 12 Qd3 f6 13 exf6 Qxf6 14 h3 Qe6 15 Qd2 Qg3, with advantage to Black, Panchenko-Adorjan, Sochi 1977) 10 ... Qh6! 11 Qe2 Qd8+ (Zhuravlev-Adorjan,

Sochi 1977).

8 ... ♖d8+ 9 ♗e1 ♘d5 is dubious. By 10 ♘xd5 ♖xd5 11 ♙c4 ♖d8 12 ♘g5 e6 13 ♙e3 b6 14 ♗f2 15 h4 White gained the advantage in Volchok-Kann, correspondence 1967/68.

And 8 ... ♘e8? is totally depressing (this move is more appropriate after the preparatory check 8 ... ♖d8+). After 9 ♘d5 ♘c6 10 ♙b5 ♙e6 11 ♙xc6 ♘xd5 12 ♙xd5 ♖d8 13 ♗e2 ♖xd5 14 c4 Black stood badly in A.Zaitsev-Platonov, 37th USSR Championship, Moscow 1969.

9 ♗e1 h5?

This move runs counter to the idea of the 8 ... ♘g4 variation – to lure the king to e1 and begin a counterattack with ... ♘c6-b4!. Of course, 9 ... ♘c6! should have been played, when attempts by White to demonstrate an advantage have so far proved unsuccessful:

10 ♙b5 f6! 11 h3 ♘h6 12 ♘d5?! fxe5 13 fxe5 ♘f7 14 ♘xc7 ♖b8 干, Estrin-Kotkov, Moscow 1972.

10 h3 ♘h6 (10 ... ♘b4!?) 11 g4 f6! (11 ... ♘b4 12 ♖h2!) 12 ♘d5 (Fridshtein gives 12 ♙c4+ ♘f7 13 exf6 exf6 14 ♗f2 ±) 12 ... fxe5 13 ♘xc7 ♖b8 14 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 15 fxe5 ♘f7, with an equal position (Kavalek-Darga, Beverwijk 1967). In avoiding the bind after h2-h3 and g2-g4, Black meets other difficulties.

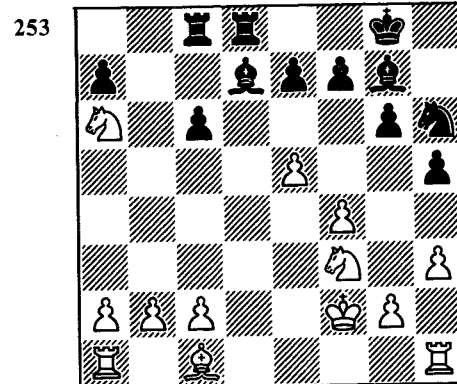
10 ♘d5 ♘c6
11 ♙b5!

It unexpectedly transpires that one of the pawns, c7 or e7, is doomed.

11 ... ♙d7 12 h3 ♘h6 13 ♗f2 ♖fd8

13 ... ♘xe5? did not work in view of 14 ♘xe5 ♙xb5 15 ♘xc7.

14 ♙xc6 bxc6 15 ♘xc7 ♖ac8 16 ♘a6 (253)



White has picked up a pawn at the most favourable moment and has achieved a technically won position.

16 ... ♙f5 17 c3 ♖d5 18 ♙e3 e6 19 c4 ♖a5 20 ♘c5

Black's pieces lack coordination, and his two flanks are unconnected. Now his rook at a5 is shut out of the game.

20 ... ♙f8 21 ♘b7 ♖a6 22 ♘d6 ♖b8 23 b3 f6 24 ♖hd1 fxe5 25 fxe5 ♙g7 26 c5!

With his knight at d6 now supported by pawns on both sides, White has driven a conclusive wedge into the opponent's position.

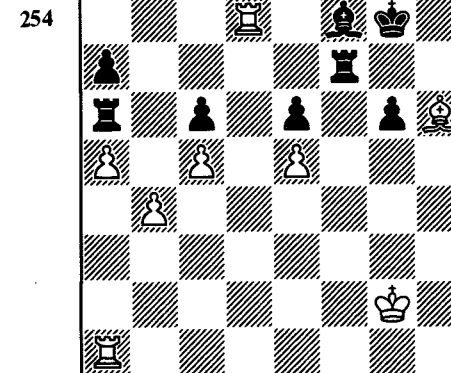
26 ... ♖f8 27 ♖d2 ♘f7 28 ♙f4 ♙g4

Black's 'trickery' can no longer change anything.

29 hxg4 hxg4 30 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 31 ♖d8+ ♙f8 32 ♙h6 gxf3 33 a4! fxe2+ 34 ♗xe2 ♖a5 35 b4 ♖a6 36 a5!

(diagram 254)

A picturesque situation. Black resigns.



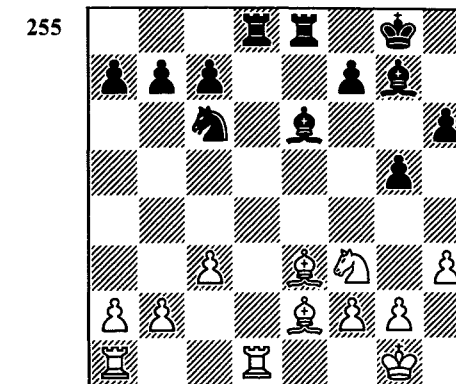
Unzicker-Botvinnik Varna Olympiad 1962

1 e4 g6 2 d4 ♙g7 3 ♘f3 d6 4 ♘c3

Botvinnik thought that it was more difficult for Black to equalise in the King's Indian Defence, and so he recommended 4 c4. But at this precise point it is not altogether convenient for White to go into the King's Indian, since by exploiting the absence of his knight from f6 Black can quickly put pressure on d4 and achieve a comfortable game: 4 c4 ♙g4! 5 ♙e2 ♘c6 6 d5 ♙xf3 7 ♙xf3 ♘d4 8 ♘c3 c5 9 dxc6 bxc6 10 0-0 ♖b8 (Janošević-Ivkov, Majdanpek 1976).

4 ... ♘f6 5 ♙e2 0-0 6 ♙f4 ♘c6 7 d5 e5 8 dxe6 ♙xe6 9 0-0 ♖e8 10 ♖e1 h6 11 h3 g5 12 ♙e3 d5 13 exd5 ♘xd5 14 ♘xd5 ♖xd5 15 c3 ♖xd1 16 ♖exd1 ♖ad8 (255)

In 1962 the theory of the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence, which at that time was beginning to be transformed from an irregular opening into a complex modern opening, had hardly been developed. It is therefore not surprising that Unzicker plays the opening inaccurately: today it is well known that the bishop should be developed at f4 only after the position of the



knight at b8 has been determined, e.g. after ... c6. Instead, on his 6th move White should have castled. 6 ... ♘c6 followed by 7 ... e5 is now a standard strategic procedure, whereas at the time it was a revelation. With the exchange 8 dxe6 Unzicker gave up any attempt to gain an advantage. Note Botvinnik's pawn manoeuvre 10 ... h6 and 11 ... g5!, determining the position of the white bishop. Had it retreated to h2, it would have been cut off from the queenside, and Black could have strengthened his position with 12 ... ♘h7 followed by ♘f8-g6. And after the retreat in the game Black was able to carry out the freeing advance ... d5.

The resulting ending is equal, in view of the absence of pawns from the centre and the great probability of piece exchanges.

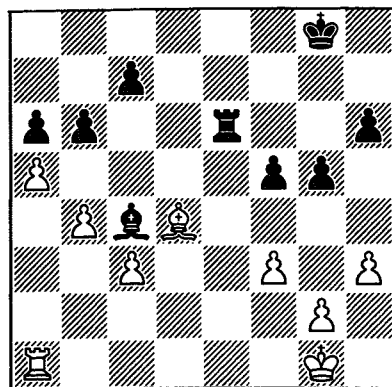
17 ♙b5

Unzicker prepares further simplification.

17 ... ♙d5 18 ♘d4 ♙xd4 19 ♙xd4 a6 20 ♙xc6 ♙xc6 21 ♖e1 f5 22 f3 ♙b5 23 b4 b6 24 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 25 a4 ♙c4 26 a5 ♖e6 (256)

A whirlwind of exchanges has swept the board, leaving an ending with opposite-colour bishops where Black has a minimal advantage. But that a game between two

256



grandmasters will end in a win for Black within fourteen moves is simply impossible to imagine. Obviously the drawing tendencies associated with opposite-colour bishops were so great as to create the illusion that the weaker side could act with impunity. As a result, the game added to the collection of endings in which, with opposite-colour bishops and material equal, a loss of vigilance by one side led to his defeat.

27 axb6?

An unfortunate decision. White forces the exchange of rooks, but allows the opponent to create a passed pawn. 27 ♕f2 should have been preferred.

27 ... cxb6
28 ♖f2 ♖f7

Unzicker's idea is that after 28... ♜e2+ 29 ♖g1 Black is forced to return with his rook, since otherwise he cannot defend his queenside pawns.

29 ♜e1 ♜xe1
30 ♖xe1 a5!

A resource which White had probably not foreseen.

31 bxa5

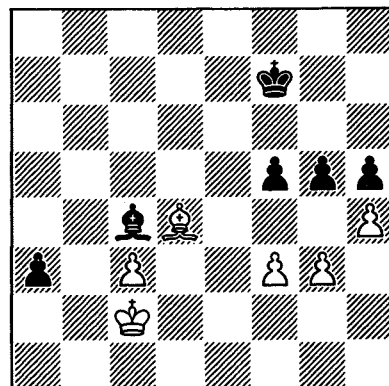
Capturing the b6 pawn would have led to Black creating passed pawns on opposite wings after 31 ♕xb6? a4 32 ♖d2 ♕f1.

31 ... bxa5 32 g3 a4 33 ♖d2?

An incorrect allocation of roles. White should have blockaded the a-pawn with his bishop and defended the kingside with his king.

33 ... a3 34 ♖c2 h5 35 h4 (257)

257



"The losing move. However, also after 35 f4 h4 36 gxh4 (36 ♕f2 g4) 36... gxf4 the two f-pawns assure Black of a win, but the manoeuvre ♕b6-d8 would probably still have saved the game" (Botvinnik).

35 ... f4!
36 ♕e5

In the event of 36 ♕f2 Black would have won the f3 pawn after 36... gxh4 37 gxh4 ♖e6 followed by 38... ♖f5 and 39... ♕d5.

36 ... ♖e6!

The black king advances with gain of tempo.

37 ♕c7 gxh4! 38 ♕xf4 h3 39 g4 h4!

It is thanks to this doubled pawn that Black is able to win.

40 ♕h2 ♕e2

White resigns, since the black king breaks through to g2, e.g. 41 ♖b3 ♕xf3 42 ♖xa3 ♕xg4 43 ♖b4 ♖d5 44 c4+ ♖e4 etc.

The Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence became firmly established in Botvinnik's opening repertoire during the last years of his practical appearances at the chess board. Apart from the two further examples given here, and the game against Matanović mentioned above, the reader's attention is also drawn to Trifunović-Botvinnik, Noordwijk 1965 (*Half a Century of Chess* p.259) and Cirić-Botvinnik, Beverwijk 1969 (*Selected Games 1967-70* p.140).

Kholmov-Botvinnik USSR Spartakiad, Moscow 1963

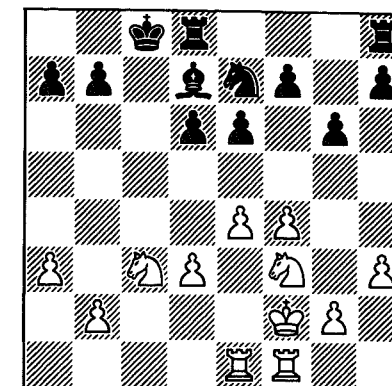
1 e4 d6 2 d4 ♘f6 3 ♘c3 g6 4 ♕g5 h6 5 ♕f4

White does not achieve anything by exchanging on f6: 5 ♕xf6 exf6 6 ♖d2 c6 7 0-0-0 ♕g7 8 ♖b1 0-0 9 h4 f5! 10 ♕d3 fxe4 11 ♘xe4 d5, with a fine position for Black (Vasyukov-Parma, USSR v. Yugoslavia, Sukhumi 1966).

5 ♕h4 is quite good, but the strongest is probably 5 ♕e3! followed by f2-f3, ♖d2 etc. A position from the 4 f3 variation is reached, but with the black pawn at h6, which is to White's advantage: 5... c6 6 ♖d2 b5 7 f3 ♕g7 8 ♕d3 ♘bd7 9 ♘ge2 ♘b6 10 b3 a5 11 a4 (Romanishin-Donner, Buenos Aires Olympiad 1978).

5... ♕g7 6 h3 c5 7 dxc5 ♖a5 8 ♖d2 ♖xc5 9 ♕e3 ♖a5 10 ♕d3 ♘c6 11 ♘ge2 ♘d7 12 0-0 ♘de5 13 f4 ♘xd3 14 cxd3 e6 15 ♜ae1 ♕d7 16 a3 ♘e7 17 ♕d4 ♕xd4+ 18 ♘xd4 ♖b6 19 ♖f2 0-0-0 20 ♘f3 ♖xf2+ 21 ♖xf2 (258)

258



In the opening Black had to overcome the difficulty of not being able to castle, in view of his h6 pawn being undefended. Kholmov could have provoked favourable complications by the pawn sacrifice 16 f5!, but he preferred to play quietly, and the game has gone into a roughly equal ending.

21 ... ♖b8
22 ♜c1 f6!

"Black's minimal chance lies in him having a good bishop. Now he wishes to take the initiative by ... g5. Even so, it would be hard to imagine that in such a position it is possible to play for a win, were it not for the classic examples from the games of Lasker, Capablanca and Rubinstein" (Botvinnik).

23 d4?!

This natural move, occupying the centre with a pawn, is a mistake. It weakens the e4 square, which later tells. True, White parries the threat of 23... g5, on which there would now follow 24 fxg5 hxg5 25 e5!.

23 ... ♜hf8

The threat of ... g5 is renewed.

24 h4

"One gains the impression that as yet my opponent was not at all concerned. Otherwise he would have avoided this new weakening" (Botvinnik).

24 ... d5!
25 exd5

Now Black gains complete control of the f5 square, but it is doubtful whether 25 e5 was any stronger.

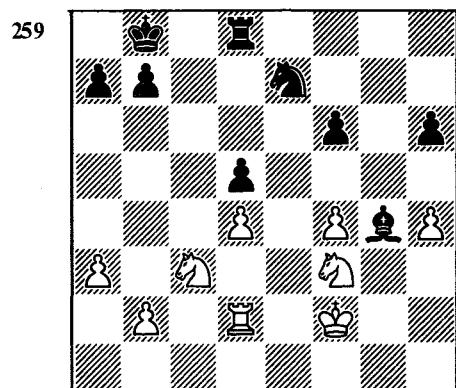
25 ... exd5 26 ♖f1 ♖f7 27 g3 ♙g4 28 ♜h2 ♙c8 29 ♜c2 ♜c6 30 ♜ce2 ♜ff8

On 30 ... ♜xd4, as shown by Botvinnik, White could have continued 31 ♜e8 ♜fd7 32 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 33 ♜d1, advantageously regaining the pawn.

31 ♜d2 g5!

A further thrust, breaking up White's kingside pawns.

32 ♜f3 gxf4 33 gxf4 ♜g8 34 ♜g1 ♜xg1 35 ♜xg1 ♙g4 36 ♜f3 ♜e7 (259)



From a virtually equal situation Black has completely outplayed his opponent. White's position is difficult, and Kholmov finds the only defence.

37 ♜e1! ♜f5
38 ♜g2 h5!

In this way Black avoids further piece

exchanges.

39 ♜e3 ♜xh4
40 ♜exd5 f5

Black has gained a dangerous passed pawn, although he also has to reckon with the activity of the white rook.

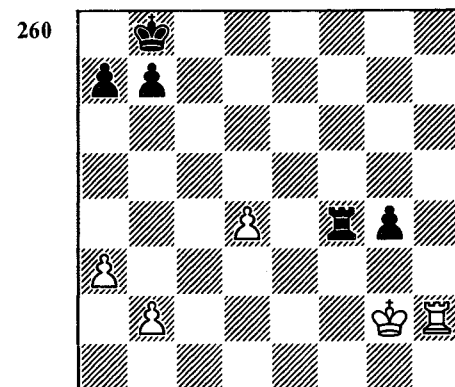
41 ♜d3 ♜g6 42 ♜e3 h4 43 ♜e6 h3!

By tactical means Black forcibly achieves a superior rook ending.

44 ♜xg6 ♜h8 45 ♜e2 ♙xe2 46 ♜g1 ♙g4 47 ♜e3 h2 48 ♜h1 ♜h3!

The threat of 49 ... ♜f3+ forces White to exchange minor pieces.

49 ♜xg4 fxc4 50 ♙g2 ♜f3 51 ♜xh2 ♜xf4 (260)



Despite its apparent simplicity and the small amount of material, the rook ending is difficult for White. All the play develops on the queenside, from which the white king is cut off.

52 d5 ♜d4 53 ♙g3 ♙c7 54 ♜h7+ ♙b6 55 ♜h6+ ♙c5 56 ♜h7 ♙b6 57 ♜h6+ ♙b5 58 ♜h7 ♙a6 59 ♜h6+ b6

The black king has at last escaped from the annoying pursuit of the white rook. Now, as shown by Botvinnik, White's only chance of a draw was to play 60 d6. The

continuation chosen by Kholmov loses quickly.

60 ♜h7? ♜xd5!
61 ♙xg4 ♜d2

Each player has just two pawns left, but White is lost.

62 b4 ♜b2!

The concluding finesse. 62 ... ♜a2? would have led to a draw after 63 b5+!

63 ♜h3 ♜a2 64 ♙f4 ♙b5 65 ♙e4 ♙a4 66 ♜h7 ♜xa3 67 ♜xa7+ ♙xb4 68 ♜h7 b5 69 ♙d4 ♜a8 White resigns

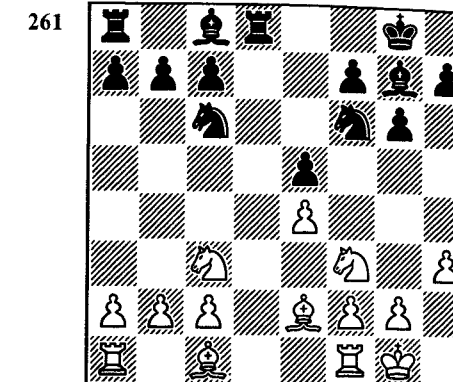
Matulović-Botvinnik
Belgrade 1969

1 e4 g6 2 d4 ♙g7 3 ♜f3 d6 4 ♜c3 ♜f6 5 ♙e2 0-0 6 0-0 ♜c6 7 h3

In this game Matulović is virtually unrecognisable. Normally he used to choose the most critical continuations recommended by theory; by moves such as 7 h3 an advantage cannot be gained. But perhaps the Yugoslav grandmaster was not aiming for this, but was simply waiting for ... e5 so as to capture dxe5 and offer a draw?! Of course, he should have driven away the knight by d4-d5. It is true that the bishop at g7 would then have come into play, but two tempi is a high price to pay, and White's chances would have been better: 7 d5! ♜b8 8 ♜e1 c6 9 ♙f1 ♜bd7 10 ♙g5 h6 11 ♙f4 g5 12 ♙c1 ♙b6 13 h3 ♜c5 14 ♜d2 ♙c7 15 ♜b3, with some advantage to White, Karpov-Pfleger, London 1977.

Or 7 ... ♜b4 8 ♜e1 e6 9 a3 ♜a6 10 dxe6 ♙xe6 11 ♜d4 ♙d7 12 ♙g5±, Groszpeter-Nogueiras, Cienfuegos 1980.

7 ... e5 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 ♙xd8 ♜xd8 (261)



As has several times been mentioned, primitively playing for a draw merely leads to difficulties for White. Instead of the exchange on d8, 9 ♙g5 ♙e6 10 ♙c1 was much more interesting, with chances of an opening advantage (Botvinnik).

10 ♙g5 ♙e6 11 ♜fd1 h6 12 ♙e3 ♜e8!

"The position is almost symmetric, but this 'almost' consists of the fact that White cannot occupy the central square d5 with his knight, whereas ... ♜d4 is now inevitable. All this is due to the superior position of the king's bishop at g7" (Botvinnik).

13 ♜e1 ♜d4 14 ♙f1 ♜d7 15 ♜e2 ♜ad8 16 ♙xd4 exd4 17 ♜f4 ♜e7 18 ♜xe6 ♜xe6 19 f3

Had White played 19 ♙d3, then by 19 ... ♜d6 Black would all the same have provoked f2-f3, but then the knight at e1 would have been out of play.

A similar situation was seen in the Cirić-Botvinnik game mentioned earlier. White is in some difficulties.

19 ... ♜d6

As pointed out by Botvinnik, Black could have considered first playing his rook to b6.

20 ♖d3 ♜e7
21 ♜e1 h5

In his notes to the game, Botvinnik writes that he rejected 21 ... ♖c4 in view of the possible variation 22 ♖b4 ♖e3 23 ♖d5 ♖xd5 24 exd5 ♜xe1 25 ♜xe1 ♜xd5 26 ♜e8+ ♜f8, with good drawing chances for White.

22 g4?

This leads to a further weakening of the dark squares. The more restrained 22 g3 was preferable.

22 ... hxc4
23 hxc4 g5!

Now White's kingside pawns are fixed.

24 b3

24 ... ♖c4 was threatened.

24 ... ♖b5

Black's knight immediately aims for the 'hole' which has been created on the queenside.

25 ♜e2 ♜e5!

Botvinnik suppresses the slightest counterplay by the opponent. He does not object to the doubling of White's rooks on the h-file, but only after the exchange of the white knight for his bishop.

26 a4 ♖c3 27 ♜d2 ♜d6 28 ♜g2 c6 29 a5 a6

The a5 pawn will certainly be lost in any minor piece ending.

30 ♖f2 ♖g7 31 ♜h1 f6 32 ♜h5 ♜h8 33 ♜xh8

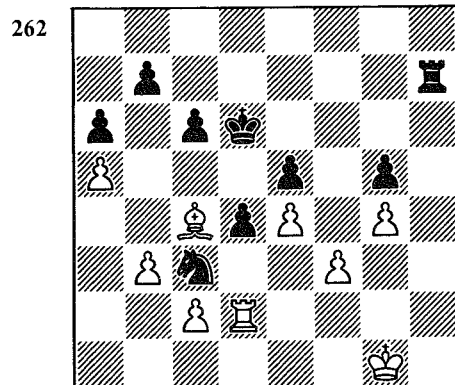
Sooner or later this exchange was bound to occur.

33 ... ♖xh8 34 ♖f1 ♖g7 35 ♖b2 ♜e5 36

♖c4 ♖f8 37 ♖g1 ♜h7 38 ♜f1 ♖e7 39 ♖xe5

This makes things easier for Black, but White was already having great difficulty in finding moves.

39 ... fxe5
40 ♜c4 ♖d6 (262)



"Here White had to seal his move. In the event of 41 ♜f2 (so as to take the rook to the defence of the a5 pawn by ♜f1-a1) Black wins by going first into a rook ending - 41 ... ♖d1 42 ♜d2 ♖e3 43 c3 ♖xc4 44 bxc4 ♖c5 45 cxd4+ exd4 46 ♖f2 ♖xc4 47 ♜c2+ ♖b4 48 ♖e2, and then into a pawn ending - 48 ... ♜h2+ 49 ♖d3 ♜xc2 50 ♖xc2 c5!" (Botvinnik)

41 ♖g2 ♜h6

Before taking his king to the queenside, Black hinders White's counterplay involving playing his bishop to f5 and then f3-f4.

42 ♜f7 ♖c5 43 ♜e8 ♖b4 44 ♜d7 ♖b1!

The c2 pawn is more important than the one at a5.

45 ♜d3

If the rook had withdrawn along the second rank, there would have followed 45 ... ♖c3 and 46 ... ♖d2.

45 ... ♖a3 46 f4 ♖xc2 47 ♖g1 gxf4 48 ♜f5 ♖e3 49 g5 ♜h5 50 g6 ♖xf5 51 exf5 ♜xf5 White resigns

The reader should not gain the false impression that endings arising from the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence are favourable only for Black. The majority of them are roughly equal, but they are complicated and rich in possibilities for both sides, and in them both sides can normally play for a win. Black's great advantage in the above endings was achieved by Botvinnik's powerful and purposeful play, and his superiority over his opponents. We will now give a few endings where it is White who is successful.

Andersson-Hazai
Pula 1975

1 ♖f3 g6 2 e4 ♜g7 3 d4 d6 4 ♜e2 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 0-0 6 0-0 ♜g4 7 ♜e3 ♖c6 8 ♜d2 e5 9 dxe5

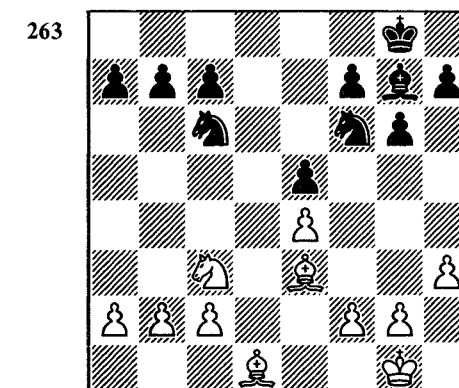
True to his style, Andersson chooses the path of simplification, which only apparently is not dangerous for the opponent. White all the time retains the initiative thanks to his more harmonious development, and Black has no counterplay. Often the bishop at g4 cannot find a convenient post and is exchanged for the knight at f3, which gives White additional pluses.

9 ... dxe5 10 ♜ad1 ♜c8 11 ♜c1 ♜d8 12 ♜xd8+ ♜xd8 13 ♜d1 ♜f8 14 h3 ♜xf3 15 ♜xf3 ♜d8

White also retains the advantage after 15 ... a6 16 ♖b1! ♜d8 17 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 18

c3 (Petrosian-Sax, Tallinn 1979). In his notes to the game, the Ex-World Champion suggested 15 ... h5!? with the idea of carrying out the favourable exchange of bishops by ... ♖h7 and ... ♜h6.

16 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 17 ♜d1 ♜xd1+ 18 ♜xd1 (263)



In this game the queens were already en prise to each other on the tenth move, but then moved apart. When they once more came together, it would have been more prudent for Hazai again to avoid the exchange; after 17 ... ♜e7!? it would have been easier for Black to defend. 17 ... ♖d4? was bad on account of 18 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 (18 ... exd4 19 e5) 19 ♜xd4 exd4 20 ♖b5, when White wins a pawn.*

The resulting ending is favourable for White. The advantage of the two bishops is an important factor here, the light-square bishop, having no opponent, being particularly strong.

18 ... ♖d4
19 f3 ♖e8?

A serious mistake. 19 ... a6 was preferable, maintaining control of d5 with the

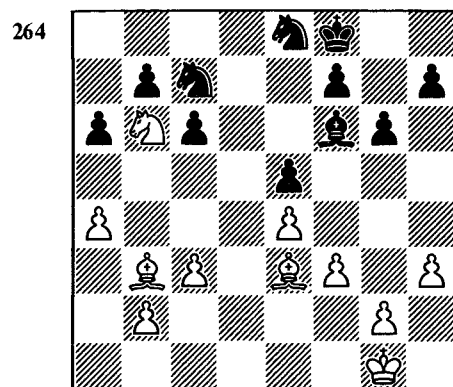
* 17 ... ♖d4 18 ♜xd4 exd4 19 e5 ♖e8 looks perfectly satisfactory for Black, and therefore 16 ♖b5 seems a better chance, as played by Andersson himself in a later game against Chi, Buenos Aires Olympiad 1978. (Translator's note)

knight, and answering 20 ♖a4 with 20 ... ♘d7.

20 ♘d5! c6

On 20 ... ♘f8 there would have followed 21 c3 ♘c6 22 ♖a4!, with a decisive advantage for White.

21 ♖e7+ ♘f8 22 ♘c8 a6 23 c3 ♘b5 24 a4 ♘c7 25 ♖b3 ♖f6 26 ♘b6 (264)



Black's queenside has been completely fixed, and he already has great difficulty in finding moves. For example, 26 ... ♖e7 would have lost immediately to 27 ♖c5+ and 28 ♖xf7.

26 ... ♖e6
27 ♖xe6!

The exchange of the light-square bishop costs Black dearly. His pieces turn out to be stalemated.

27 ... fxe6 28 ♖c5+ ♖f7 29 ♘d7 ♖g7 30 ♖f2

There is no point in White hurrying to play his knight to c5. All the same Black is helpless, and so it is useful to bring the king closer to the centre.

30 ... ♖h4+ 31 g3 ♖f6 32 ♖e2 ♖d8 33 ♖f2 ♖f6 34 ♘c5 ♘d6 35 ♘xe6+ ♖f7 36 ♘c5 ♖d8 37 b3 ♖a5 38 b4 ♖c7 39 a5 ♖b8

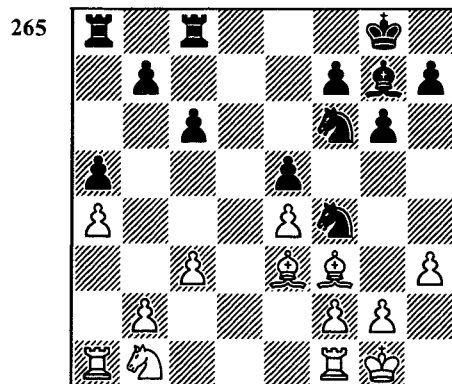
40 ♖e3

Black's position is hopeless. White is a pawn up with a great positional advantage. Black cannot prevent f3-f4, breaking up his shaky defences, and so Hazai decided not to resume the game but to admit defeat.

Shereshevsky-Loginov
Armed Forces Team Championship
Minsk 1984

1 d4 ♖f6 2 ♖f3 d6 3 ♘c3 g6 4 e4 ♖g7 5 h3 0-0 6 ♖e3 c6 7 a4 a5 8 ♖e2 ♖a6 9 0-0 ♘b4 10 ♘d2 ♖e8 11 ♘cb1 e5 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 c3 ♘d3 14 ♘c4 ♖f4 15 ♖f3 ♖e7 16 ♖d6 ♖xd6 17 ♘xd6 ♖d8 18 ♘xc8 ♖dx8 (265)

In the opening White avoided determining the position of his light-square bishop, in the hope of immediately developing it at c4 after the probable exchange of pawns on e5. Black forced White to make up his mind, by playing 7 ... a5, otherwise White himself would have continued the advance of his a-pawn. The manoeuvre of the black knight to b4 turned out badly. White advantageously drove it to f4, and himself invaded with his queen at d6, forcing a favourable



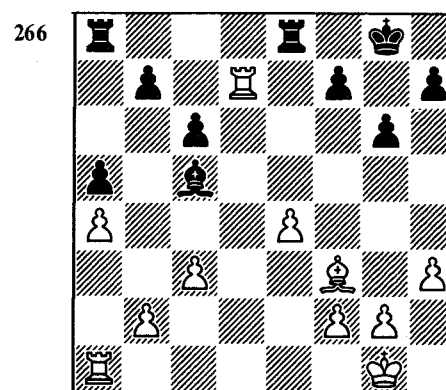
ending. It should be mentioned that, instead of the routine 12 ... dxe5, Black's preceding play would to some extent have been justified by 12 ... ♖xe5!?

The resulting ending is difficult for Black. Apart from the advantage of the two bishops, White has available the simple plan of invading the opponent's weakened dark squares on the queenside, whereas Black's main forces are stuck on the other side of the board.

19 ♖a3 ♖e6 20 ♘c4 ♖e8 21 ♖fd1 ♖f8 22 ♘xe5

It is a pity, of course, to part with such a strong position, but to win a pawn in the endgame, even with opposite-colour bishops, is also not at all bad. For his part Black exploited his best chance, since material loss was in any case inevitable, and now the opposite-colour bishops give him hopes of a draw.

22 ... ♘c5 23 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 24 ♘d7 ♘xd7 25 ♖xd7 (266)



In such endings it is not easy for the stronger side to win, but it is even more difficult for the weaker side to draw.

25 ... ♖e7
26 ♖ad1

Sooner or later the exchange of one

pair of rooks was bound to occur.

26 ... ♖ae8 27 ♖f1 ♖f8 28 ♖7d2

Black was intending to exchange on d7 and play 29 ... ♖e7, followed by moving his king to the e-file and his rook to the d-file.

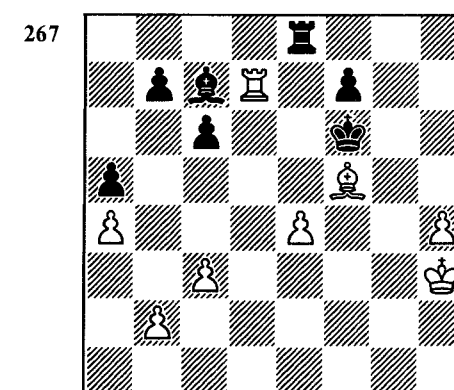
28 ... h5
29 g3?!

An inaccuracy. White should have played 29 h4, and then strengthened his position with g2-g3, ♖g2, ♖e2 and f2-f4, when it would have been hard for Black to gain any counterplay.

29 ... g5! 30 ♖g2 g4 31 h4 ♖e5 32 ♖d7 ♖8e7 33 f4

There is no other way for White to strengthen his position on the kingside.

33 ... gxf3 34 ♖xf3 ♖b6 35 ♖g2 ♖c7 36 ♖h3 ♖5e6 37 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 38 ♖d3 ♖e5 39 g4 hxg4+ 40 ♖xg4 ♖f6 41 ♖f5 ♖e8 42 ♖d7 (267)



The position has simplified. White has acquired a passed pawn on the h-file and his bishop has occupied a strong position at f5. The black bishop is also on a good diagonal with a possible strong point at e5. Now the only way for Black to defend his b7 pawn is by 42 ... ♖e7, when he has

to assess the bishop ending. Let us analyse the continuation 43 ♖xe7 ♜xe7 44 ♜g4. Black must assign one of his pieces to combatting the h-pawn, and keep the other in reserve should he need to set up a defence on the queenside. It is not hard to decide that it is the bishop which should be sent to deal with the opponent's passed pawn. After 44 ... ♙e5 45 h5 ♙g7 46 ♜g5 ♙f6+ Black easily achieves a draw. Therefore White would have avoided the exchange of rooks and continued 43 ♖d2, trying to exploit his extra pawn with the rooks on. Instead of this, in the game there unexpectedly followed:

42 ... ♙e5?

Obviously Loginov had incorrectly assessed the consequences of the rook exchange.

43 ♖xb7 ♖g8
44 ♙g4 ♙f4

By the pawn sacrifice Black has gained some activity, and accurate play will be demanded of White. The presence of opposite-colour bishops is now especially in Black's favour, since it improves the attacking prospects of his small army.

45 ♖b6 ♙e5 46 ♖xc6 ♙xe4 47 ♖c4+ ♙e3 48 ♖c5?!

48 ♖c8! ♖g6 49 ♖e8+ would have won more quickly.

48 ... ♖d8
49 ♖b5! ♙e4

On 49 ... ♖d2 there would have followed 50 ♙c8 ♙f3 51 ♙b7+ and 52 ♙g4.

50 ♙f5+ ♙f3 51 ♙g4+ ♙e4 52 h5 ♙e5 53 ♙f3+!

After this the activity of the black pieces begins to wane.

53 ... ♙f4 54 ♙d5 f5 55 ♙g2

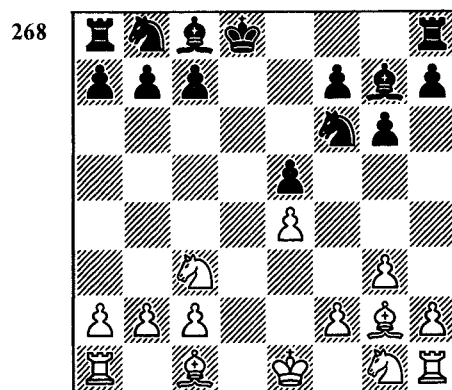
White's king has slipped out of the danger zone, and the simple realisation of his two extra pawns can now begin.

55 ... ♖h8 56 ♙f3 ♖g8+ 57 ♙f2 ♙f6 58 ♙c6 ♖h8 59 ♖xa5 ♖xh5 60 ♙g2 ♖h2 61 ♖d5 ♖h8 62 ♖d6 ♙h4+ 63 ♙e2 ♖e8+ 64 ♙d2 ♙g3 65 ♙c6 ♖b8 66 ♖d3+ Black resigns

Geller-Lerner

47th USSR Championship, Minsk 1979

1 e4 d6 2 d4 ♙f6 3 ♙c3 g6 4 g3 ♙g7 5 ♙g2 e5 6 dxe5 dxe5 7 ♖xd8+ ♙xd8 (268)



In a topical variation of the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence Black employed the new continuation 5 ... e5. Usually this is played on the 6th move, after first castling. Geller's reaction 6 dxe5! was the correct one; in the event of 6 ♙ge2 ♙c6 7 h3 exd4 8 ♙xd4 Black has the equalising stroke 8 ... ♙xe4!. A complicated ending has been reached where White has the initiative.

8 ♙f3 ♙bd7
9 b3!

A subtle move. From b2, and in some cases from a3, the bishop will be in a good position to support White's future pawn offensive on the kingside.

9 ... ♙e8 10 ♙b2 f6 11 0-0-0 c6?

A routine move, which weakens Black's central defences. Since, in order to coordinate his rooks, Black will all the same have to move his knight to d6, it would have been better to do this immediately.

12 ♙e1!

Preparing a kingside pawn offensive, which is difficult for Black to parry, since his pieces are uncoordinated.

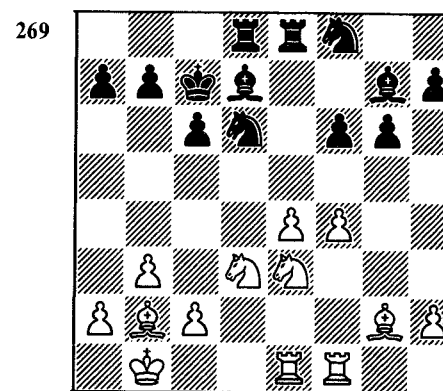
12 ... ♙c7 13 ♙d3 ♙d6 14 f4 ♙f7 15 ♖hf1 exf4

In his notes to the game, Geller remarked that if Black had played 15 ... ♖e8 instead of conceding the centre, he would have continued 16 f5 g5 17 ♙f3.

16 gxf4 ♖e8 17 ♖de1 ♙f8 18 ♙d1!

All White's pieces are concentrated in the centre to support his pawn breakthrough. Note the manoeuvres of the white knights. First the knight at f3 was transferred via e1 to d3, and now the knight from c3 goes via d1 to e3.

18 ... ♙d7 19 ♙b1 ♖ad8 20 ♙e3 ♙d6? (269)



This last move is the decisive mistake. Black's position is unpleasant and cramped.

ed. And from a cramped position, as Nimzowitsch taught long ago, a player should free himself gradually. In this situation Lerner's sharp move, attacking the e4 pawn, is inappropriate. The careful 20 ... ♙c8 was preferable.

21 e5!

White's painstakingly prepared breakthrough forces a swift decision.

21 ... fxe5 22 fxe5 ♙f5 23 ♙c4 ♙e6 24 ♙h3!

Aiming at the d6 square.

24 ... ♖g8

24 ... ♙ed4 would have lost immediately to the exchange on d4 followed by 26 ♖f7!.

25 ♙d6 ♙ed4

White wins after 25 ... ♙xd6 26 exd6+ ♙xd6 27 ♙a3+.

26 ♙xd4 ♙xd4 27 ♖f7 ♙f8 28 ♙c5

The game is essentially over. The finish was:

28 ... ♖g7 29 ♙xd7 ♖xf7 30 ♙xf7 ♖xd7 31 ♙xd7 ♙xd7 32 ♖d1 ♙e6 33 ♖xd4 Black resigns

Geller-Kuzmin Lvov 1978

1 e4 d6 2 d4 ♙f6 3 ♙c3 g6 4 ♙f3 ♙g7 5 ♙e2 0-0 6 0-0 ♙g4 7 ♙e3 ♙c6 8 ♖d2

Grandmaster Geller normally prefers the solid plan of concentrating his forces in the centre: ♖d2, ♖ad1, ♖fe1, and only then begins playing actively. A striking example of White's strategy is the game Geller-Pribyl (Sochi 1984): 8 ♖d2 ♖e8 9 ♖fe1 a6 10 ♖ad1 e5 11 dxe5 dxe5 12 ♖c1 ♖e7 13 ♙d5 ♙xd5 14 exd5 ♙d8 15 c4 f5

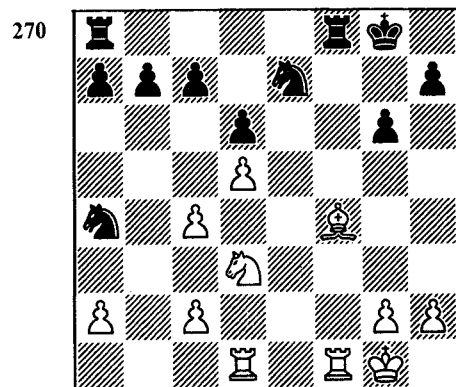
16 c5!, with a powerful initiative.

8 ... e5 9 d5 ♖e7 10 ♖ad1 ♘d7

Black carries out the direct plan of undermining White's pawn wedge by ... f5. It cannot be said that this is particularly dangerous for White, but he has to react energetically. It soon transpires that 11 ♖e1, as played by Geller, is in this sense not the best. 11 ♘g5! is stronger, as played by Spassky against Parma in the 1966 Havana Olympiad. After 11 ... ♗xe2 12 ♘xe2, in order to play ... f5 Black was forced to weaken his king's position by 12 ... h6, and after 13 ♘h3 ♗h7 14 c4! White had the better chances.

Of the many continuations available to Black (10 ... ♘c8, 10 ... ♗h8, 10 ... ♗d7) we should mention the audacious 10 ... b5!? with which Azmaiparashvili was successful against Karpov (50th USSR Championship, Moscow 1983): 11 a3 a5 12 b4 (12 ♗xb5 ♗xf3 13 gxf3 ♘h5 14 ♗h1 f5 15 ♖e1 was better, Liberzon-Quinteros, Netanya 1983, but White evidently did not want to go onto the defensive) 12 ... axb4 13 axb4 ♖a3 14 ♗g5 ♖xc3! 15 ♗xf6 ♗xf3 16 ♗xf3 ♖a3, with a roughly equal game.

11 ♖e1 ♗xe2 12 ♖xe2 f5 13 f4 exf4 14 ♗xf4 ♗xc3 15 bxc3 fxe4 16 ♖xe4 ♘c5 17 ♖c4 ♖d7 18 ♘d3 ♖a4 19 ♖xa4 ♘xa4 20 c4 (270)



270

The position in the diagram is not new. It can be considered established that the variation with 11 ♖e1 and 13 f4 (13 f3!?) promises little. The exchange of bishop for knight 14 ... ♗xc3! was introduced by international master Karasev.

20 ... ♗f5
21 ♖de1

In the game Faibisovich-Karasev, Leningrad 1977, White played 21 g4, but after 21 ... ♘d4 22 ♗h6 ♖xf1+ 23 ♖xf1 ♗xc2 24 ♖f2 ♘d4 25 ♗e3 c5 26 ♖f6 b5! 27 ♖xd6 ♘b6! 28 ♗xd4 ♗xc4 29 ♗xc5 ♗xd6 30 ♗xd6 ♖d8 31 ♗b4 ♖xd5 the advantage was with Black.

21 ... ♖ae8 22 c5 ♘c3! 23 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 24 g4?

A mistake. The game Yurtayev-Karasev, Moscow 1977, went 24 cxd6 cxd6 25 g4 ♘d4 26 ♗xd6 ♗xd5 27 ♗c5 ♗c6 28 ♗f4 ♗xf4 29 ♖xf4 g5 30 ♖f5 h6 31 ♖f6 ♖e4 32 h3 ♖c4 33 ♗f8 ♖xc2 34 ♗xh6 ♖xa2 35 ♖f8+ ♗h7 36 ♗xg5 a5 37 ♗f6 ♖a4 38 g5 ♘d4 39 ♗f2 ♗f5 40 ♖f7+ ♗g6 41 ♖xb7 ♖a3 42 ♗g2 ♘h4+ 43 ♗h2, and a draw was agreed. Instead of the committal 29 ... g5, Black had the quiet 29 ... ♖e5 followed by 30 ... h5.

Whether Geller was familiar with this game and was intending to improve White's play, it is hard to say, but his last move 24 g4? is a serious mistake, and not a harmless transposition of moves.

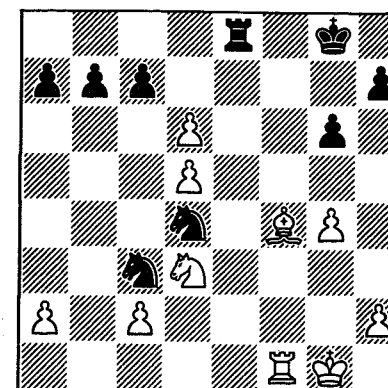
24 ... ♘d4
25 cxd6

(diagram 271)

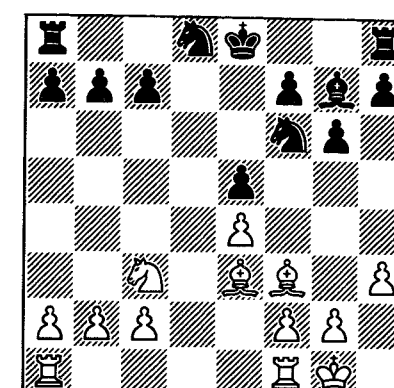
25 ... ♘de2+

An unexpected interposition. The knight, which just now was standing next to the enemy bishop, leaps across and exchanges

271



272



the opponent's most active piece. After this exchange the outcome is decided by White's weak queenside pawns and the dominating position of the black knight at c3.

26 ♗h1 ♘xf4 27 ♘xf4 cxd6 28 ♖f3 ♖c8 29 a3 b5 30 ♗g1 a5 31 ♗f1 b4 32 axb4 a4!

White has no way of blockading this pawn.

33 ♖e2 ♗b5!
34 ♗e1 ♖xc2

Threatening 35 ... ♖xe2+.

35 ♖e3 a3 36 ♖e8+ ♗f7 37 ♖a8 a2 White resigns

Razuvayev-Azmaiparashvili
USSR Championship 1st League
Minsk 1985

1 d4 d6 2 e4 g6 3 ♘f3 ♗g7 4 ♗e2 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 ♗g4 6 0-0 ♘c6 7 ♗e3 e5 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 ♖xd8+ ♗xd8 10 h3 ♗xf3 11 ♗xf3 (272)

In his book on the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence published in 1980, the Soviet master Fridshtein makes the following comment on the position after White's fifth move: "5 ... 0-0 is the most natural and common

continuation. 5 ... c6 and 5 ... ♗g4 do not usually have any independent significance ..."

The reader will be able to see that international master Azmaiparashvili has managed to find some independent significance in the move 5 ... ♗g4.

In such endings White traditionally has a slight positional advantage thanks to his two bishops. His position would be preferable in this example too, had Black castled, but Black's next move reveals the subtlety with which he has handled the opening.

11 ... h5!

Thanks to the position of his rook at h8, Black has the possibility of ... ♗h6, provoking the exchange of the dark-square bishops.

12 ♖ad1

White's play is too abstract. He should have considered 12 ♗e2, and if 12 ... ♗h6 13 ♗c4!?, while on 12 ... c6 he has the chance to preserve his dark-square bishop from exchange by 13 f3, with the possible variation 13 ... ♗h6 14 ♗f2 ♘e6 15 ♘d1, with quite good prospects.

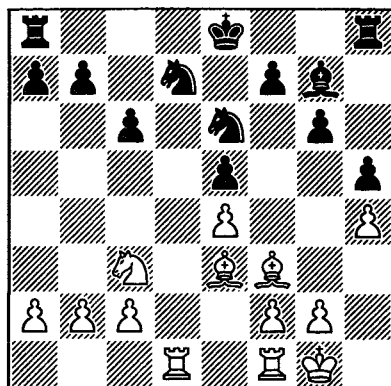
A few non-concrete moves gradually lead White into an inferior position.

12 ... ♖e6 13 ♜d5 ♜d7 14 h4?

A positional error, which meets with an unusual reply.

14 ... c6
15 ♜c3 (273)

273



15 ... ♕f6!

An unexpected decision. 15 ... ♕h6 or 15 ... ♜d4 suggests itself.

16 g3 g5!!

Excellently played. Black not only achieves the exchange of dark-square bishops, but also opens lines for attack on the kingside.

17 hxg5 ♕xg5 18 ♕xg5 ♜xg5 19 ♖d3?

Black's original and energetic play has borne fruit. Grandmaster Razuvayev is taken aback, and makes a decisive mistake.

After 19 ♖g2 h4 20 ♕g4 ♜f6 21 ♕f5 hxg3 22 fxg3 ♜e7 Black's position would have been preferable, but White could have calmly defended.

19 ... ♜c5 20 ♖e3 ♖d8 21 ♖d1 ♖d4 22 ♕g2 h4!

Black has established his pieces on strategically important points in the centre.

23 f4 ♜ge6 24 fxg5 h3 25 ♕f1 ♜d7 26 ♖ed3 ♜xe5! 27 ♖xd4 ♜xd4 28 ♕e2

After 28 ♕d3 ♜g4 or 28 ... ♜ef3+ 29 ♖h1 ♖g8 White would all the same have been unable to avoid loss of material.

28 ... ♜xc2
29 ♖f2 ♜d4!

After winning its booty, the black knight returns to its former square.

30 ♖h1 ♜e7 31 ♜d1 ♖f6 32 ♜e3 ♜xe2! 33 ♜xe2 ♖g5

One of the typical ways of realising a material advantage is by simplifying the position, which sometimes involves exchanging your 'good' pieces for the opponent's 'bad' pieces. Without regret Azmaiparashvili parts with his splendid knight, and takes play into a technically won ending.

34 ♖f1 h2 35 ♖h1 ♜g4 36 ♜f1 f5 37 ♜d2 ♖h3 38 exf5 ♜xf5 39 ♖f3 ♖h8 40 ♜c4 ♖g5 White resigns

Open Games

In this chapter we give endgames arising from various open games. In contrast to the Ruy Lopez, in these endings it is hard to pick out any distinguishing features. This is because right in the opening the centre is quickly opened and lively piece play begins, and an ending arises only when the logic of the position demands the exchange of queens. Thus, for example, the 'Evans Gambit endgame' or the 'Scotch Gambit endgame' does not naturally exist.

Nowadays the most popular open game is Petroff's Defence, and it is natural that endgames played with this opening are covered the most widely.

In this chapter the authors have aimed mainly to select games in which an opening error led to a difficult ending, or where the theory of an opening variation reduces to an ending, by-passing the middlegame.

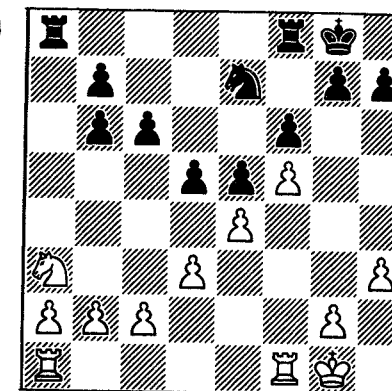
KING'S GAMBIT

Alapin-Rubinstein
Prague 1908

1 e4 e5 2 f4 ♕c5 3 ♜f3 d6 4 ♜c3 ♜c6 5 ♕b5 ♕g4 6 d3 ♜e7 7 h3 ♕xf3 8 ♖xf3 0-0 9 f5 ♜d4 10 ♖g3 ♜xb5 11 ♜xb5 f6 12 ♕e3 ♕xe3 13 ♖xe3 d5 14 0-0 c6 15 ♜a3 ♖b6 16 ♖xb6 axb6 (274)

A rare situation in the King's Gambit – all eight pawns of both sides are still on the board. Rubinstein employed what was then a new plan for the King's

274



Gambit Declined of developing his king's knight at e7. From the opening Black achieved an equal game, and the superficially active 9 f5? led merely to difficulties for White. By energetic play, 9 ... ♜d4! and 13 ... d5!, Black seized the initiative, and the inaccurate 14 0-0 (14 ♖f2 was correct, freeing the c3 square for the knight) led Alapin to an unpleasant ending. White's knight at a3 stands badly, his e4 pawn may become weak, and he appears to have no prospects at all of active play. Black has fine possibilities of play both on the queenside along the a-file and in the centre along the d-file.

17 c3

White weakens the central d3 square, but how else can he bring his knight into play? 17 ♜b1 b5 18 ♜d2 b4 also had its drawbacks.

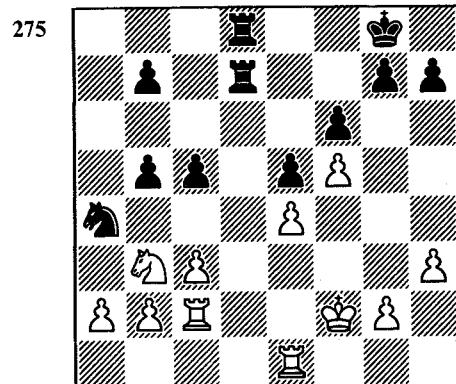
17 ... ♖fd8
18 ♖f2

White cannot fight actively for the d-file. On 18 ♖fd1 Black has the unpleasant 18 ... ♖a4.

18 ... ♖d7 19 ♘c2 ♖ad8 20 ♖e1 dxe4!

At just the right time. On the previous move White could not play 20 d4 on account of 20 ... dxe4 21 ♖e1 exd4 22 ♘xd4 c5 23 ♘e6 ♖d1, but now he was threatening to equalise by 21 d4.

21 dxe4 ♘c8 22 ♖fe2 b5 23 ♘a1 ♘b6 24 ♘b3 ♘a4! 25 ♘f2 c5 26 ♖c2 (275)



Black has gained firm control of the d-file and is cramping his opponent on the queenside. He has available a clear plan for strengthening his position on this part of the board: ... c4 and ... ♘c5 followed by an invasion on the d-file. White is unable to prevent this. But Rubinstein is not in a hurry to put his plan into effect, and he exploits a propitious moment to improve his position on the opposite wing. This may not be of decisive importance, but it can only be to the detriment of White.

26 ... g6!
27 fxg6

27 g4 would have seriously weakened the h3 pawn.

27 ... hxg6 28 ♘c1 c4 29 ♘e3 ♘f7 30

♖f1 ♖d1!

With Rubinstein everything is well timed. White was threatening to gain counterplay by 31 ♖cf2.

31 ♖xd1 ♖xd1 32 ♘e2 ♖d7 33 ♘e3 ♘c5

White is gradually suffocating. Black has many ways to strengthen his position.

34 b3

Alapin makes an attempt to free himself.

34 ... ♘e6 35 bxc4 bxc4 36 ♖b2 ♖d1 37 ♖b6+ ♘d7! 38 ♘e2 ♘c7!

In conclusion, a little bit of tactics.

39 ♖b4

After 39 ♖xf6? ♖d3+ 40 ♘f2 ♘xe4+ the rook would have been lost.

39 ... ♖d3+
40 ♘f2 ♘xe4+

The game is essentially decided.

41 ♘e1 ♘d6 42 ♖a4 ♘c6 43 ♖a8 ♘d5 44 h4 ♘f5 45 ♖f8 ♘e3 46 ♖g8

46 ♖xf6? ♖d1+ 47 ♘f2 ♘g4+.

46 ... ♘xg2+ 47 ♘f2 ♘xh4 48 ♖d8+ ♘e4 49 ♘g3+ ♘f4 50 ♘e2+ ♘g4 51 ♖c8 ♖f3+ White resigns

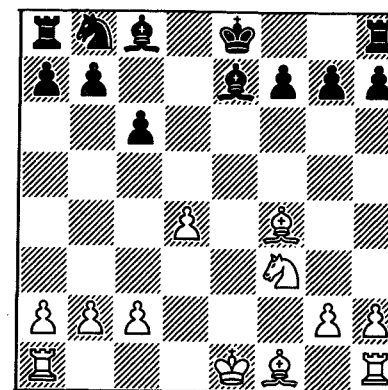
Bronstein-Bykhovsky

33rd USSR Championship, Tallinn 1965

1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 ♘c3 c6 4 ♘f3 d5 5 d4 dxe4 6 ♘xe4 ♘f6 7 ♖e2 ♘xe4 8 ♖xe4+ ♖e7 9 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 10 ♖xf4 (276)

In the King's Gambit, simplification is by no means always the way to equalise for Black. Thanks to his better development, White often gains an enduring

276



for him to provoke the advance of the enemy c-pawn, when it will be more easily approached. Bronstein therefore 'picks on' the c6 pawn, taking into account the fact that it is not easy for Black to escape from the pin on the e-file.

18 ... g6
19 c3!?

White does not hurry, but slowly strengthens his position, waiting to see what the opponent will do.

19 ... ♘g7 20 ♘c2 a6 21 b3!

White's position quietly improves, whereas Black's useful moves are already exhausted.

21 ... c5 22 ♘f3 f6? 23 c4?

The two players were obviously in time trouble. With this pawn move White chooses the positional way to win, by preparing to play his bishop to a5. But the simple 23 ♖e6 would have won immediately.

23 ... ♖f8 24 ♖d2! ♖xe1 25 ♖xe1 ♘f7 26 ♖a5 ♖c6 27 ♖d8

White's rook has taken control in the opponent's position, and gain of material is not far off.

27 ... ♖e7 28 ♖h8 h5 29 ♖h7+ ♘e8 30 ♖h6 ♘f7 31 ♘h4 f5 32 ♘xf5

By simple tactics White wins a pawn.

32 ... ♖f8 33 ♖h7+ ♘g8 34 ♘e7+ ♘xh7 35 ♘xc6

The game could have been concluded here. The finish was:

35 ... ♘d7 36 ♘d3 ♖d6 37 h3 ♘g7 38 ♖c3+ ♘f7 39 ♘e4 ♘e6 40 ♘d8+ ♘e7 41 ♘b7 ♘e6 42 ♘d8+ ♘e7 43 ♘d5 Black resigns

initiative in the endgame. Sharp play is much more promising for Black, and variations such as 3 ... ♖h4+ 4 ♘e2 d5 5 ♘xd5 ♖g4+ 6 ♘f3 ♘c6 7 ♘xc7+ ♘d8 8 ♘xa8 ♘e5 are more likely to give him an equal position. For example: 9 h3 (9 d4? ♘xf3 10 gxf3 ♖xf3+) 9 ... ♖xf3+ 10 gxf3 ♖g3 11 d3 ♖xf3+ 12 ♘e1 (12 ♘d2? ♘c4+!) 12 ... ♖g3+ 13 ♘e2 ♖f3+, with a draw.

10 ... ♖f5 11 0-0-0 0-0 12 ♖c4 ♘d7 13 ♖he1 ♖fe8

The white pieces are splendidly mobilised, whereas Black still requires one or two moves to coordinate his forces. Therefore White must aim to play actively immediately, otherwise the game will become level.

14 d5! ♘b6
15 dxc6!

The tactical justification of the previous move.

15 ... bxc6

15 ... ♘xc4 would have lost to 16 cxb7.

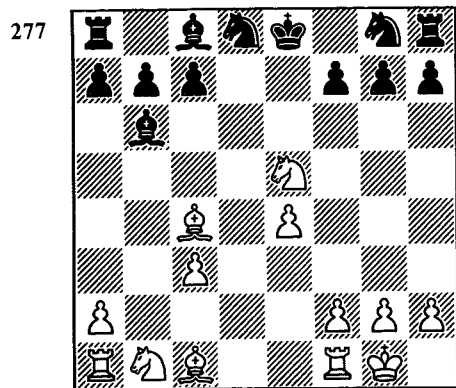
16 ♖a6 ♖c8 17 ♖xc8 ♖axc8 18 ♘d4!

White has induced pawn weaknesses on the queenside, and it is advantageous

EVANS GAMBIT

Chigorin-Pillsbury
London 1899

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♘c6 3 ♙c4 ♙c5 4 b4
 ♙xb4 5 c3 ♙c5 6 0-0 d6 7 d4 ♙b6 8 dxe5
 dxe5 9 ♗xd8+ ♘xd8 10 ♙xe5 (277)



To this day Lasker's move 7 ... ♙b6! is judged one of the safest methods of play for Black, in both the 5 ... ♙c5 and the 5 ... ♙a5 variations. Instead of exchanging queens, White would have done better to continue 9 ♗b3 ♗f6 10 ♙g5 ♗g6 11 ♙d5 ♘ge7 12 ♙xe7 ♘xe7 13 ♙xc6 ♗xc6 14 ♘xe5 ♗e6 with roughly equal chances (ECO).

10 ... ♙e6 11 ♘d2 ♘e7 12 ♙a3 f6 13 ♘d3

13 ♘ef3 looks more natural.

13 ... ♙g6

Black has comfortably deployed his pieces and has a good game. His main advantage is that, thanks to his superior pawn formation, it is easy for him to make simple and strong moves, which suggest themselves. But for White it is difficult to plan any sensible actions, and his position begins gradually to deteriorate.

14 ♙ab1 ♘f7 15 ♙d5 ♙e8 16 c4 c6 17 ♙xe6+ ♘xe6

Black has completed his mobilisation, and his advantage is no longer in doubt.

18 ♘b3

18 c5 did not achieve anything after 18 ... ♙ad8.

18 ... ♙ad8 19 ♘bc1 ♙d7 20 c5 ♙c7 21 g3 ♘e5 22 ♘xe5 ♙xe5 23 ♘b3 g5!

A fairly well-known situation has arisen, where one player has a pawn majority on the kingside and the other on the queenside, with the d-file open. In such cases the two sides' plans usually depend on the features of the pawn formation: each must try to control the d-file and advance his pawn majority. Here Pillsbury makes use of an opportunity to advance his kingside pawns, in order to neutralise White's majority on that part of the board.

24 ♙fd1 ♙ed8 25 ♙xd7+ ♙xd7 26 h3 ♙c7 27 ♘f1 b5!

Well played. Black relieves the pressure of the white rook on the b-file, and reminds the opponent that on the queenside he has a pawn majority.

28 ♙b4

28 cxb6 axb6 would merely have made White's position worse.

28 ... h5!

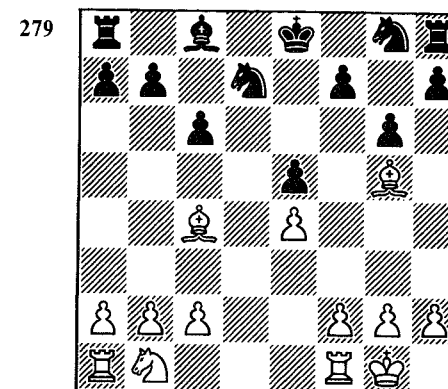
Pillsbury plays on a broad scale, squeezing Chigorin's position from all sides.

29 ♙g2 ♙d3 30 ♙c1 ♘d4! 31 ♙c3 (278)

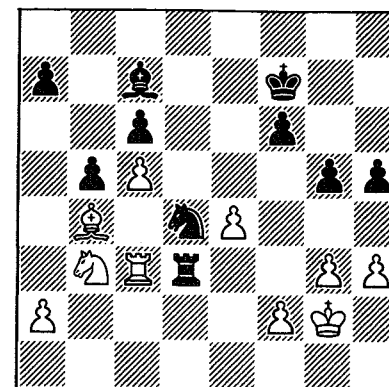
With his previous move Pillsbury offered the exchange of knights, to which Chigorin replied by also offering to exchange rooks. The problem of exchanging is always a key one in chess, particularly in the

Boleslavsky-Shcherbakov
Moscow Championship 1942

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 ♘d7 4 ♙c4 c6 5 0-0
 ♙e7 6 dxe5 dxe5 7 ♘g5 ♙xg5 8 ♗h5 g6 9
 ♗xg5 ♗xg5 10 ♙xg5 (279)



278



endgame. Black's solution is simple and convincing.

31 ... ♙xc3! 32 ♙xc3 ♘xb3! 33 axb3 a5!

The bishop ending is won for Black on the principle of 'two weaknesses'. On the queenside he has an outside passed pawn (White's first weakness). To neutralise the opponent's passed pawn, White must quickly take his king to the queenside, which will allow Black to play ... g4, fixing the f2 pawn and transforming it into a weakness, access to which, and also to the c5 pawn, will become possible after ... f5.

34 ♘f3 ♙e6 35 ♙e3 g4 36 hxg4 hxg4 37 ♘d3 a4 38 bxa4 bxa4 39 ♙b4 ♙e5!

The e5 square must be secured for the king.

40 ♙a3 ♙a1 41 ♙c1 f5! 42 ♙a3 ♙e5 43 exf5 ♘xf5 44 ♙e3 ♙e5 45 f4+ ♘d5 46 f5 ♙e5 47 ♘f2 ♙e4

Black has consistently carried out his plan.

White resigns

PHILIDOR'S DEFENCE

10 ... ♙c5
 11 ♘d2 ♙e6

11 ... ♙e6 does not work due to 12 ♙e3 ♙xc4 13 ♘xc4 ♘xe4 14 f3 ♘ef6 15 ♘xe5 with a great advantage.

12 ♙e3 ♘f6
 13 f3 ♘h5?

An incomprehensible manoeuvre. On the kingside there is nothing for the knight to do.

14 a4!

As is well known, it is important for the side with the two bishops to cramp the opponent's position by pawn advances.

The most suitable for this are the rooks' pawns, since when they advance they are least likely to weaken squares and create strong points for the opponent.

14 ... ♖e7 15 ♜f1 ♜d8 16 ♖a2

Boleslavsky plans ♜c4. 16 a5 followed by c2-c3 and b2-b4 also looks good. It is hard for Black to find any way of opposing the development of White's initiative on the queenside.

16 ... f6 17 ♜c4 b6 18 ♜xd8

An inaccuracy. 18 a5 was stronger, avoiding freeing e6 for the black bishop.

18 ... ♜xd8 19 a5 ♖e6 20 ♖b3 ♖xc4

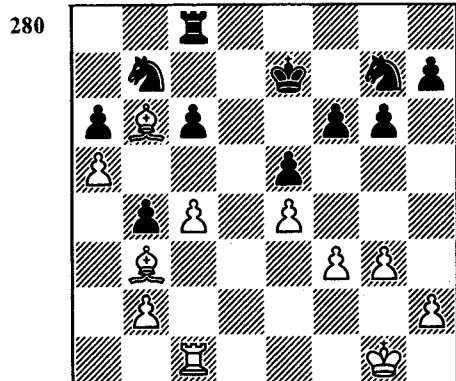
In such a position it is difficult to offer any advice. 20 ... b5 21 ♖c5+ ♜f7 (21 ... ♜d7 22 ♜d1+ ♜c7 23 ♜b6!.) 22 ♜d6+ ♜g8 23 a6 would give Black little hope.

21 ♖xc4 b5 22 ♖c5+ ♜e8 23 ♖g8 ♜b7 24 ♖f2 a6 25 ♖b6 ♜f8 26 ♖b3 ♜e7 27 g3 ♜g7 28 c4!

A concrete approach to the position. White induces a radical change in the opponent's pawn formation by threatening to open up the game on the queenside.

28 ... ♜c8
29 ♜c1 b4 (280)

Forced.



30 c5!

It was this move that Boleslavsky had in mind when he played 28 c4. Now the white bishop at b6 is cut off from the kingside, but it fulfils an important function by controlling d8. The black rook will also be out of play after the next move, when the other white bishop goes to c4. Account must be taken of the fact that Black's knights gain access to d4, but this does not bring him any real benefit.

30 ... ♜d8
31 ♖c4 ♜a8

The black rook is obliged to take on pitiful functions.

32 ♜f2 ♜de6 33 ♜e3 ♜d4 34 f4 ♜ge6 35 ♜f1

The game is essentially being played on the kingside alone. Apart from his pawns, White's king, rook and bishop at c4 are all participating, whereas Black has only his king and two knights. It is therefore not difficult to decide who is going to win.

35 ... ♜c2+ 36 ♜d3 ♜cd4 37 f5 gxf5

Attempting to close up the position by 37 ... ♜g7 38 g4 g5 would have failed to 39 h4 h6 40 ♜h1.

38 exf5 ♜g7 39 ♜e4 ♜e8 40 g4 ♜c2 41 ♜f2 ♜d4 42 g5!

The decisive breakthrough.

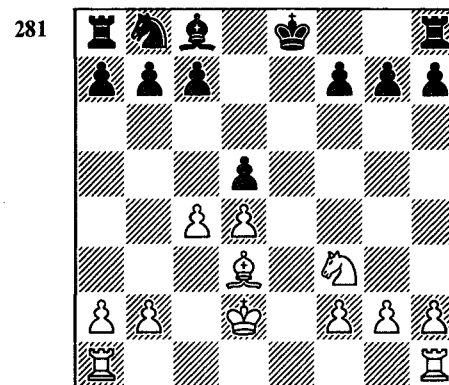
42 ... ♜b5 43 ♖xb5 axb5 44 h4 ♜f7 45 ♜d2 ♜e7 46 b3 (zugzwang) 46 ... ♜b8 47 a6 ♜c8 48 a7 ♜a8 49 ♜d8 ♜c7 50 ♖xc7 ♜xa7 51 gxf6+ Black resigns

PETROFF'S DEFENCE

Alekhine-Marshall
St Petersburg 1914

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜f6 3 ♜xe5 d6 4 ♜f3 ♜xe4 5 d4 d5 6 ♖d3 ♖d6 7 c4 ♖b4+ 8 ♜bd2 ♜xd2 9 ♖xd2 ♖e7+ 10 ♖e2 ♖xe2+ 11 ♜xe2 ♖xd2 12 ♜xd2 (281)

This old variation of Petroff's Defence is nowadays enjoying a second youth, although its interpretation differs considerably from those distant times. As shown by Alekhine, Black committed a serious mistake by exchanging on d2 on his eighth move: 8 ... 0-0 9 0-0 ♖xd2! 10 ♖xd2 ♖g4 was stronger. Marshall made a second mistake when he exchanged queens. He should have chosen the different move order 10 ... ♖xd2+ 11 ♜xd2 ♖xe2+ 12 ♖xe2 dxc4 13 ♖xc4 0-0, when White has merely a slight positional advantage.



In the diagram position White has a virtually decisive positional superiority. In those times they often counted tempi with respect to the initial position, and on this basis White has made five moves as opposed to one by the black d5 pawn, which in addition will be exchanged. On top of all this, White will shortly gain a further tempo by the check at e1. In other words, White's advantage in time, or (as we would say today) in development, allows him to count on soon winning material.

12 ... ♖e6

12 ... dxc4 13 ♜he1+! is no better.

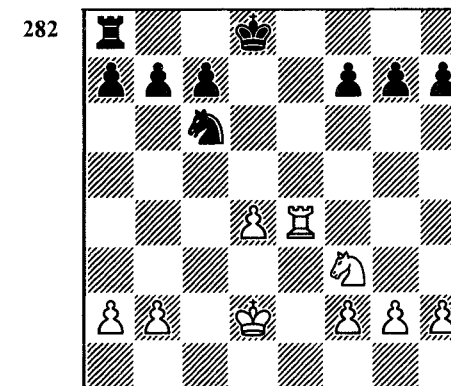
13 cxd5 ♖xd5 14 ♜he1+ ♜d8 15 ♖e4!

From what has been said above, it is useful to White to exchange the opponent's only developed piece, in order to increase his lead in development.

15 ... ♖xe4
16 ♜xe4 ♜e8

Otherwise White would have doubled rooks on the e-file.

17 ♜ae1 ♖xe4
18 ♜xe4 ♜c6 (282)



19 ♖g4!

A famous Alekhine manoeuvre, which wins a pawn. 19 ♜g5 would have been wrong on account of 19 ... ♜d7!.

19 ... g6
20 ♜h4! ♜e7

20 ... h5 21 g4 would have been even worse for Black.

21 ♜xh7 ♜d8 22 ♜h4 ♜d5 23 ♜e4+!

Returning from its successful raid, the white rook again commences work. For a start, the black king is driven on to the

back rank, since it has to cover the e8 square.

23 ... ♖f8 24 ♖c3 ♜f5 25 ♜e2 a6 26 a3 ♜e7 27 ♜e5! ♜f6 28 ♖d3!

Alekhine prepares ♜c5.

28 ... b6

Now the c7 pawn is weakened.

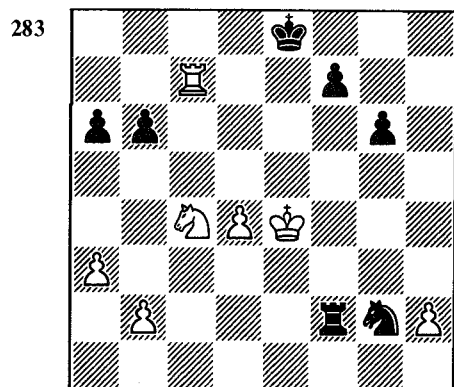
29 ♜e2!?

In this game the white rook gets through an enormous amount of work. With his last move Alekhine essentially returns his extra pawn for the sake of penetrating with his rook onto the eighth rank and creating a passed d-pawn. Each great master from the past had his own style and his own approach to realising an advantage. Alekhine always aimed for the shortest, most aggressive way, with the maximum use of tactics.

29 ... ♜d5 30 ♖e4 ♜f4 31 ♜c2 ♜xg2 32 ♜e5

In view of the threat of 33 ♜d7+, Black has no time to defend his c7 pawn.

32 ... ♖e8 33 ♜xc7 ♜xf2 34 ♜c4! (283)



Excellent play. The knight aims for the ideal square b7, from where it supports

the advance of the d-pawn and if necessary can cover the white king from c5.

34 ... b5 35 ♜d6+ ♖f8 36 d5 f6 37 ♜b7! ♜f4 38 b4 g5 39 d6 ♜e6 40 ♖d5!

The concluding stroke. All White's pieces have come to the aid of their passed pawn. Of course, the rook cannot be taken on account of 40 ... ♜xc7 41 dxc7 ♜c2 42 ♜c5, and 40 ... ♜e2 41 ♖c6 ♜d4+ is hopeless in view of 42 ♖b6. Marshall resorts to a desperate counterattack on the kingside.

40 ... ♜f4+ 41 ♖c6 ♜xh2 42 ♜c5!

Alekhine is no longer agreeable to exchanging his passed pawn for the knight. Black will have to give up his rook for it.

42 ... ♜d2 43 ♜c8+ ♖f7 44 d7 ♜e6 45 ♜xe6 ♖xe6 46 d8=♔ ♜xd8 47 ♜xd8

The white rook easily copes with Black's passed pawns, which are not yet very advanced. The game concluded:

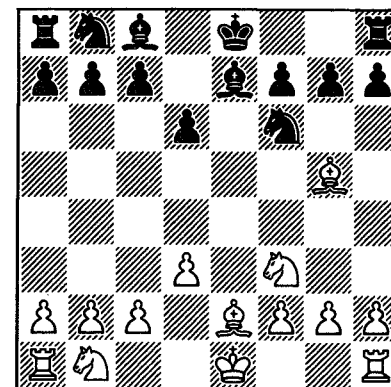
47 ... g4 48 ♜e8+ ♖f7 49 ♜e2 f5 50 ♖d5 ♖f6 51 ♖d4 f4 52 ♖e4 ♖g5 53 ♜c2 f3 54 ♜d2 ♖h4 55 ♖f4 Black resigns

I. Rabinovich-Kan Moscow 1935

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜f6 3 ♜xe5 d6 4 ♜f3 ♜xe4 5 ♔e2 ♔e7 6 d3 ♜f6 7 ♜g5 ♔xe2+ 8 ♜xe2 ♜e7 (284)

The Exchange Variation of Petroff's Defence has the reputation of being a drawing opening. However, even in the most symmetric and drawish pawn formations there is still piece play. Chess history knows of many examples of interesting play in such positions, although the probability of a peaceable outcome is much greater than in other variations of Petroff's Defence.

284



9 ♜c3 ♜g4?!

Black brings out his bishop to an active position, but from where it can be pushed away by the white pawns, thus allowing the opponent to gain space on the kingside. Nowadays Black prefers either the more modest 9 ... ♜d7, or else Petrosian's 9 ... c6, with which he easily equalised in two games of his 1969 World Championship match with Spassky:

10 0-0-0 ♜a6 11 ♜e4 ♜xe4 12 dxe4 ♜c5 13 ♜he1 ♜xg5+ 14 ♜xg5 ♖e7 15 ♜f3 ♜d8 16 ♜d4 g6 17 ♜f1 ♖f8 18 b4 ♜e6 19 ♜b3 b6 20 ♜e3 ♜b7 21 a3 ♜d7 22 g3 ♜e8 23 h4 ♜dd8 24 ♜c4 ♜c7 25 ♜de1 ♜e7 ½-½ (Game 13);

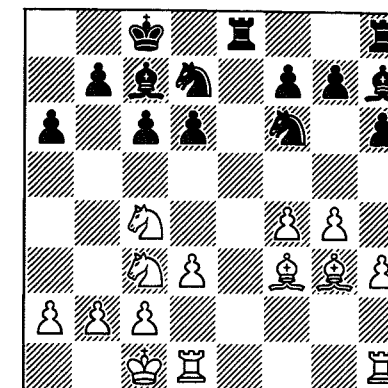
10 0-0-0 ♜a6 11 ♜he1 ♜c7 12 ♜f1 ♜e6 13 ♜d2 ♜d7 14 d4 h6 15 ♜d3 d5 16 h3 ♜d8 17 a3 0-0 18 ♜e3 ♜c8 19 ♜h4 ♜fe8 ½-½ (Game 15).

10 0-0-0 ♜bd7 11 h3 ♜h5 12 g4 ♜g6 13 ♜d4 0-0-0 14 f4 h6 15 ♜h4 ♜de8

Some initial conclusions can be drawn. Black is cramped. White has seized space on the kingside and has good prospects of play in the centre; his position is clearly better.

16 ♜f3 ♜d8 17 ♜g3 a6 18 ♜b3 ♜h7 19 ♜a5 c6 20 ♜c4 ♜c7 (285)

285



White has a wide choice of continuations. On the one hand this is good, but the wider the choice, the greater the probability of a mistake. Rabinovich decides to try and conclusively cramp Black on the kingside.

21 g5?

White's plan was supported by variations such as 21 ... ♜g8 22 ♜e4 ♜xe4 23 dxe4 hxg5 24 fxg5 ♜e5 25 ♜xe5 dxe5 26 ♜g4+ ♖b8 27 ♜d7, with a great advantage. But although the plan is very good in the strategic sense, it contains a serious tactical defect. He should have preferred 21 f5 ♜e5 22 ♜xe5 dxe5 23 ♜hf1, retaining the advantage.

21 ... d5!!

A surprising move, which sharply changes the picture.

22 gxh6

There is nothing better. 22 ♜e5 fails to 22 ... ♜xe5 23 fxe5 hxg5 24 exf6 ♜xg3 25 fxg7 ♜hg8.

22 ... dxc4 23 fxg7 ♜hg8 24 dxc4 ♜xg7 25 ♜h2

Not 25 ♜hg1? ♜xg3!.

25 ... ♜f5!

White cannot defend his h-pawn, and the advantage passes to Black.

26 ♖he1

26 h4 ♙g4 is unpleasant.

26 ... ♜f6!

Stronger than the immediate capture of the pawn. After 26 ... ♜xe1 27 ♜xe1 ♙xh3 28 ♜e8+ ♙d8 White would have gained counterplay by 29 ♜h8.

27 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 28 h4 ♙g4 29 ♜e1

After 29 ♜f1? ♙xf3 30 ♜xf3 ♙g2 White would have lost a piece.

29 ... ♙xf3 30 ♜xe8+ ♙d7 31 ♜e3 ♙g2!
32 ♜xf3 ♜xh2 33 ♜e4 ♜xh4

Black re-establishes material equality, and his positional advantage is undisputed.

34 ♜c5+ ♙c8 35 ♜d3 h5 36 ♙d2 ♜h2+
37 ♙e3 h4 38 c3

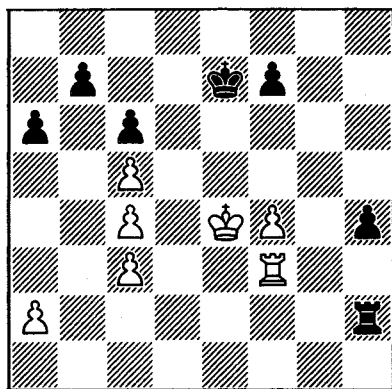
The c2 pawn was now threatened, since Black can meet ♜h3 with ... ♙d8. 38 ♜f2 would fail to 38 ... ♙b6+, while on 38 ♜f2 Black had the unpleasant 38 ... ♜h1.

38 ... ♙d7 39 ♜c5+ ♙e7! 40 b4

40 ♜xb7 ♜xb2 41 ♜c5 ♙b6 42 ♙d4 ♜d2+ 43 ♙e3 ♜d6 is hopeless.

40 ... ♙b6 41 ♙e4 ♙xc5 42 bxc5 (286)

286



White's pawns present a pitiful spectacle. Black easily realises his advantage.

42 ... ♙f6 43 ♜d3 h3 44 a3 ♜e2+ 45 ♙f3 h2! 46 ♜d1 ♜c2 47 ♙g3 ♙f5 48 ♜e1 f6 49 ♙f3 ♜xc3+ 50 ♙g2 ♜xc4 51 ♜b1 ♜xc5

The black rook has done well at the expense of the opponent's tripled pawns. The finish was:

52 ♜xb7 ♙xf4 53 ♙xh2 f5 54 ♙g2 ♜c3
55 ♜b4+ ♙e3 56 ♙g3 ♜xa3 57 ♜c4 a5 58 ♜xc6 ♙e4+ 59 ♙f2 ♜a2+ 60 ♙f1 a4 61 ♜c4+ ♙d5 62 ♜b4 a3 63 ♜a4 ♜a1+ 64 ♙f2 a2 65 ♙g2 f4 White resigns

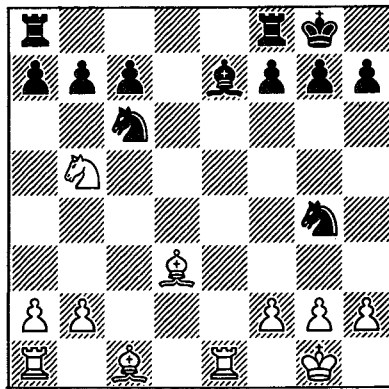
Sax-Yusupov

Thessaloniki Olympiad 1984

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜f6 3 ♜xe5 d6 4 ♜f3 ♜xe4 5 d4 d5 6 ♙d3 ♙e7 7 0-0 ♜c6 8 ♜e1 ♙g4 9 c4 ♜f6 10 cxd5 ♙xf3 11 ♜xf3 ♜xd5 12 ♜g3 ♜xd4 13 ♜c3 0-0 14 ♜b5 ♜g4 15 ♜xg4 ♜xg4 (287)

10 ... ♙xf3! is an interesting idea that was first employed in the Hübner-Smyslov Candidates Match, Velden 1983. However, subsequently Smyslov did not play the best, and instead of 13 ... 0-0! continued 13 ... ♜d8?!, which led to a difficult position after 14 ♙b5!. With a series of

287



precise moves (13 ... 0-0!, 14 ... ♜g4!) Yusupov demonstrated the correct way to neutralise White's initiative.

In the diagram position White is a pawn down, but it is his move, and the black c-pawn is attacked. On the immediate 16 ♜xc7 Black has the unpleasant reply 16 ... ♙c5!, and so White must first drive the enemy knight from g4.

16 ♙f5?!

As will be seen from the further course of the game, it would have been better to do this with 16 ♙e2!.

16 ... ♜f6 17 ♜xc7 ♜ad8 18 ♙e3

The position of his bishop at f5 prevents Sax from evacuating his knight, which is in danger. 18 ♜b5? fails to 18 ... ♜d5.

18 ... a6

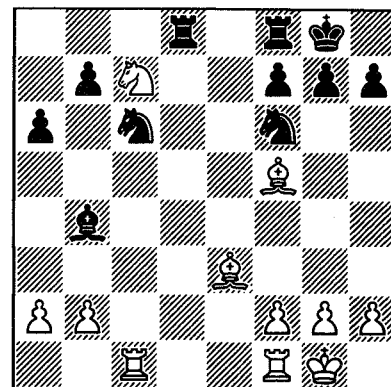
19 ♜ac1?

A natural move and, strangely enough, the decisive mistake. As shown by Makarychev, it was essential to play 19 ♜ed1!, e.g. 19 ... ♙d6 20 ♙b6 ♙e5 21 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 22 ♜xa6, with possibilities of continuing the struggle.

19 ... ♙b4!

20 ♜f1 (288)

288



There is nothing better. Other rook

moves are met by 20 ... ♙a5, when White does not have 21 ♜xa6 in view of the weakness of his back rank.

Black's advantage is obvious, but how is he to realise it? 20 ... ♙d2 suggests itself, but after the exchange of bishops it is difficult to approach the white knight, since the c8 and d7 squares are controlled by the bishop at f5. Yusupov finds a different, unusual solution, offering the opponent opposite-colour bishops.

20 ... ♜d4!

21 ♜c4

After 21 ♙xd4 ♜xd4 the white knight cannot escape.

21 ... ♜xf5

22 ♜xb4 ♜d7!

Again a very strong move.

23 ♜c1

There is no choice. White loses after 23 ♜xb7 ♜xe3 24 fxe3 ♜c8 25 ♜c1 ♜e8, while on 23 ♙f4, as shown by Yusupov, Black would have won by 23 ... ♜c8 24 ♜xb7 ♜d5 25 ♙e5 ♜xc7 26 ♜c1 ♜e8!.

23 ... ♜c8 24 ♜bc4 ♜cd8 25 h3 ♜xe3 26 fxe3 ♙f8 27 e4 ♙e7 28 ♜b4?!

28 e5 was objectively better, although after 28 ... ♜d5 Black would be bound to win the e5 pawn, and with it the rook ending.

28 ... ♜d1+ 29 ♜xd1 ♜xd1+ 30 ♙f2 ♙d6 31 e5+

After 31 ♜xb7 ♙c6 32 ♜a7 ♜d7 White would have lost his knight.

31 ... ♙xe5

32 ♜a8

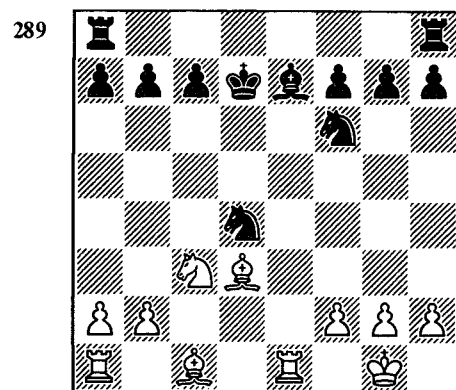
It would have been interesting to hear Tarrasch's opinion about the position of the white knight.

32 ... b5 33 a4 ♖d5 34 ♖b3 bxa4 35 ♖b7 ♖b1 36 ♖f3 a3

White resigns. Yusupov's inspired play in this game creates a strong impression.

Kasparov-Karpov
World Championship (28)
Moscow 1984/85

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖f6 3 ♖xe5 d6 4 ♖f3 ♖xe4 5 d4 d5 6 ♖d3 ♖c6 7 0-0 ♖g4 8 ♖e1 ♖e7 9 c4 ♖f6 10 cxd5 ♖xf3 11 ♖xf3 ♖xd5 12 ♖h3 ♖xd4 13 ♖c3 ♖d7 14 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 (289)



Compared with the previous game, White employed an innovation – 12 ♖h3. Little is promised by 12 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 13 ♖c3 ♖db4 14 ♖e4 ♖xd4 15 ♖xb7 ♖d8 (Timman-Belyavsky, Bugojno 1984), or 13 ♖e4 0-0-0 14 ♖c3 ♖b4! 15 ♖d2 ♖f6 16 a3 ♖xe4 17 ♖xe4 ♖xc3 18 bxc3 ♖a5 (Ehlvest-Mikhalchishin, Lvov 1984). However, as the further course of the game shows, for the pawn White has sufficient compensation, but not more.

In the next even-numbered game of the match Kasparov tried to improve with 10 ♖c3, but after 10 ... dxc4 11 ♖xc4 0-0 12 ♖e3 ♖xf3 13 ♖xf3 ♖xd4 14 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 15 ♖xe7 ♖xc4 16 ♖xb7 c6 17 ♖b3 ♖xb3

18 axb3 ♖ab8 19 ♖a3 ♖fe8 20 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 peace was concluded. In later games from the match White rejected 8 ♖e1 in favour of the more energetic 8 c4, and Black experienced certain difficulties.

15 ♖e3 ♖e6 16 ♖ad1 ♖d6 17 ♖f5 ♖e7!

Karpov parries the threat of 18 ♖g5 followed by 19 ♖xf6 and 20 ♖d5. Now on 18 ♖g5 there follows 18 ... c6.

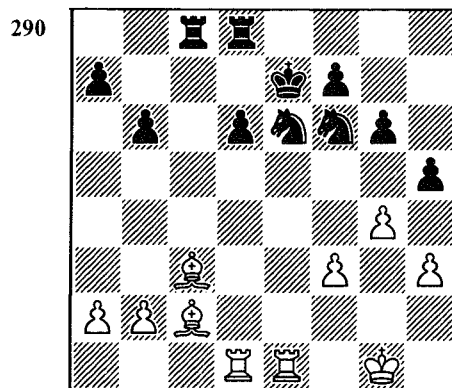
18 ♖b5 ♖hd8!

The threat was 19 ♖xc7 ♖xc7 20 ♖c5+ ♖e8 21 ♖xe6 fxe6 22 ♖xe6+ ♖f7 23 ♖e7+.

19 ♖xd6 cxd6 20 h3 b6 21 g4 h6 22 ♖d4 ♖ac8 23 ♖c3 g6 24 ♖c2 h5!

It is important for Black to weaken the opponent's kingside pawns in order to have counterplay by ... ♖c4.

26 f3 (290)



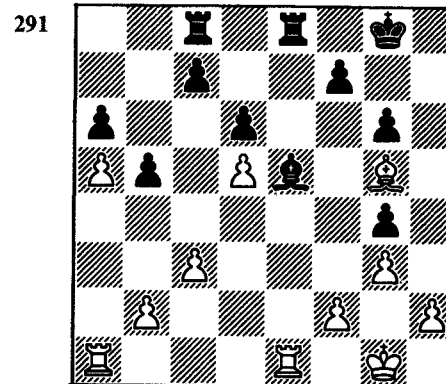
In this complicated position of dynamic equilibrium the players agreed a draw.

FOUR KNIGHTS GAME

Padevsky-Smyslov
Moscow 1956

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♖c3 ♖f6 4 d4 exd4 5 ♖d5 ♖e7 6 ♖xd4 ♖xd5 7 exd5 ♖xd4 8 ♖xd4 0-0 9 ♖e2 ♖f6 10 ♖d3 d6 11 0-0 ♖e8 12 ♖f3 g6 13 c3 ♖f5 14 ♖c4 a6 15 ♖e3 b5 16 ♖b3 ♖e5 17 ♖fe1 ♖f6 18 a4 ♖d7 19 a5 ♖ab8 20 ♖b4 ♖bc8 21 ♖g4 ♖xg4 22 ♖xg4 h5 23 ♖d7 ♖h4 24 g3 ♖c4 25 ♖g5 ♖g4 26 ♖xg4 hxg4 (291)

In the opening White chose a harmless continuation, leading to numerous exchanges. But in his aiming for a draw Padevsky was not altogether consistent. Instead of 19 a5? he should have continued his simplifying tactics with 19 axb5 axb5 20 ♖b4. White's 13th move was also a poor one. He should have played the immediate 13 ♖b3 and quickly completed his development with 14 ♖d2 and 15 ♖ae1.



As a result Smyslov has outplayed his opponent and now has the better ending. But the game is too drawish for Black to hope to win without the help of his opponent.

27 ♖e2 ♖g7 28 ♖ae1 ♖xe2 29 ♖xe2 f6! 30 ♖f4 ♖f7 31 ♖f1?

White should have aimed for the exchange of the g4 pawn which is blocking his kingside. 31 ♖g2 and 32 f3 suggests itself.

31 ... f5
32 ♖c2?

Passive tactics are inappropriate here. 32 ♖g5 with the threat of 33 ♖e7+ should have been played. Black would have retained a positional advantage, both in the rook ending after 32 ... ♖f6 and in the bishop ending after 32 ... ♖e8, but it would have been more difficult to realise than after the continuation in the game.

32 ... c6! 33 ♖xd6 cxd5 34 ♖d2 ♖e6 35 ♖f4 ♖c4

White's position is lost.

36 ♖e2+ ♖e4
37 ♖c2

It would have been hopeless for White to go into the bishop ending.

37 ... ♖f6 38 ♖e3 ♖d8 39 b3 ♖f6!

Of course, Smyslov had no reason to go into the complications after 39 ... ♖xa5?! 40 ♖a2.

40 ♖e2?

The final mistake.

40 ... b4!
41 cxb4 d4

The remainder does not require any explanation.

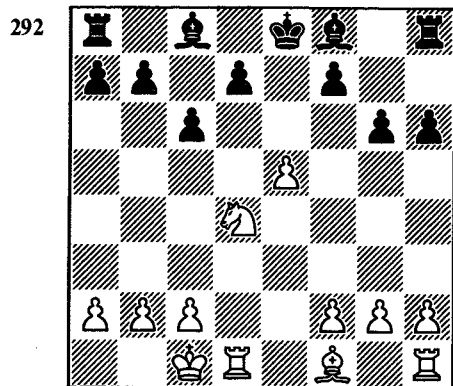
42 ♖c6+ ♖e7 43 ♖xa6 dxe3 44 ♖a7+ ♖e6 45 ♖b7 ♖d4 46 fxe3 ♖xe3+ 47 ♖d2 ♖xb3 48 a6 ♖a3 49 b5 ♖d5 50 ♖c7 g5 White resigns

THREE KNIGHTS GAME

Alekhine-Bogoljubow
Dresden 1936

1 e4 e5 2 f3 c6 3 c3 g6 4 d4 exd4 5 d5 g7 6 g5 ce7 7 e5 h6 8 xe7 ce7 9 xd4 xd5 10 xd5 c6 11 d6 f8 12 d4 b6 13 0-0-0 xd4 14 xd4 (292)

In the opening Black played inaccurately – 10 ... c6. Nowadays 10 ... d6 11 0-0-0 0-0 is considered best, and if 12 exd6?! e6!.



The game has gone into a complicated ending. With his last move Alekhine successfully solved an exchanging problem. Capturing on d4 with the rook would have prevented 14 ... d5, but would have allowed Black interesting possibilities such as 14 ... g7 15 e4 b5, with chances for both sides. Now Black can get rid of his backward pawn on the d-file, but this does not yet solve all his problems.

14 ... d5 15 exd6 exd6 16 e4 0-0 17 he1

Black has the two bishops and no real weaknesses. His position would be good if his queen's rook stood at d8. But the point is that the white pieces, which are excellently placed in the centre, do not allow Bogoljubow to coordinate his rooks.

17 ... g4 18 f3 e8 19 g3

Threatening 20 xc6.

19 ... c5 20 b3 b6 21 d2 h3 22 de4

In White's last three moves his knight has gone from d4 to e4. The final goal of its manoeuvres is to attack the f7 pawn.

22 ... a5 23 c3 ad8 24 d6!

The superficially tempting 24 exd8 is parried by 24 ... exd8!, but not 24 ... exd8? 25 f2! and 26 e7.

24 ... b5 25 b3 d7 26 de8!

From e8, in contrast to e4, the knight also controls g7, not allowing the black king to approach the centre.

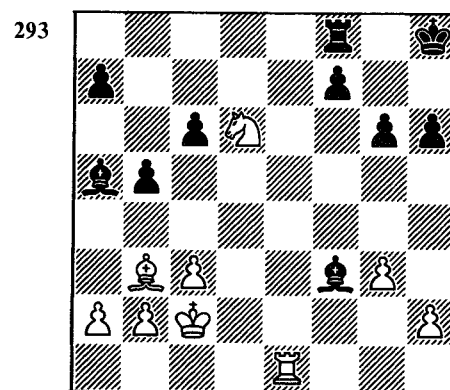
26 ... exd1+ 27 exd1 g2 28 f6+

"White realises that the black king will be at least no better at h8 than at g8, and therefore takes the opportunity of gaining time on the clock" (Alekhine).

28 ... g7
29 de8+ h8

29 ... g8 is met in the same way.

30 c2! xf3
31 d6 (293)



31 ... d5?

A serious mistake, which loses quickly. As shown by Alekhine, 31 ... g7 should

have been played, with the following variations: 32 e7 b6 33 xf7 c5 34 b3+ h8 35 f7+ g7 (35 ... h7? 36 g5++) 36 b7! e4+ 37 d1 f6 38 xh6 d8+ 39 e2, and although White has won a pawn, Black retains chances of resisting.

32 exd5 cxd5 33 xb5 b6 34 d3 g7 35 b4 d8 36 a4 a6 37 d4 d6 38 e8 h5 39 a8 f6 40 xa6!

Typical of Alekhine, who always preferred a combinational way of realising an advantage to a positional one. He could, of course, have avoided any 'trickery' and won easily with 40 a5.

40 ... exd4 41 xf6 exf6 42 a5 e5

The bishop cannot stop the white pawns. 42 ... d8 would have been simply met by 43 d4.

43 b5! h4
44 a6 Resigns

TWO KNIGHTS DEFENCE

Sveshnikov-Kuzmin

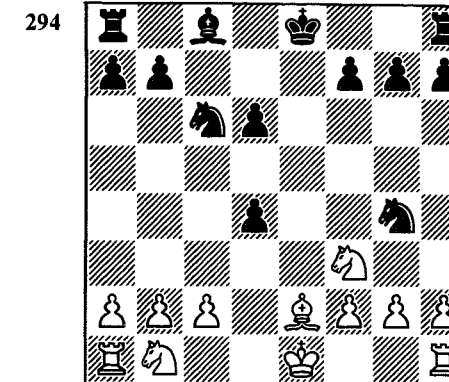
USSR Championship 1st League
Tashkent 1980

1 e4 e5 2 f3 c6 3 c4 f6 4 d4 exd4 5 e5 g4 6 e2 e7 7 f4 d6 8 exd6 xe2+ 9 xe2 exd6 10 exd6 cxd6 (294)

In the opening Black played 5 ... g4?! instead of the usual 5 ... d5.

Natural play has led to an ending which favours White. Black may be able to hold the position after White regains the d4 pawn, but few would be happy to go in for such an ending.

7 ... f6 (instead of 7 ... d6) is more promising; after 8 exf6 xe2+ 9 xe2



xf6 (Sveshnikov-R.Rodriguez, Manila 1982) White's initiative compensated for Black's extra pawn.

11 a3! f5 12 b5 0-0-0 13 bxd4 exd4 14 d4 d7 15 xg4

The simplest solution. White obtains a good knight against an indifferent bishop, with the opponent having an isolated pawn. But it cannot definitely be said that the position is won for White. Experience has shown that, in a minor piece ending, a light-square bishop with an isolated pawn at d5 can oppose fairly successfully an enemy knight. Therefore 15 h3 was perhaps stronger, keeping two pairs of minor pieces on the board.

15 ... xg4 16 f3 d7 17 f2 he8 18 h1 e5 19 d2 de8

Black does everything correctly, leaving his isolated pawn on a square of opposite colour to his bishop, since at d5, with all four rooks on the board, he might not be able to hold it in view of a possible c2-c4.

20 ad1 c7 21 e2 c6 22 b3 e8 23 c4 a5 24 h3 f6 25 c3 g5 26 a3 h5

Both players act logically and consistently. White prepares to seize space and open up the position on the queenside,

while Black tries to gain counterplay on the opposite side of the board.

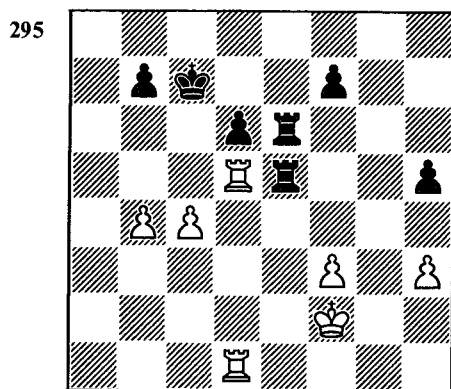
27 b4?

Too direct. 27 ... g4 should have been prevented by 27 ... d4.

27 ... g4!

It transpires that the planned 28 b5 does not work on account of 28 ... xf3.

28 d5+ xd5 29 xd5 axb4 30 axb4 gxf3 31 gxf3 fe6 (295)



As a result of White's haste, he has only a symbolic advantage in the rook ending (three pawn islands against Black's four). The most logical outcome is a draw.

32 1d4 g6?

At this point the players were in time trouble, which explains the errors by both sides. 32 ... f6 was more accurate, preventing 33 f4, on which there follows 33 ... xd5. If in this case 33 g3, then after 33 ... e3 34 f4 xf4 35 xf4 c3 Black has little to fear.

33 f4 xd5 34 xd5 h4 35 g5 e6 36 f3 e1 37 f5?

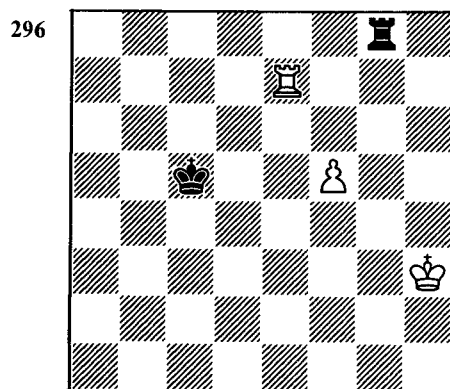
As shown by Sveshnikov, 37 g7 was stronger. After 37 ... c1 38 xf7+ c6

39 b5+ c6 40 f5 xc4 41 f6 c1 42 g4 White would have gained an advantage, perhaps sufficient to win.

37 ... g1! 38 xf7+ c6 39 b5+ c6 40 f5 g3+ 41 f4 xh3 42 d7 h1! 43 xd6+ c5 44 d7 xc4 45 xb7 h3 46 g3 h2 47 f7 xb5?

This makes things significantly more difficult for Black. The simple 47 ... d5 followed by the elimination of the b-pawn by the rook would have led to an immediate draw.

48 g2 g1+ 49 xh2 g8 50 h3 c5 51 e7! (296)



51 ... g5?

The decisive mistake. Black had just one way to save the game: 51 ... d6 52 e1 d7! 53 h4 e8. Now the position reduces to a theoretical win.

52 e5+ d6
53 h4!

This is the whole point.

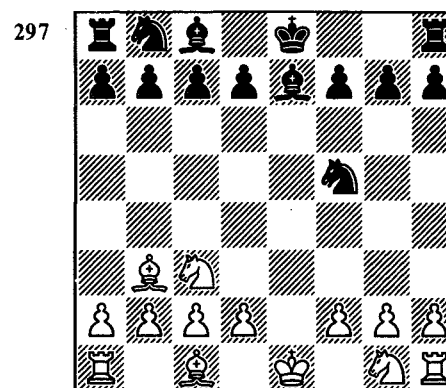
53 ... g1 54 e2 d7 55 h5 g8 56 h6

The pawn cannot be prevented from reaching f7, after which White wins by 'building a bridge'. Black resigns.

VIENNA GAME

Rosselli-Rubinstein
Baden-Baden 1925

1 e4 e5 2 c3 f6 3 c4 xe4 4 h5 d6 5 xe5+ e7 6 xe7+ xe7 7 b3 f5 (297)



In the opening White avoided the critical 5 b3 and took play into an approximately level ending, obviously hoping for a quick draw. But Rubinstein succeeds in demonstrating that a symmetric position without the queens is not necessarily drawn.

8 f3

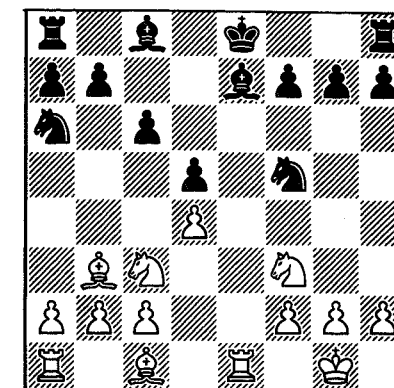
A natural move, which is hard to criticise. But if account is taken of the fact that Black is aiming for the central pawn wedge b7/c6/d5, restricting the white pieces on the queenside, then perhaps White should have played 8 ce2!? intending a similar set-up - b2/c3/d4, with the light-square bishop going to c2.

8 ... c6 9 0-0 d5 10 e1 a6 11 d4

(diagram 298)

11 ... h5!

298



A move of a great master. Black is accumulating small advantages, one of which should be the presence of his king in the centre. But it is uncomfortable to be standing in the 'X-ray' line of the white rook at e1, and Rubinstein prepares a post for his king at f7, after first securing the position of his knight at f5. At the same time he prepares to seize space on the kingside. A typical Rubinstein multi-purpose move.

12 e2 c7 13 c3 f6! 14 g3

The black knight at f5 occupies a splendid position, but the exchange of this knight at g3 by White is a slight concession to the opponent, since his kingside pawn formation is spoiled. Another small achievement by Black.

14 ... xg3 15 hxg3 g5 16 d2?!

Rubinstein did not play ... f5 on his previous move on account of 16 f4. By 15 ... g5 Black has deprived the white bishop of the f4 square, and Rosselli should have exploited the propitious moment to place his other bishop at c2. The meaningless move 16 d2 leads to the loss of several tempi.

16 ... f5 17 e3 d7 18 c1

The bishop at b3 has absolutely no future, and White prepares to exchange it.

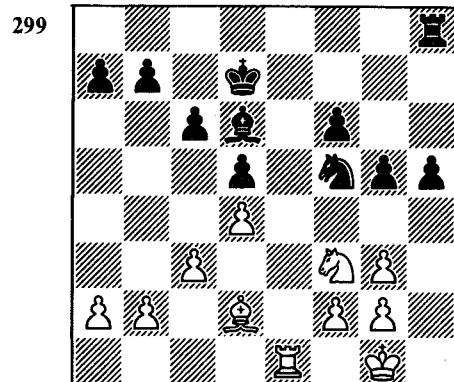
18 ... ♖d6 19 ♖c2 ♖xc2 20 ♖xc2 ♖ae8!

Black needs to exchange one pair of rooks, in order to prepare an attack on the kingside without having to fear an invasion by the opponent along the e-file.

21 ♖c1 ♖xe3
22 ♖xe3 ♖e8!

The second black knight aims for f5, from where its colleague was exchanged.

23 ♖e2 ♖g7 24 ♖d2 ♖f5 25 ♖e1 (299)



In the diagram position Black undoubtedly stands better. A number of small pluses have gradually been accumulated, ensuring him an enduring positional advantage. But quite a few pieces have been exchanged, and White's position seems solid enough. What is the key to it?

25 ... c5!!

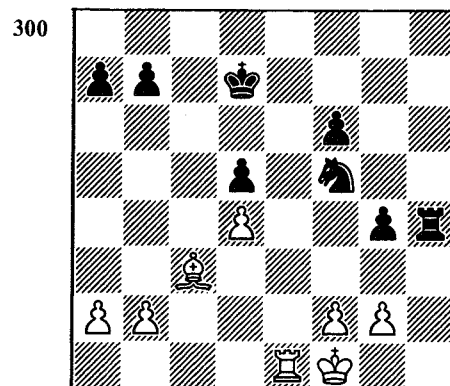
Rubinstein has a splendid feeling for the rhythm of endgame play, and skilfully alternates the quiet strengthening of his position with concrete, explosive play. We give the commentary on this move by grandmaster Razuvayev: "Black activates his bishop, which in this specific instance

more than compensates for the creation of an isolated pawn. To decide on such a move is much more difficult than sacrificing a couple of dozen bishops on h7. It is important that Black has control of d4."

26 dxc5 ♖xc5
27 ♖f1 h4!

Black's attack on g3 continues.

28 gxh4 g4! 29 ♖d4! ♖xd4 30 cxd4 ♖xh4 31 ♖c3 (300)



As a result of the little storm which has passed over the board, the two players have each acquired an isolated pawn in the centre. But whereas the black knight can easily 'gallop round' such an obstacle, for the white bishop it is unsurmountable. Rubinstein has transformed his advantage in the placing of his pieces into a more tangible form, and now he plans a further strengthening of his position. First he must induce the advance of the white pawn from g2 to g3, after which he will comfortably be able to deploy his pieces on light squares in the centre (knight at e4, king at f5). Initially Black's actions are quite energetic, but as the planned set-up approaches, his play becomes rather languid, as if to lull the opponent.

31 ... ♖h1+ 32 ♖e2 ♖h2 33 ♖g1 ♖h4 34

g3 ♖f5 35 b3 ♖e6 36 ♖b2 a6 37 ♖c3 ♖d6!
38 ♖e3 ♖e4 39 ♖e1 ♖f5 40 ♖f1 ♖h8

Black has achieved his planned set-up. Of course, Rubinstein's understanding of the game was markedly superior to that of Rosselli, and in our time, against an experienced player, he would not have been able to reach his goal so smoothly. But the good thing about the classics is that the plans conceived by the great masters were carried out cleanly, without encountering worthy opposition. Nowadays, as a rule, one player tries to carry out a plan, and the other actively prevents its implementation. More and more resources have to be sought. In doing so, both players become tired, often end up in time trouble, and the elegant picture of the game collapses. For an insufficiently competent player who is studying the game, it is often difficult to understand all the ideas of the two players, as they switch from one plan of attack and defence to another, and the mistakes by both sides. But in the games by Lasker, Capablanca, Alekhine, Rubinstein and other outstanding players from the past, against inferior opponents, the plans are carried out with the utmost clarity. This is why any player who is aiming for a deep understanding of chess must thoroughly study and creatively comprehend the best of the chess heritage of the past, and not just study modern-day chess.

41 ♖d3

41 f3? gxf3 42 ♖xf3+ ♖g5 would merely have weakened the g3 pawn and the second rank.

41 ... b5 42 a3 ♖h7 43 ♖a5 ♖h8

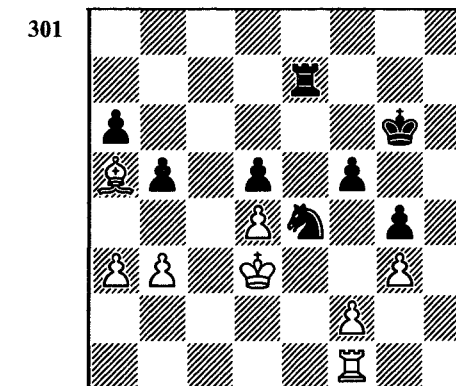
Black's play has become exaggeratedly unhurried. Rubinstein intends to break up White's kingside defences by the advance of his f-pawn, but he does not hurry

to take decisive action, dulling the opponent's vigilance.

44 ♖b4 ♖c8 45 ♖a5 ♖g5 46 ♖d2 ♖e4
47 ♖a5 ♖g6 48 ♖b4 f5

Black camouflages his plan, alternating harmless actions with active moves.

49 ♖a5 ♖h8 50 ♖e3 ♖e8 51 ♖d3 ♖c8
52 ♖b4 ♖c7 53 ♖a5 ♖h7 54 ♖e3 ♖e7 55 ♖d3 (301)



55 ... f4!

The logical culmination of the preceding play.

56 gxf4 ♖h7!
57 ♖d2

57 f3 fails to 57 ... ♖h3 58 ♖e3 ♖g3 59 ♖g1 ♖f5+.

57 ... ♖xd2!!

The concluding stroke. Rubinstein exchanges his 'good' knight for White's 'bad' bishop, and goes into a rook ending a pawn down. But, as Tartakower wittily remarked, rook endings are won thanks to the quality, and not the quantity, of the pawns.

58 ♖xd2 ♖h3 59 f3 gxf3 60 ♖f2

60 ♖e3 would not have saved the game:

60 ... f2+!

60 ... ♖f5 61 ♜e3 ♜g4 62 b4

The pawn ending after 62 f5 ♜xf5 63 ♜xf3+ ♜xf3+ 64 ♜xf3 a5 would have been hopelessly lost for White.

62 ... ♜h1!
63 f5

If 63 ♜xf3 ♜a1!

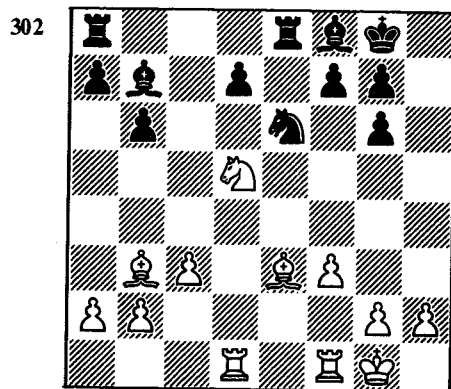
63 ... ♜e1+ 64 ♜d3 ♜e4 White resigns

"One of those complete, splendid, purely Rubinstein games" (Grigoriev).

Alekhine-Euwe

World Championship (27), Holland 1935

1 e4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘f6 3 ♙c4 ♘xe4 4 ♖h5 ♘d6 5 ♙b3 ♙e7 6 ♘f3 ♘c6 7 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 8 ♖xe5 0-0 9 ♘d5 ♜e8 10 0-0 ♙f8 11 ♖f4 c6 12 ♘e3 ♖a5 13 d4 ♖h5 14 c3 ♘e4 15 f3 ♘g5 16 d5 cxd5 17 ♘xd5 ♘e6 18 ♖g4 ♖g6 19 ♙e3 b6 20 ♜ad1 ♙b7 21 ♖xg6 hxg6 (302)



In the opening Euwe did not go in for the sharp variations after 5 ... ♘c6 6 ♘b5 g6 7 ♖f3 f5 8 ♖d5 ♖f6 9 ♘xc7+ ♘d8 10 ♘xa8 b6, but preferred the more restrained 5 ... ♙e7. His seventh move was a mistake.

As shown by Alekhine, Black should have aimed to exchange the bishop at b3, which could have been achieved by 7 ... 0-0 8 ♘d5 ♘d4! 9 0-0 ♘xb3 10 axb3 ♘e8, with approximate equality. By energetic play (9 ♘d5!, 15 f3!, 16 d5!) Alekhine prevented Black's freeing move ... d5 and obtained clearly the better ending. Black has no compensation for the defects in his pawn formation.

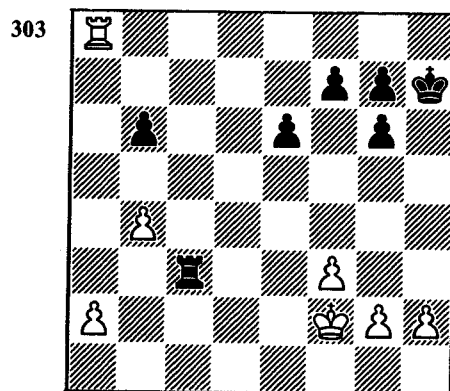
22 ♜fe1 ♜ac8 23 ♜f2 ♙c5 24 ♙xc5 ♙xd5 25 ♙xd5 ♘xc5

The position has simplified. White has available a forcing exchange operation, which leads to a favourable rook ending.

26 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8
27 b4! ♘e6

27 ... ♘a4 is bad: 28 ♙b3!

28 ♙xe6 dxe6 29 ♜d7 ♜c8 30 ♜xa7 ♜xc3 31 ♜a8+ ♜h7 (303)



This was the position for which Alekhine was aiming when he began the exchanges on move 26. White has a queenside pawn majority with the pawn at b6 chronically weak, and his king is much better placed.

32 a4?

Rook endings have a number of rules, which often differ substantially from the

general principles of other endings. In sharp endings with pawn majorities on opposite wings a player must usually advance his own pawns with the aid of his king, leaving his rook to deal with the opponent's passed pawns. We give Alekhine's own commentary:

"The main disadvantage of the text move is that it leaves the squares a3 and b3 free for the black rook, which therefore from now on can be dislodged from the third rank only at cost of valuable time. Correct – and simple enough – was 32 ♜e2! after which the black rook would be (1) either dragged into a purely passive position – as in the actual game – after 33 ♘d2 etc.; (2) or forced to undertake immediately the counterattack 32 ... ♜c2+ with the result 33 ♘d3 ♜xg2 34 ♜c4! – and one would not need to count *tempi* in order to realise that White's passed pawn, supported, if necessary, by the king, will be by far the quickest."

32 ... ♜b3?

As aptly expressed by Gligorić, here the law of mutual mistakes operated. As shown by Alekhine, 32 ... e5! should have been played without wasting time, when only an exact analysis can reveal whether or not White's advantage is sufficient for a win.

33 b5 g5 34 ♜e2 e5 35 ♘d2 f6

Variations such as 35 ... ♜b2+ 36 ♜c3 ♜xg2 37 ♜a6 ♜a2 38 ♜b3 ♜a1 39 ♜b2 could not satisfy Euwe.

36 ♜c2 ♜b4
37 ♜c3 ♜d4

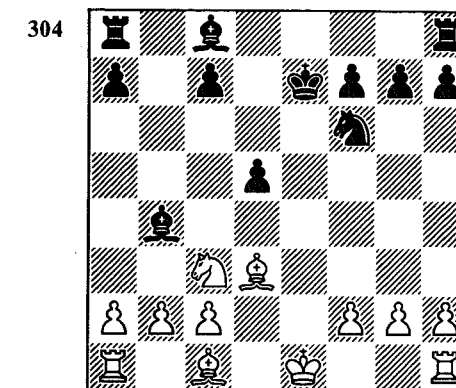
Black has prevented White from creating two passed pawns on the queenside, but to win Alekhine needs only one.

38 ♜a6 ♜g6 39 ♜xb6 ♜xa4 40 ♜a6 ♜d4 41 b6 Black resigns

SCOTCH GAME

Radulov-Pinter
Pernik 1978

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 d4 exd4 5 ♘xd4 ♙b4 6 ♘xc6 bxc6 7 ♙d3 d5 8 exd5 ♖e7+ 9 ♖e2 cxd5 10 ♖xe7+ ♜xe7 (304)



The queen check at e7 has been known for a long time in the theory of the Scotch Game. 9 ... cxd5 is inaccurate. ECO recommends 9 ... ♖xe2+ 10 ♜xe2 cxd5 (10 ... ♘d5!? is simpler), promising Black a roughly equal game. Possibly Pinter was intending to play in analogy with the game Czerniak-Portisch, Amsterdam 1963, which went 11 0-0 ♜d8 with equality, but a surprise awaited him.

11 ♙d2!

It transpires that White has no intention of castling kingside. Castling long followed by ♜he1 will be much more effective, after which all his pieces will be grouped in the centre, and he will be able to think about exploiting the defects in Black's queenside pawns.

11 ... c6 12 0-0-0 ♜d8 13 ♘a4! ♙d6

Black is forced to avoid the exchange of dark-square bishops, since White would

gain control of c5. The attempt to repair his pawn formation using his king after 13 ... ♔xd2+ 14 ♔xd2 ♕d6 would be too risky – White could ‘welcome’ the king with 15 c4.

14 ♖e3 ♕f8 15 h3 h6 16 ♔he1!

The routine 16 ♖c5 would have been less strong. After 16 ... ♔xc5 17 ♕xc5 ♕d7 18 ♕a4 g6! (preventing 19 ♖f5) Black would gradually have repaired his pawn formation. Radulov does not hurry to force the play and makes a strengthening move, rightly assuming that it is much more difficult for Black to maintain the tension.

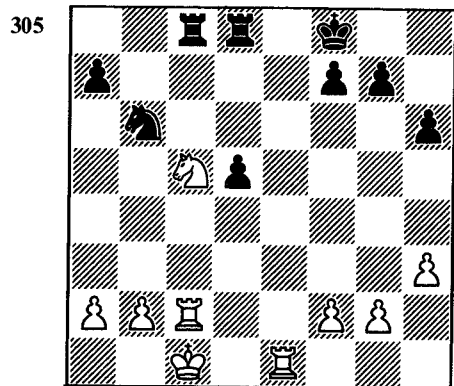
16 ... ♕d7
17 c4!

A blow at the centre, which is much stronger with the black knight at d7.

17 ... ♖b4 18 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 19 ♔xd2 ♖b7 20 ♖f5! ♕b6 21 ♕c5 ♖c8

21 ... ♔b8 22 ♕xb7 ♔xb7 23 cxd5 held little promise for Black.

22 ♖xc8 ♔axc8 23 cxd5 cxd5 24 ♔c2 (305)



Significant changes have taken place in the ending. Black has finally coordinated his forces, but his position is ‘embellished’

by isolated pawns at a7 and d5. With his next few moves Pinter tries to bring his king to the centre and goes in for further simplification, which is to White’s advantage. The sharp 24 ... a5!? came into consideration, trying for counterplay on the queenside.

24 ... ♔e8 25 ♔xe8+ ♕xe8 26 b3 ♕e7 27 a4 ♕d6 28 ♕b7+! ♕e5 29 a5 ♔xc2+ 30 ♕xc2 ♕c8

It is said that knight endings are to some extent a variety of pawn endings. Of course, this is not always true, but the given ending belongs to the rules rather than the exceptions. White’s outside passed pawn on the queenside is no more difficult to realise than in a pawn ending.

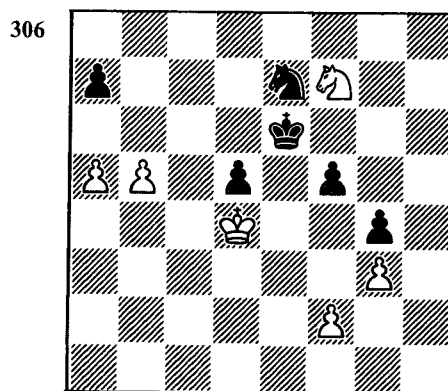
31 ♕d3 f5 32 b4 g5 33 b5 h5 34 ♕d8! g4 35 hxg4 hxg4 36 g3

White has easily suppressed his opponent’s counterplay on the kingside. Now he begins evicting the black king from the centre.

36 ... ♕d6
37 ♕d4 ♕e7

37 ... ♕d7 38 ♕c6 ♕d6 39 a6 is hopeless for Black.

38 ♕f7+ ♕e6 (306)



The black pieces are rather a long way from the queenside, and Radulov forces a win in the shortest way – by a combination.

39 ♕c5!! d4 40 ♕g5+ ♕f6 41 ♕h7+ ♕g7 42 ♕xd4 ♕xh7 43 ♕c5

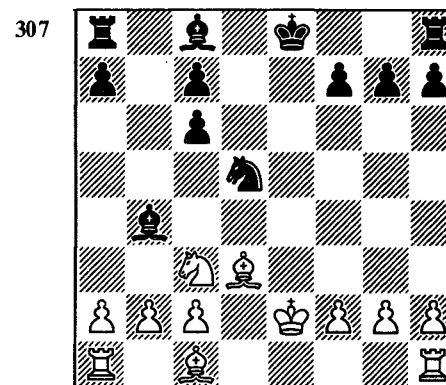
The black knight is unable to counter the advance of White’s king and pawns.

43 ... ♕c8 44 ♕c6 f4 45 ♕d7 fxg3 46 fxg3 ♕b6 47 axb6 Black resigns

Zhuravlyev-Geller

Lvov 1977

1 e4 e5 2 ♕f3 ♕c6 3 d4 exd4 4 ♕xd4 ♕f6 5 ♕c3 ♖b4 6 ♕xc6 bxc6 7 ♖d3 d5 8 exd5 ♕e7+ 9 ♕e2 ♕xe2+ 10 ♕xe2 ♕xd5 (307)



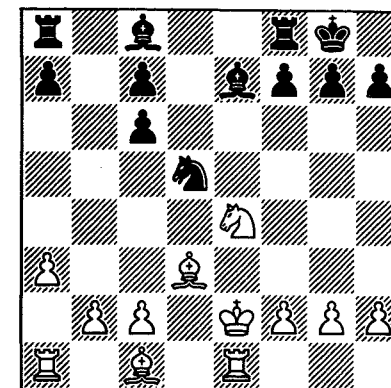
Capturing on d5 with the knight is more promising than capturing with the pawn. Black’s active piece play compensates for his deformed position.

11 ♕e4

The only way to try for an advantage. 11 ♕xd5 cxd5 12 ♖f4 ♖a5 13 c4 ♖b7 would have led to simplification and a quick draw.

11 ... 0-0 12 a3 ♖e7 13 ♔e1 (308)

308



White intends to withdraw his king to f1 and gradually complete his development. Black must work out a plan of active counterplay.

13 ... a5!!

The play of grandmaster Geller has always been distinguished by his aiming to delve as deeply as possible into the essence of the position. And here he succeeds in finding an unusual manoeuvre, the aim of which is to exploit the minimal weakening of White’s queenside caused by 12 a3.

14 ♖d2 a4
15 c4

The knight at d5 is formidably placed, and Zhuravlyev’s desire to drive it away is understandable. But in doing so White’s position in the centre and on the queenside becomes less secure. However, it is difficult to suggest anything better. Black was already preparing to put pressure on the opponent’s queenside by 15 ... f5 and 16 ... ♖f6.

15 ... ♕b6
16 ♖b4?

White makes a serious mistake and ends up in a difficult position. The idea of

exchanging the dark-square bishops and occupying c5 with his knight is positionally attractive but tactically unrealisable. He should have played 16 ♖e3 ♖e6 17 ♖ac1 ♖a5!?, with a complicated battle where Black has fully equal chances.

16 ... ♖xb4 17 axb4 ♖e6 18 ♖ec1 ♖fe8!

It transpires that the knight cannot go to c5.

19 ♖f3

19 ♖f1 could have been met by 19 ... ♖xc4.

19 ... ♖ad8
20 ♖f1

20 ♖c5 would all the same have been met by 20 ... ♖d4.

20 ... ♖d4 21 ♖e3 ♖ed8 22 c5 f5!

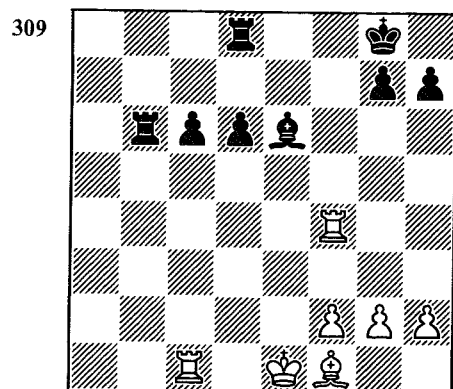
A genuine attack on the white king commences.

23 ♖d6

There is nothing better. 23 ♖g5 f4+ is

totally bad.

23 ... ♖xb4 24 cxb6 f4+ 25 ♖e2 ♖xb2+ 26 ♖e1 cxd6 27 ♖xa4 ♖xb6 28 ♖xf4 (309)



Here we can take stock. Black is a pawn up and has two connected passed pawns in the centre. The game concluded as follows:

28 ... c5 29 ♖e2 ♖b2 30 ♖f1 ♖db8 31 ♖d3 ♖d2 32 ♖f3 ♖d5 33 ♖e3 ♖bb2 34 ♖e2 ♖xg2+ 35 ♖xg2 ♖xe2 36 ♖f3 ♖b8 37 ♖d1 ♖e6 White resigns

Alekhine's Defence and Centre Counter Game

At the present time these two openings are rarely employed in top-level chess. The main reason, in our opinion, is the following: by simple means and without the slightest risk, White can obtain in them the more promising position, in which Black can hardly hope for anything more than equality.

Endings arising from Alekhine's Defence and the Centre Counter Game have features in common, and we have decided to combine them in one chapter. We begin with the game **Steiner-Alekhine**, which laid the basis of the new opening. The ending in **Radulov-Smejkal** is typical of Alekhine's Defence, just as that in **Suetin-Shamkovich** is typical of the Centre Counter Game.

The pawn formation in the remaining endings can arise from either of the two openings. The play in positions of this type tends to favour White, since he gains a definite advantage at an early stage of the game. The authors do not see the main aim of the present chapter as being to give a detailed analysis of endings with all types of pawn formations and from all variations of both openings, but to acquaint the reader with the general nature of endgame play from Alekhine's Defence and the Centre Counter Game.

Steiner-Alekhine
Budapest 1921

1 e4 ♖f6 2 e5 ♖d5 3 d4 d6 4 ♖g5 dxe5 5 dxe5 ♖c6 6 ♖b5 ♖f5 7 ♖f3 ♖b4 8 ♖a3 ♖xd1+ 9 ♖xd1

This was the first tournament game in which Alekhine's Defence was employed. Theory now regards 4 ♖g5 as a deviation by White from the modern variation, beginning with 4 ♖f3. In a correspondence game Lutikov-Kopylov, 1968, White played 6 ♖f3 (instead of 6 ♖b5), but after 6 ... ♖g4 7 ♖b5 h6 8 ♖d2 e6 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 h3 ♖h5 11 ♖e1 a6 12 ♖e2 ♖d7 he did not gain any particular advantage from the opening. By the clever 7 ... ♖b4! Alekhine forced his opponent to give up a pawn, since 9 ♖xd1 0-0-0+ 10 ♖c1 f6 would have been unsatisfactory for White. However, despite the exchange of queens, the tactical battle is still in full swing, and as yet it is difficult to draw any conclusions.

9 ... ♖xc2+ 10 ♖xc2 ♖xc2 11 ♖c1 ♖e4 12 ♖d4

If 12 e6 then 12 ... f6 and 13 ... 0-0-0.

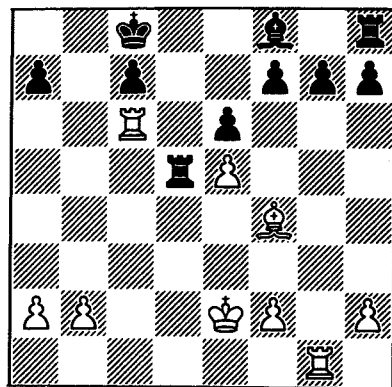
12 ... ♖xg2
13 ♖g1 0-0-0!

Black would have had to foresee this move when he embarked on the complications with 7 ... ♖b4.

14 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 15 ♖xc6 bxc6 16 ♖xc6 ♖d5 17 ♖f4 e6 18 ♖e2 (310)

The position has stabilised. Black is a pawn up, but White has a lead in develop-

310



ment. How is Black to neutralise the opponent's pressure? Alekhine finds a convincing solution.

18 ... ♗c5!

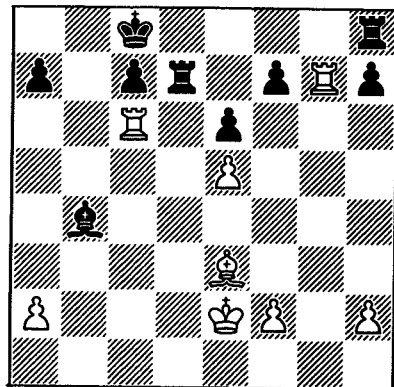
Here are the variations given by Alekhine, demonstrating that 18 ... ♗c5! is the only continuation to promise Black winning chances:

"18 ... g6 19 ♖gcl ♜d7 20 ♙e3 ♗b7 21 ♜6c3 ♙g7 22 ♜b3+ ♗a8 23 ♙xa7! ♙xe5 24 ♜c4 with the better game for White.

18 ... g5 19 ♜xg5! ♙h6 20 ♜g4 ♙xf4 21 ♜xf4 ♜xe5+ 22 ♗f1 ♗b7 23 ♜c3 and Black has no chance of winning."

19 b4! ♙xb4 20 ♜xg7 ♜d7 21 ♙e3 (311)

311



"Black is again faced with a very

difficult problem. How is he to secure the defence of his weak pawns on both wings? His lone bishop is insufficient for this task, since if it be brought to b6 via a5, thereby adequately protecting his right wing, White would transfer his attack to the opposite wing and would eventually win at least a pawn by ♜c4 followed by ♙h4.

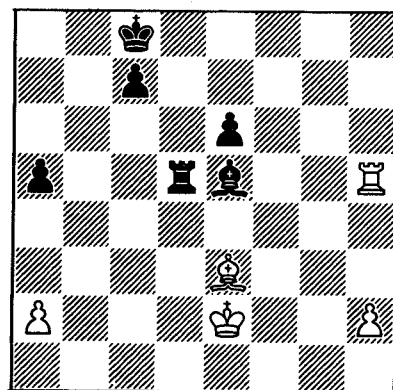
On the other hand, if Black withdraws his bishop to f8, in order to secure the protection of his left wing, White would take the queenside as his objective and would obtain a strong attack by ♜g4 followed by ♙a4.

Black must therefore provisionally avoid the displacement of his bishop, in order to be able to utilise it for the defence of whichever wing is threatened.

His following moves are dictated by the above considerations" (Alekhine).

21 ... a5! 22 ♜c4 h5 23 ♙h4 ♙c3! 24 ♜g5 ♜d5 25 f4 f6! 26 ♜gxf5 ♜xf5 27 ♙xh5 fxe5 28 fxe5 ♙xe5 (312)

312



The fierce battle has ended successfully for Black: he has simplified the position and retained his extra pawn. But as long as White has his h-pawn, Black cannot expect a quiet life.

29 ♙h7?

29 h4 was essential. Now White loses his main trump.

29 ... ♜b5 30 ♗f3 ♜b2 31 ♙h5 ♙xh2 32 ♜xa5 ♙d6

Only now can Black draw breath. The position is a technical one, and all that is required of Alekhine is calm and accurate play.

33 ♗e4 ♗d7 34 ♙d4 ♜d2!

Black prevents the possibility of the white king going to c4 via d3.

35 ♙e3 ♜e2 36 ♗d3 ♜e1! 37 ♙d4 ♜c1 38 ♙e3 ♜d1+ 39 ♗e4 ♜e1 40 ♗d3 e5!

Black has been preparing this advance for a long time, and he makes it in favourable circumstances.

41 ♙f2 ♜f1 42 ♙e3 ♗e6 43 ♗e4 ♜h1 44 ♙f2 ♜h2 45 ♙e3 ♜h4+ 46 ♗d3 ♙b4!

Alekhine gains more and more space. He now has available the important d5 square for his king.

47 ♜a7 c5 48 a3 c4+ 49 ♗e2 ♙d6 50 ♜a8 ♜h2+ 51 ♗d1 ♜h3! 52 ♗d2 ♗d5 53 ♜d8 c3+! 54 ♗e2

In the event of 54 ♗d3 Alekhine was intending to win by 54 ... c2 55 ♜c8 ♙e7! 56 ♜xc2 ♙g5 57 ♜e2 e4+ 58 ♗d2 ♜xe3! 59 ♜xe3 ♗d4.

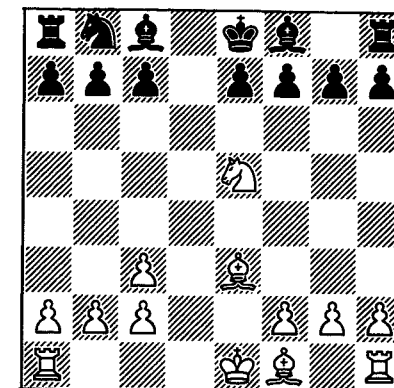
54 ... ♗e4! 55 ♜xd6 ♜xe3+ 56 ♗f2 ♜d3 57 ♜c6 ♜d2+ 58 ♗e1 ♗d3 59 ♜d6+ ♗c2 60 ♜e6 ♜d5 61 ♗e2 ♗b3 62 ♜c6 c2 White resigns

Radulov-Smejkal

Siegen Olympiad 1970

1 e4 ♗f6 2 e5 ♗d5 3 ♗c3 ♗xc3 4 dxc3 d6 5 ♗f3 dxe5 6 ♙xd8+ ♗xd8 7 ♗xe5 ♗e8 8 ♙e3 (313)

313



In this variation of Alekhine's Defence the exchange of queens takes place as early as the 6th move. What is more important – White's lead in development or Black's extra pawn on the kingside? Theory does not give a definite answer to this question. Both sides have their pluses and can hope for success, and in general the position can be considered roughly equal.

8 ... f6

8 ... ♗d7 has also been played.

9 ♗d3 ♗c6?!

9 ... e5 is more in keeping with Black's previous move, to answer 10 f4 with 10 ... e4.

10 f4! e6

11 0-0-0 b6

The move of the b-pawn gives the opponent an opportunity for active play by the advance of his doubled pawns, but how otherwise is Black to complete his queenside development?

12 c4 ♙b7

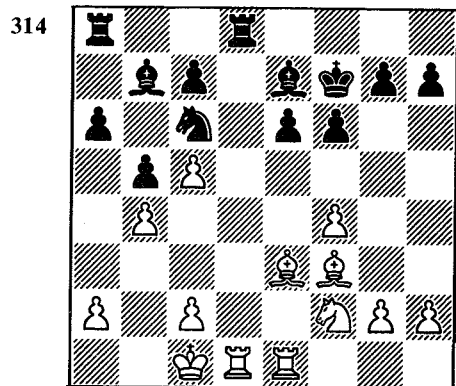
13 c5 b5

In the event of 13 ... ♜d8 White need not have hurried to undouble his pawns,

but could have developed his offensive with 14 b4.

14 ♖e2 ♖e7 15 ♖he1 ♖f7 16 ♖f2 a6 17 ♖f3 ♖hd8 18 b4 (314)

Both players have consistently improved their positions. White has arranged his minor pieces in the best way possible, while Black has finally completed his development and coordinated his rooks. Now the most natural action on Black's part would have been to try and go into a minor piece ending by exchanging both pairs of rooks. Instead, the Czech grandmaster unnecessarily weakens his b5 pawn.



18 ... a5?! 19 a3 axb4 20 axb4 f5?!

Here too it would have been preferable to exchange 20 ... ♖xd1+ and then go into the minor piece ending with 21 ... ♖a1+.

21 ♖xd8 ♖xd8?

This was Black's last chance to exchange both pairs of rooks by 21 ... ♖xd8!, to answer 22 ♖xb7 with 22 ... ♖a1+! 23 ♖d2 ♖xe1 and 24 ... ♖xb7 with drawing chances. Now White prepares the pawn break c2-c4, and by the threat of invading with his rook along one of the open files he significantly increases his positional advantage.

22 ♖b2! ♖f6+ 23 ♖b3 ♖b8 24 ♖d3

♖e7 25 ♖xb7 ♖xb7 26 c4! c6 27 cxb5 ♖xb5 28 ♖e2!

Black has escaped from the pin on the h1-a8 diagonal, but his position has not improved. White no longer has doubled pawns on the queenside, and he is threatening a decisive invasion with his rook along the a-file.

28 ... ♖d5 29 ♖c1 ♖b7 30 ♖a2 ♖c3 31 ♖a6 ♖b5 32 ♖b2 ♖a7 33 ♖b6! ♖c7 34 ♖e5 ♖xe5 35 ♖xe5+

White effectively has an extra pawn on the queenside, plus an overwhelming superiority in the placing of his pieces.

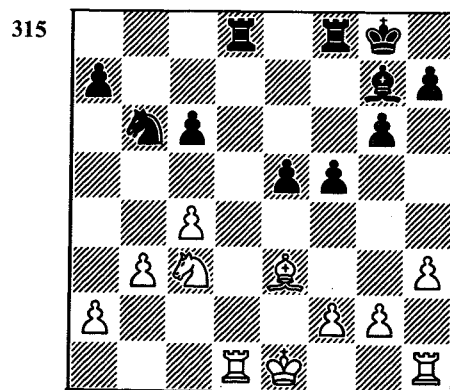
35 ... ♖f6 36 h4 g6 37 ♖b8 ♖c8 38 ♖c4 h6 39 b5 cxb5+ 40 ♖xb5 g5 41 g3 gxf4 42 gxf4 ♖e7 43 c6 ♖d6 44 ♖c4+ ♖e7 45 ♖c5

Black resigns. On 45 ... h5 the simplest is 46 ♖b7 ♖d8 47 ♖d6.

Klovan-Vasyukov

36th USSR Championship, Alma-Ata 1969

1 e4 ♖f6 2 e5 ♖d5 3 c4 ♖b6 4 d4 d6 5 exd6 cxd6 6 ♖c3 g6 7 ♖e2 ♖g7 8 ♖f3 ♖g4 9 ♖e3 0-0 10 b3 ♖c6 11 h3 ♖xf3 12 ♖xf3 f5 13 ♖d2 e5 14 dxe5 dxe5 15 ♖xc6 bxc6 16 ♖xd8 ♖axd8 17 ♖d1 (315)



In the exchange variation with ... g6 by Black, White chose an unusual plan. He decided to manage without castling (1/0-0 d5 would lead to familiar theoretical set-ups), and the game entered unexplored territory, and then soon went into the endgame.

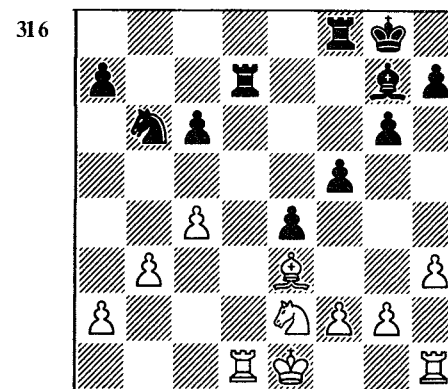
In the ending both sides have a flank pawn majority, with the d-file open.

Black's queenside pawns have been compromised, but he has an excellent pawn configuration on the kingside. White's minor pieces are active, but Black has a better chance of seizing the d-file. In general, the position is close to being equal, although a slight preference should nevertheless be given to White.

17 ... e4?!

This 'active' move deprives Black's kingside pawns of their mobility. It would have been simpler to exchange rooks, occupy the d-file with check, and play 19 ... ♖f8. In this case the game would most probably have gone into a drawn minor piece ending.

18 ♖e2 ♖d7 (316)



19 g4!

In this way White completely devalues Black's kingside pawn majority, and his

king's rook comes into play on the g-file.

19 ... ♖e5 20 gxf5 gxf5 21 ♖g1+ ♖f7 22 ♖g5!

Black's kingside pawns are gradually transformed from a strength into a weakness.

22 ... ♖xd1+ 23 ♖xd1 ♖e6 24 ♖h5 f4?

This impulsive move leads immediately to a hopeless situation. After 24 ... ♖f7 Black's position would have been unpleasant, but he would still have had considerable defensive resources.

25 ♖d4! ♖d7 26 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 27 ♖d4+ ♖d6 28 c5+! ♖d5 29 ♖xc6!

Reaching a technically won rook ending.

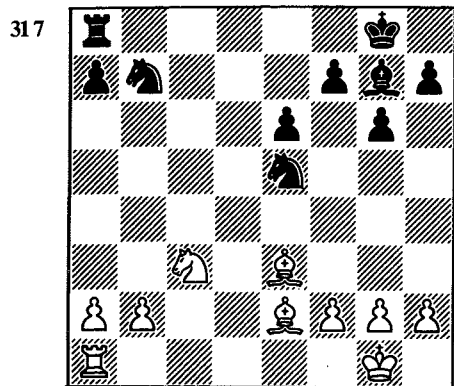
29 ... ♖xc6 30 ♖xe5 e3 31 fxe3 fxe3 32 ♖e2 ♖f2+ 33 ♖xe3 ♖xa2 34 ♖d4 ♖d2+ 35 ♖c4 ♖c2+ 36 ♖b4 a5+ 37 ♖xa5 ♖c3 38 ♖b4 ♖xh3 39 ♖e6+ ♖c7 40 ♖c4 ♖h1 41 b4 Black resigns

Geller-Tan

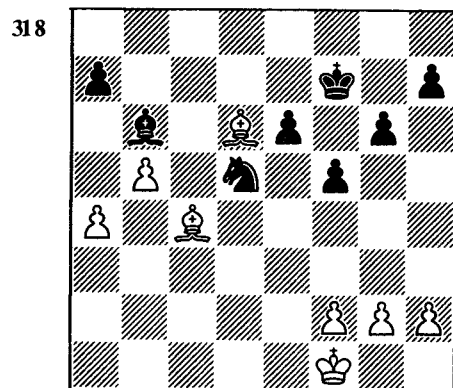
Petropolis Interzonal 1973

1 e4 d5 2 exd5 ♖f6 3 d4 ♖xd5 4 ♖f3 ♖g4 5 ♖e2 ♖c6 6 0-0 g6 7 c4 ♖b6 8 d5 ♖xf3 9 ♖xf3 ♖e5 10 ♖e2 ♖g7 11 ♖c3 c6 12 ♖b3 0-0 13 ♖d1 cxd5 14 c5 ♖bd7 15 ♖xd5 e6 16 ♖xb7 ♖xc5 17 ♖xd8 ♖xb7 18 ♖xa8 ♖xa8 19 ♖e3 (317)

From the opening White gained an enduring positional advantage. Instead of 6 ... g6 Black usually plays 6 ... e6, but does not normally gain full equality. The great simplification arising after 14 c5! has led to an ending where White has a clear positional advantage. His two bishops and the possibility of creating an outside passed pawn on the queenside give him every reason to count on a win.



19 ... ♖d6 20 ♙c5 ♜ec4 21 ♜c1 ♜c8 22 ♜b4 ♜b6 23 ♙xd6 ♜xc3 24 ♜xc3 ♙xc3 25 ♜f1 ♜d5 26 ♜b5 ♙d4 27 ♜a4 ♙b6 28 ♙d3 ♜f5 29 ♙c4 ♜f7 (318)



30 ♙xd5

An important aspect of the advantage of the two bishops is the possibility of exchanging one of them for an enemy minor piece. The bishop ending is hopeless for Black.

30 ... exd5 31 ♜e2 ♜e6 32 ♙b4?!

A natural move, but not the strongest. As shown by Averbakh, 32 ♙b8 was stronger, tying the black bishop to the a7 pawn.

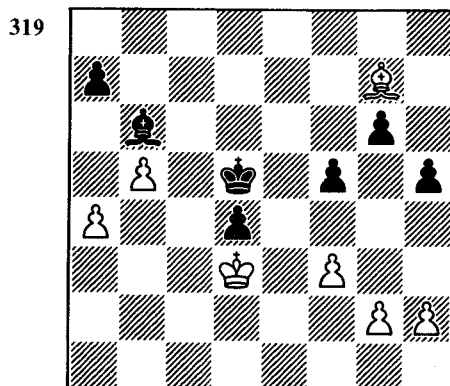
32 ... d4!

The best practical chance. Black's central pawn moves onto a square of the colour of his bishop, but his king is able to occupy d5 and this creates the possibility of counterplay by attacking White's queen-side pawns.

33 ♜d3?

The centralisation of the king is hardly ever incorrect, but it can be ill-timed. The king move to d3 throws away the win. White could have won by 33 a5! ♙c7 (33 ... d3+ 34 ♜xd3 ♙xf2 35 ♜c4 and 35 ♙c5) 34 ♙c5! ♜d5 35 ♙xa7 ♙xa5 36 ♜d3 ♙c3 37 ♙b6 ♙b2 38 ♙d8 ♜c5 39 ♜b6 ♜c6 40 ♙f6 (Averbakh).

33 ... ♜d5 34 ♙f8 ♙a5 35 ♙g7 ♙b6 36 ♜f3 h5 (319)



37 h4

"At first one feels inclined to attach a question mark to this move, since it is obviously anti-positional. However, I can understand why Geller decided on it. The point is that the natural 37 ♙f6 wins the d4 pawn, since 37 ... ♙c5 is bad on account of 38 a5. But Black can reply 37 ... ♜c5! and after 38 ♙xd4+ ♜b4 exchange his weak pawn for a healthy opposing pawn. Seeing that he will be unable to win by normal means (the result of his

mistake on the 33rd move), Geller resorts to extreme measures – he earmarks for the h4 pawn the role of a bait, and simultaneously fixes the pawn at g6, hoping in the distant future to approach it with his king" (Averbakh).

37 ... ♙c5?

Geller's idea justifies itself. By 37 ... ♙c5 Black could have gained a draw.

38 a5 ♙b4 39 ♜b6 axb6 40 a6?

A mistake. After 40 axb6 ♜c6 41 ♜xd4 it is hard to see how Black can draw.

40 ... ♜c6
41 ♙xd4 ♙e1?

Black sealed this losing move. After 41 ... b5! 42 ♙f2 ♙a5 43 ♜c2 ♙b4 44 ♜b3 ♙d2 a draw would have been imminent (indicated by Averbakh).

42 a7 ♜b7
43 ♙xb6 ♙g3

On 43 ... ♙xh4 there would have followed 44 f4! ♙g3 (44 ... g5 45 ♙d8) 45 ♙e3, when the white king approaches the g6 pawn.

44 ♜e2!

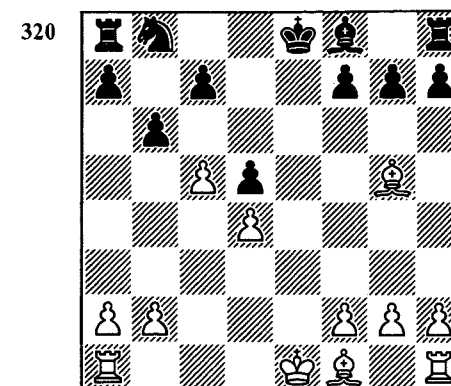
With the idea on 44 ... f4 of playing 45 ♙f2.

44 ... ♙e5 45 ♙f2 ♙d6 46 ♜d3 ♙c7 47 ♜c4 f4 48 ♜d5 ♙d8 49 ♜e5 g5 50 hxg5 ♙xg5 51 ♜f5 ♙h6 52 ♙c5 Black resigns

Suetin-Shamkovich

32nd USSR Championship, Kiev 1965

1 e4 d5 2 exd5 ♜f6 3 d4 ♜xd5 4 ♜f3 ♙g4 5 c4 ♜b6 6 c5 ♙xf3 7 ♜xf3 ♜d5 8 ♜b3 b6 9 ♙g5 ♜d7 10 ♜c3 e6 11 ♜xd5 ♜xd5 12 ♜xd5 exd5 (320)



Going into the endgame was the simplest way for White to realise his great positional advantage. At the time 6 c5!? was an innovation, for which Suetin even received a special prize. The idea is to continue ♜b3, both in reply to 6 ... ♜d5? and after the continuation in the game. Later it was established that Black should have played 6 ... ♜d6d7!, in order to answer 7 ♜b3 with 7 ... ♜c6, with good counterplay. By the energetic 9 ♙g5! White prevented the opponent from quietly completing his development, and Black's last chance of resisting was first to exchange knights with 10 ... ♜xc3 11 bxc3 and only then play 11 ... e6.

13 c6!

Were it not for this tactical nuance, Black's position would be quite tolerable. But now his knight and queen's rook can effectively play no part in the game, and it is not surprising that it concludes within fifteen moves.

13 ... ♙e7 14 ♙e3 ♜d8 15 ♜c1 ♜e8 16 g3!

White is keenly aware of the main pawn weakness in Black's position. With the loss of the d5 pawn, the role of the c6 pawn is strengthened.

16 ... ♗g5 17 ♗g2! ♗xe3 18 fxe3 ♗xe3+
19 ♗d2 ♗e6 20 ♗hf1! f6 21 ♗f5!

The conclusive blow.

21 ... ♗d6 22 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 23 ♗xd5 ♗e7

24 ♗g2 ♗a6 25 a3 ♗d8 26 ♗e1+ ♗d6 27
b4 b5 28 d5

Threatening mate at e6.

28 ... ♗c5 29 bxc5+ Black resigns

Index of Games

(bold type indicates that this player had the white pieces)

- ALAPIN-Rubinstein 213
- ALEKHINE-Bogoljubow 225
-Euwe 232
-Marshall 218
-Steiner 237
-Teichmann 80
-Yates 116
- ANDERSSON-Hazai 205
- ANTOSHIN-Botvinnik 127
- ARNASON-Kasparov 33
- ASEYEV-Sturua 93
- ATKINS-Capablanca 176
- AVERBAKH-Larsen 5
- AZMAIPARASHVILI-Razuvaev 211
- BARCZA-Matanović 153
-Szabo 164
-Szabo 185
- BARDEN-Taimanov 50
- BEBCHUK-Lepyoshkin 15
- BENKO-Bronstein 195
- BEREZOV-Zaitsev I. 124
- BERTOK-Geller 27
- BOGOLJUBOW-Alekhine 225
-Capablanca 95
-Lasker 107
- BOLBOCHAN-Geller 28
- BOLESLAVSKY-Bronstein 178
-Ivashin 114
-Keres 85
-Levenfish 24
-Lyublinsky 61
- Shcherbakov 217
-Stern 26
-Stoltz 25
-Vasyukov 47
- BONDAREVSKY-Smyslov 75
- BOTVINNIK-Antoshin 127
-Bronstein 159
-Ilyin-Genevsky 160
-Kholmov 201
-Matulović 203
-Smyslov 128
-Smyslov 131
-Spassky 183
-Tal 181
-Tolush 128
-Unzicker 199
- BOUAZIZ-Geller 2
- BRONSTEIN-Benko 195
-Boleslavsky 178
-Botvinnik 159
-Bykhovsky 214
-Zhuravlyev 138
- BYKHOVSKY-Bronstein 214
- CAPABLANCA-Atkins 176
-Bogoljubow 95
-Lasker 70
- CHERNIN-Timman 146
- CHIGORIN-Pillsbury 216
- DAMJANOVIĆ-Stein 62
- DOLMATOV-Lechtinsky 190
- DOMONT-Illescas 38
- ERMENKOV-Tal 52
- ESTRIN-Haag 82

- EUWE-**Alekhine** 232
 -Smyslov 90
- FAIBISOVICH-Okhotnik 186
- FILIP-**Larsen** 180
- FISCHER-**Geller** 29
 -Portisch 72
 -Rossetto 35
 -Taimanov 21
- FTACNIK-**Tal** 56
- GELLER-Bertok 27
 -Bolbochan 28
 -Bouaziz 2
 -Fischer 29
 -Grushevsky 106
 -Kuzmin 209
 -Lerner 208
 -Tal 58
 -Tan 241
 -Zhuravlyev 235
- GLIGORIĆ-Keres 88
 -Stahlberg 162
 -Stahlberg 169
- GRUSHEVSKY-Geller 106
- GUREVICH M.-**Sieiro** 125
- HAAG-Estrin 82
- HAZAI-**Andersson** 205
- HORT-**Ivkov** 96
- ILLESCAS-Domont 38
- ILYIN-GENEVSKY-Botvinnik 160
- INKIOV-**Radulov** 48
- IVASHIN-Boleslavsky 114
- IVKOV-Hort 96
 -Mohrlock 121
 -Taimanov 44
- JANOWSKI-**Lasker** 68
- KAGAN-Keres 73
- KAN-**Rabinovich I.** 220
- KARPOV-**Kasparov** 224
- Larsen** 189
 -Taimanov 37
- KASPAROV-**Arnason** 33
 -Karpov 224
- KERES-**Boleslavsky** 85
 -Gligorić 88
 -Kagan 73
 -Klundt 108
 -Panno 59
 -Petrosian 41
 -Portisch 101
 -Simagin 110
- KHOLMOV-Botvinnik 201
- KLOVAN-Shereshevsky 150
 -Vasyukov 240
- KLUNDT-Keres 108
- KOCHIEV-**Tal** 14
- KÖNIG-Smyslov 97
- KORCHNOI-Stahlberg 144
- KOSTRO-Moiseyev 16
- KUZMIN-**Geller** 209
 -Sveshnikov 227
- LARSEN-**Averbakh** 5
 -Filip 180
 -Karpov 189
- LASKER-Bogoljubow 107
 -Capablanca 70
 -Janowski 68
 -Steinitz 66
 -Tarrasch 78
- LECHTINSKY-**Dolmatov** 190
- LEPYOSHKIN-Bebchuk 15
- LERNER-**Geller** 208
- LETELIER-**Smyslov** 134
- LEVENFISH-Boleslavsky 24
 -Rabinovich I. 4
- LJUBOJEVIĆ-Portisch 55
 -Portisch 187
- LOBRON-Yusupov 83

- LOGINOV-**Shereshevsky** 206
- LUKIN-Suetin 63
- LYUBLINSKY-Boleslavsky 61
- MARIĆ-Marović 158
- MAROVIĆ-**Marić** 158
- MARSHALL-**Alekhine** 218
- MATANOVIĆ-Barcza 153
- MATULOVIC-Botvinnik 203
- MOHRLOCK-Ivkov 121
- MOISEYEV-**Kostro** 16
- NAJDORF-**Tal** 32
- NEDELJKOVIĆ-Volpert 6
- NEZHMETDINOV-Vasyukov 17
- NIMZOWITSCH-Vajda 119
- OKHOTNIK-**Faibisovich** 186
- PADEVSKY-Smyslov 224
- PANNO-**Keres** 59
- PARMA-Puc 156
- PETROSIAN-**Keres** 41
- PILLSBURY-**Chigorin** 216
- PINTER-**Radulov** 233
- POLUGAYEVSKY-**Scholl** 53
- PORTISCH-**Fischer** 72
 -Keres 101
 -Ljubojević 55
 -Ljubojević 187
 -Robatsch 19
 -Tal 100
- PSAKHIS-Romanishin 76
- PUC-**Parma** 156
- RABINOVICH I.-Kan 220
 -Levenfish 4
- RADULOV-Inkiov 48
 -Pinter 233
 -Smejkal 239
- Yusupov** 173
- RAZUVAYEV-Azmaiparashvili 211
- ROBATSCH-Portisch 19
- ROMANISHIN-**Psakhis** 76
 -Tseshkovsky 104
- ROSSELLI-Rubinstein 229
- ROSSETTO-**Fischer** 35
- RUBINSTEIN-**Alapin** 213
 -Rosselli 229
 -Schlechter 166
- SAX-**Short** 8
 -Yusupov 222
- SCHLECHTER-Rubinstein 166
- SCHMID-Smyslov 99
- SCHOLL-Polugayevsky 53
- SHAMKOVICH-Suetin 243
- SHCHERBAKOV-**Boleslavsky** 217
- SHERESHEVSKY-**Klovan** 150
 -Loginov 206
 -Smirin 148
- SHORT-Sax 8
- SIEIRO-Gurevich M. 125
- SIMAGIN-Keres 110
- SMEJKAL-**Radulov** 239
- SMIRIN-Shereshevsky 148
- SMYSLOV-**Bondarevsky** 75
 -Botvinnik 128
 -Botvinnik 131
 -Euwe 90
 -König 97
 -Letelier 134
 -Padevsky 224
 -Schmid 99
 -Uhlmann 136
- SPASSKY-Botvinnik 183
- STAHLBERG-**Gligorić** 162
 -Gligorić 169
 -Korchnoi 144

- STEIN-Damjanović 62
 STEINER-Alekhine 237
 STEINITZ-Lasker 66
 STERNER-Boleslavsky 26
 STOLTZ-Boleslavsky 25
 STURUA-Aseyev 93
 SUETIN-Lukin 63
 -Shamkovich 243
 -Yuferov 42
 SULTAN KHAN-Tartakower 11
 SVESHNIKOV -Kuzmin 227
 SZABO-Barcza 164
 -Barcza 185
 TAIMANOV-Barden 50
 -Fischer 21
 -Ivkov 44
 -Karpov 37
 -Zaitsev I. 12
 TAL-Botvinnik 181
 -Ermenkov 52
 -Geller 58
 -Ftacnik 56
 -Kochiev 14
 -Najdorf 32
 -Portisch 100
 -Uhlmann 171
 TAN-Geller 241
 TARRASCH-Lasker 78
 -Teichmann 142
 TARTAKOWER-Sultan Khan 11
 TEICHMANN-Alekhine 80
 -Tarrasch 142
 TIMMAN-Chernin 146
 TIMOSHCHENKO-Yusupov 192
 TOLUSH-Botvinnik 128
 TRINGOV-Velimirović 197
 TSESHKOVSKY-Romanishin 104
 UHLMANN-Smyslov 136
 -Tal 171
 -Yanofsky 140
 UNZICKER-Botvinnik 199
 VAJDA-Nimzowitsch 119
 VASYUKOV-Boleslavsky 47
 -Klovan 240
 -Nezhmetdinov 17
 VELIMIROVIĆ-Tringov 197
 VOLPERT-Nedeljković 6
 YANOFSKY-Uhlmann 140
 YATES-Alekhine 116
 YUFEROV-Suetin 42
 YUSUPOV-Lobron 83
 -Radulov 173
 -Sax 222
 -Timoshchenko 192
 ZAITSEV I.-Berezov 124
 -Taimanov 12
 ZHURAVLYEV-Bronstein 138
 -Geller 235



8000660232

MAIN UPSTAIRS
 794.1 SH52M V.1
 Shereshevsky, M. I.
 Mastering the endgame

MASTERING THE ENDGAME

The connection between opening and endgame is a topic that has been hardly covered before in chess literature. By analysing a selection of classic and modern games, the authors explain how to play the typical endings arising from different openings.

VOLUME 1: FROM THE OPEN and SEMI-OPEN GAMES.

This covers the plans and playing methods in endings arising from the Sicilian Defence, Ruy Lopez, French Defence, and other Open and Semi-Open Games.

The other book in this two-volume work is entitled: *VOLUME 2: FROM THE CLOSED GAMES*

From the foreword by grandmaster Artur Yusupov

“By studying a section of interest to him, the reader can gain an impression not only about the typical endgame, but also widen his opening horizons, since in the majority of cases the opening stage has been deeply analysed.”

“There is a successful combination of classic games, with which the chapters usually begin, and modern examples. Also instructive are the examples of ‘buried variations’, i.e. instances where a particular opening has been condemned by theory in view of unsurmountable difficulties in the endgame.”

“Strangely enough, this ‘opening-endgame’ book will induce players to make a more serious study of the middlegame, since many ‘solid’ opening variations turn out to be very ‘brittle’ as regards the coming endgame, and here, as a rule, one has to try and decide things in the middlegame.”

Mikhail Shereshevsky, one of the co-authors, is already well known for his book on practical endgame play *Endgame Strategy*.



SHERESHE
MASTERING ENDGA
GAMES



08-037777-7



773